

**BY ORDER OF THE
SECRETARY OF THE AIR FORCE**



AIR FORCE HANDBOOK 11-203 VOLUME 1

12 JANUARY 2012

Flying Operations

WEATHER FOR AIRCREWS

COMPLIANCE WITH THIS PUBLICATION IS MANDATORY

ACCESSIBILITY: Publications and forms are available on the e-Publishing website at www.e-publishing.af.mil for downloading and ordering.

RELEASABILITY: There are no releasability restrictions on this publication.

OPR: AF/A3OWP

Certified by: AF/A3O-W
(Dr. Fred P. Lewis)

Supersedes: AFH11-203V1,
1 March 1997

Pages: 234

This handbook familiarizes the aircrew member with fundamentals of weather. It serves as a text for flight training programs, all USAF instrument refresher training, flight instruction programs, and various unit and individual flying training programs. It is issued to each instructor and student involved in undergraduate flight training programs as well as to each flying unit. This handbook, when used with related flight directives and publications, provides weather guidance for visual and instrument flight under most circumstances. It is not a substitute for sound judgment. Refer recommended changes and questions about this publication to the Office of Primary Responsibility (OPR) using Air Force (AF) form 847, *Recommendation for Change of Publication*; route AF Forms 847 from the field through the appropriate functional's chain of command.

RECORDS MANAGEMENT: Ensure that all records created as a result of processes prescribed in this publication are maintained in accordance with AFMAN 33-363, *Management of Records*, and disposed of in accordance with the Air Force Records Disposition Schedule (RDS) located at <https://www.my.af.mil/afrims/afrims/rims.cfm>

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

This document has been substantially revised and should be completely reviewed. This revision reorganizes information into more appropriate sections of the document. Several erroneous figures were removed and improved illustrations were inserted to update aircraft inventory. Some sections were also removed or edited, as they were deemed erroneous or irrelevant for aircrews, or not tractable, and updates information as it relates to weather operations. A new

space weather chapter has been introduced to cover impacts to aircraft operations. Finally, several terms were changed to those more commonly used by current weather personnel.

Chapter 1—THE EARTH'S ATMOSPHERE	15
1.1. Introduction.	15
1.2. Composition of the Atmosphere.	15
Figure 1.1. Composition of the Atmosphere.	16
1.3. The Troposphere.	16
Figure 1.2. Troposphere--Decrease in Temperature with Height.	17
1.4. Aircrew Environment.	17
Chapter 2—MOISTURE	18
2.1. Introduction.	18
Figure 2.1. Hydrologic Cycle.	18
2.2. Changes of State.	18
Figure 2.2. Phase Transitions of Water.	20
2.3. Relative Humidity.	20
Figure 2.3. Relative Humidity and Dew point.	21
2.4. Dew Point, Dew and Frost.	21
2.5. Condensation and Evaporation.	22
Figure 2.4. Causes of Condensation.	22
2.6. Clouds and Fog.	22
2.7. Precipitation.	22
Figure 2.5. Precipitation Products.	23
Figure 2.6. Virga.	24
Chapter 3—TEMPERATURE	25
3.1. Introduction.	25
3.2. Measuring Temperature.	25
Figure 3.1. Land has Greater Temperature Variance than Water.	25
3.3. Temperature Scales.	25
Figure 3.2. Temperature Scales.	26
3.4. Diurnal Cycle.	26
3.5. Land/Sea Difference.	27
Figure 3.3. Surface Temperature Distribution (Jan).	28

Figure 3.4.	Surface Temperature Distribution (Jul).	29
3.6.	Lapse Rate.	29
Figure 3.5.	Lapse Rate Temperature Reversals are Called Inversions.	30
3.7.	Inversions.	30
Chapter 4—ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE AND ALTIMETRY		32
4.1.	Introduction.	32
4.2.	Atmospheric Pressure.	32
Figure 4.1.	Normal Atmospheric Pressure at Sea Level.	33
Figure 4.2.	Aneroid Barometer Inner View.	33
4.3.	Pressure Distribution.	34
Figure 4.3.	Larger Air Column = Higher Station pressure (assuming a standard atmosphere).	34
4.4.	Pressure Correction.	34
4.5.	Temperature Effects on Pressure.	35
Figure 4.4.	Pressure Rate Decrease with Height Varies with Temperature.	35
4.6.	Pressure Maps.	35
Figure 4.5.	Surface Pressure Chart.	36
Figure 4.6.	Upper Air Chart.	37
4.7.	Standard Atmosphere.	37
Figure 4.7.	Aneroid Altimeter.	38
Figure 4.8.	Effects of Temperature on True and Indicated Altitude.	39
4.8.	Pressure Altitude.	39
4.9.	Density Altitude.	39
Figure 4.9.	Example.	40
Figure 4.10.	Density Altitude Chart.	41
Figure 4.11.	Altitude Error Due to Nonstandard Temperatures Aloft (D-Value).	43
Chapter 5—WIND		44
5.1.	Introduction.	44
5.2.	Causes of Wind.	44
Figure 5.1.	Three-Cell Model of the Earth's Circulation.	45
5.3.	Jet Streams.	45
Figure 5.2.	Formation of Jet Streams.	46
5.4.	Circulation Patterns.	46
Figure 5.3.	Pressure Gradient Versus Wind Speed.	47

Figure 5.4.	Surface Winds are Deflected Across Isobars Toward Lower Pressure.	48
5.5.	Cyclones and Anticyclone (Highs and Lows).	48
5.6.	Local Effects Winds.	48
Figure 5.5.	Sea and Land Breezes.	49
5.7.	Valley Wind and Mountain Breeze.	49
Figure 5.6.	Valley Wind and Mountain Breeze.	50
5.8.	Katabatic Winds.	50
Figure 5.7.	Chinook Wind.	51
Figure 5.8.	Fall or Bora Wind.	52
5.9.	Upslope Winds.	52
5.10.	Down-slope Winds.	52
Chapter 6—CLOUDS		54
6.1.	Introduction.	54
6.2.	Cloud Composition.	54
6.3.	Cloud Families.	54
Figure 6.1.	Basic Cloud Types.	55
Figure 6.2.	Cloud Heights.	56
6.4.	Low Clouds.	56
Figure 6.3.	Stratus Clouds (ST).	56
Figure 6.4.	Stratocumulus Clouds (SC).	57
Figure 6.5.	Cumulus Clouds (CU).	57
6.5.	Middle Clouds.	57
Figure 6.6.	Altostratus Clouds (AS).	58
Figure 6.7.	Altocumulus Clouds (AC).	59
Figure 6.8.	Nimbostratus Clouds (NS).	59
6.6.	High Clouds.	59
Figure 6.9.	Cirrus Clouds (CI).	60
Figure 6.10.	Cirrostratus Clouds (CS).	61
Figure 6.11.	Cirrocumulus Clouds (CC).	61
6.7.	Clouds With Extensive Vertical Development.	61
Figure 6.12.	Towering Cumulus Clouds (TCU).	62
Figure 6.13.	Cumulonimbus Cloud (CB).	63
6.8.	Other Clouds.	63

Figure 6.14.	Altocumulus Standing Lenticular (ACSL).	63
Figure 6.15.	Rotor Clouds.	64
Figure 6.16.	Contrails.	65
Chapter 7—AIR MASSES		66
7.1.	Understanding of Air Masses.	66
7.2.	Air Mass Types.	66
7.3.	Air Mass Modification.	66
7.4.	Air Mass Modification by Terrain.	67
Figure 7.1.	Sinking Air Increases Stability, can Create Inversion.	68
7.5.	Air Mass Stability.	68
Table 7.1.	lists typical characteristics of stable and unstable air masses, assuming that sufficient moisture is available.	68
Table 7.1.	Air Mass Weather Characteristics Based on Stability and Moisture.	68
Chapter 8—FRONTS		69
8.1.	Introduction.	69
8.2.	Fronts.	69
Figure 8.1.	Frontal Zone.	69
Figure 8.2.	Satellite Picture of a Cyclone in the North Atlantic.	70
8.3.	Types of Fronts.	70
Figure 8.3.	Types of Fronts.	71
Figure 8.4.	Warm Front Clouds.	71
8.4.	Identifying a Front.	71
8.5.	Frontal Passage.	72
8.6.	Cold Front.	72
Figure 8.5.	Fast Moving Cold Front Runs Under Warmer Air.	73
Figure 8.6.	Wind shifts Associated with Flight Level Cold Frontal Boundaries.	74
8.7.	Squall Lines.	74
Figure 8.7.	Formation of a Squall Line.	75
Figure 8.8.	Squall Line on RADAR.	75
8.8.	Warm Front.	76
Figure 8.9.	Warm Front and Moist Stable Air.	76
Figure 8.10.	Warm Front and Moist Unstable Air.	77
Figure 8.11.	Precipitation Types in Wintertime Warm Frontal Zone.	78

8.9.	Stationary Front.	79
Figure 8.12.	Stationary Front as Shown on Surface Weather Chart.	79
8.10.	Frontal Waves.	80
Figure 8.13.	Frontal Wave and Occlusion.	80
8.11.	Occlusions.	80
Figure 8.14.	Occlusion Development and Cross-Sectional Profile.	81
Figure 8.15.	Frontal Occlusion Profiles.	82
Chapter 9—TURBULENCE		84
9.1.	Introduction.	84
9.2.	Turbulence Causes.	84
9.3.	Categories of Turbulence.	84
9.4.	Causes of Turbulence.	85
9.5.	Effects on Aircraft.	85
9.6.	Convective Turbulence.	86
Figure 9.1.	Strength of Convective Currents varies with Composition of Surface.	87
Figure 9.2.	Updrafts May Cause Pilots to Overshoot.	87
Figure 9.3.	Downdrafts May Cause Pilots to Undershoot.	88
Figure 9.4.	Avoid Convective Currents by Flying Above Cumulus Clouds.	88
9.7.	Mechanical Turbulence.	88
Figure 9.5.	Surface Obstructions Cause Eddies and Other Irregular Wind Movements.	90
Figure 9.6.	Buildings Near Landing Areas May Cause Turbulence.	90
Figure 9.7.	Wind Flow over Mountain Ranges Produces Turbulence.	91
9.8.	Terrain Turbulence.	91
Figure 9.8.	In a Valley or Canyon, Safest Path is on Upslope Wind Side.	91
Figure 9.9.	Winds Funneled through Mountain Valleys Create High Winds.	92
9.9.	Mountain Wave Turbulence.	92
Figure 9.10.	Typical Cloud Formation, Main Updraft and Downdraft in Mountain Wave.	93
Figure 9.11.	Mountain Waves.	94
Figure 9.12.	Rotor Clouds.	95
Figure 9.13.	Standing Lenticular Clouds Associated with a Mountain Wave.	96
Figure 9.14.	Mountain Turbulence Avoidance.	97
9.10.	Clear Air Turbulence (CAT).	97
Figure 9.15.	Location of Polar/Subtropical Jet Streams in Relation to Tropopause.	98

9.11.	Jet Streams and CAT.	98
9.12.	Polar Front Jet (PFJ) Stream.	98
Figure 9.16.	Areas of Probable Turbulence in Jet Stream.	99
9.13.	Aircrew Notes.	99
Figure 9.17.	Wind Patterns Associated with High Level CAT.	100
9.14.	Low-Level Jet Stream.	100
Figure 9.18.	Wind Profile of Nocturnal Low level Jet.	101
Figure 9.19.	Meteogram showing Low Level Jet.	101
9.15.	Wake Turbulence.	101
Figure 9.20.	Counter Rotating Vortices.	102
Figure 9.21.	Induced Roll.	102
Figure 9.22.	Vortex Circulation.	103
Figure 9.23.	Helicopter Vortices.	104
Chapter 10—WINDSHEAR		105
10.1.	Introduction.	105
10.2.	Windshear definition.	105
10.3.	Performance Decreasing Shear.	105
Figure 10.1.	Performance Decreasing Shear.	106
10.4.	Microburst.	106
10.5.	Low Level Windshear (LLWS).	107
Figure 10.2.	Windshear Associated with Thunderstorm Downdraft.	108
Figure 10.3.	Approach and Takeoff can be Dangerous in Rapidly Changing Shear Conditions.	108
10.6.	Frontal Shear.	108
10.7.	Local Winds.	109
Figure 10.4.	Windshear During Radiation Inversion.	109
Figure 10.5.	A Wind Funneling Condition.	110
10.8.	Land/Sea Breeze Shear.	110
10.9.	Windshear Lessons Learned.	110
10.10.	Stick Shaker.	113
10.11.	Windshear Detection Systems.	113
Chapter 11—AIRCRAFT ICING		114
11.1.	Introduction.	114
11.2.	Groups of Icing.	114

11.3.	Structural Icing.	114
11.4.	Types of Icing.	115
Figure 11.1.	Clear Ice can be Smooth or Rough.	116
Figure 11.2.	Rime Ice is Milky, Opaque, and Granular.	117
Figure 11.3.	Frost on Exposed Surfaces of Parked Aircraft.	118
11.5.	Icing Amounts.	118
11.6.	Icing Dangers.	118
Figure 11.4.	Effects of Icing are Cumulative Causing Stall Speed to Increase.	119
Figure 11.5.	Pitot Tube Icing.	120
11.7.	Helicopter Icing.	120
11.8.	Engine Icing.	121
11.9.	Carburetor Icing.	121
Figure 11.6.	Carburetor Icing.	122
11.10.	Induction Icing.	122
Figure 11.7.	Jet Engine Induction Icing.	123
11.11.	Inlet Guide Vane Icing.	123
11.12.	Weather Conditions for Icing.	123
Table 11.1.	Temperature Ranges.	123
Figure 11.8.	Cold Front Icing.	124
Figure 11.9.	Warm Front Icing.	125
Figure 11.10.	Primary Icing Regions.	125
Chapter 12—VISIBILITY AND CEILINGS		127
12.1.	Introduction.	127
12.2.	Prevailing Visibility.	127
Figure 12.1.	Observer Visibility Diagram.	128
12.3.	Automated Meteorological Observing Systems (AMOS).	128
Figure 12.2.	Typical AMOS Combined Sensor Group.	129
12.4.	Visibilities Definitions.	129
Figure 12.3.	Slant Range Visibility: Distance Seen through an Angle of the Atmosphere.	130
12.5.	Visibility Differences.	130
12.6.	NVG's and Visibility.	131
12.7.	Electro -Optical Data.	131
12.8.	Cloud Ceilings.	131

12.9.	Summation Principle.	131
12.10.	METAR Cloud Cover.	132
12.11.	Foreign Ceilings.	132
12.12.	Surface Obscuration.	132
12.13.	Fog.	133
12.14.	Radiation Fog.	133
Figure 12.4.	Ground Fog.	134
12.15.	Advection Fog.	134
Figure 12.5.	Stratus and Fog off the West Coast of the United States.	135
12.16.	Precipitation Induced Fog.	135
Figure 12.6.	Precipitation-Induced Fog.	136
12.17.	Upslope Fog.	136
Figure 12.7.	Upslope Fog.	136
12.18.	Freezing Fog.	137
12.19.	Ice Fog.	137
12.20.	Stratus.	137
12.21.	Haze.	137
12.22.	Smoke and Smog.	137
Figure 12.8.	Haze and Smog.	138
12.23.	Blowing Dust and Sand.	138
Figure 12.9.	Satellite shot of Blowing Dust.	139
Figure 12.10.	Blowing Sand.	139
12.24.	Snow/Blowing Snow.	140
12.25.	Drizzle.	140
12.26.	Rain.	140
Chapter 13—THUNDERSTORMS AND ASSOCIATED HAZARDS		141
13.1.	Introduction.	141
13.2.	Thunderstorm Information.	141
13.3.	Thunderstorm Formation.	141
Figure 13.1.	Average Number of Days with Thunderstorms Each Year.	142
Figure 13.2.	Average Number of Days with Thunderstorms Seasonal.	142
13.4.	Thunderstorm Life Cycle.	143
Figure 13.3.	Stages of a Thunderstorm.	144

13.5.	The Tropopause and Thunderstorms.	144
13.6.	Frontal Thunderstorms.	145
Figure 13.4.	Warm Front Thunderstorm.	146
Figure 13.5.	Cold Front Thunderstorm.	146
Figure 13.6.	Squall Line.	147
Figure 13.7.	Squall Line Thunderstorms.	148
13.7.	Air Mass Thunderstorms.	148
13.8.	Orographic Thunderstorms.	148
13.9.	Thunderstorm Turbulence.	148
13.10.	Thunderstorm Icing.	149
Figure 13.8.	7 ½ inch Diameter Hail.	150
13.11.	Thunderstorm Hail.	150
Figure 13.9.	Hail Damage to Aircraft.	150
13.12.	Thunderstorm Lightning.	151
Figure 13.10.	Lightning Variations.	151
Figure 13.11.	Lightning Bolt “Out of the Blue”.	152
Figure 13.12.	Major Structural Damage Resulting from Lightning Strike.	153
13.13.	Tornadoes.	153
Figure 13.13.	Tornado.	154
Figure 13.14.	Funnel Cloud.	154
Figure 13.15.	Waterspout.	154
Figure 13.16.	Anatomy of a Funnel Cloud.	155
13.14.	Identifying a Thunderstorm.	155
Figure 13.17.	Mammatus Clouds.	156
13.15.	Avoiding a Thunderstorm.	156
Chapter 14—TROPICAL WEATHER		160
14.1.	The Tropics.	160
Figure 14.1.	The Tropical Zone.	160
14.2.	Pressure Systems in the Tropics.	160
14.3.	Weather in the Tropics.	160
14.4.	Continental Tropical Weather.	161
14.5.	Arid Tropical Weather.	161
14.6.	Dust and Sandstorms.	161

Figure 14.2. Sandstorm in Pakistan.	162
14.7. Maritime Tropical Air.	162
14.8. Subtropical Jet Stream.	162
14.9. Equatorial Trough.	162
Figure 14.3. Satellite Picture of Clouds Associated with the Equatorial Trough.	163
Figure 14.4. Vertical Structure of Convergence Zone.	164
14.10. Tropical Waves.	164
Figure 14.5. Easterly Waves.	165
14.11. Shear Lines.	165
14.12. Monsoons.	165
14.13. Tropical Cyclone.	166
Figure 14.6. Principal Regions of Tropical Cyclone Formation and Favored Direction of Movement.	166
14.14. Tropical Cyclone Stages.	166
Figure 14.7. Saffir-Simpson Hurricane Wind Scale.	167
14.15. Cyclone Movement.	167
14.16. The Eye:	167
14.17. Rainfall.	168
Figure 14.8. Radar Image of Hurricane Katrina.	169
Figure 14.9. Cross Section of Hurricane Eye and Spiral Bands.	169
Figure 14.10. Satellite Picture of a Hurricane.	170
14.18. Extratropical Storms.	170
14.19. Tracking Agencies.	170
14.20. Aircrew Actions.	170
Chapter 15—ARCTIC WEATHER	172
15.1. Introduction.	172
15.2. Arctic Areas.	172
Figure 15.1. Arctic Circle.	173
Figure 15.2. Duration and Angle of Incidence of Sun's Rays upon Arctic.	173
15.3. Water Areas.	174
15.4. Land Areas.	174
15.5. Weather.	174
Figure 15.3. Average Number of Days with Temperatures above Freezing.	175
15.6. Winds.	175

Figure 15.4. Wind Chill Index.	176
15.7. Temperature.	176
15.8. Aurora.	176
Figure 15.5. Aurora Borealis.	177
15.9. Visual Complications in Arctic Environment.	177
15.10. Arctic Whiteout.	177
Figure 15.6. Whiteout Condition.	178
15.11. Restrictions to Flying.	178
Figure 15.7. Blowing Snow.	179
Figure 15.8. Visibility Reduced in Blowing Snow.	179
Chapter 16—VOLCANIC ASH	181
16.1. Introduction.	181
16.2. History.	181
Figure 16.1. Mount St Helens, May 1980.	182
16.3. Case Study.	182
16.4. Avoiding Volcanic Ash.	183
16.5. Volcano Reporting.	184
Figure 16.2. Volcanic Ash Advisory Product.	185
Figure 16.3. AFWA Volcanic Ash Dispersion Visualization.	186
Chapter 17—NUMERICAL WEATHER MODELS	188
17.1. Numerical Weather Prediction.	188
Figure 17.1. NWP Grid Example.	188
Figure 17.2. NWP Extended Grid Example.	189
17.2. Model Types and Limitations.	189
17.3. Validating a Numerical Forecast.	190
Figure 17.3. 500 Mb Geopotential Surface Maps,	190
Figure 17.4. The Jet Stream Maps.	191
Figure 17.5. Temperature Forecast Maps.	191
Figure 17.6. Surface Pressures.	192
Figure 17.7. Atmospheric Moisture and Precipitation.	193
17.4. Summary.	193
Chapter 18—SPACE WEATHER	194

18.1.	Introduction.	194
18.2.	Regions of Space Weather.	194
Figure 18.1.	Nuclear Fusion at Solar Core.	195
Figure 18.2.	Basic Solar Structure.	195
Figure 18.3.	Solar Rotation.	196
Figure 18.4.	Solar Magnetic Field Traps Solar Material in Corona.	197
Figure 18.5.	Solar Plasma (hydrogen nuclei (protons), helium nuclei (alpha particles), and free electrons).	197
Figure 18.6.	Solar Electromagnetic Spectrum (note scale change at longer wavelengths).	198
Figure 18.7.	The Interplanetary Magnetic Field (IMF).	198
Figure 18.8.	Inner Magnetosphere of the Earth.	199
Figure 18.9.	Solar Wind Interaction with Earth's Magnetosphere.	200
Figure 18.10.	Ionospheric Plasma Environment (O ₂ , N ₂ , their ions, and electrons).	201
Figure 18.11.	Ionospheric Layers.	202
18.3.	Solar Activity.	204
Figure 18.12.	Solar Magnetic Fields.	204
Figure 18.13.	Sunspots on the Photosphere (whole disk image and close-up of sunspots).	205
Figure 18.14.	Solar Flare (x-ray image and traces for two x-ray wavelengths).	205
Figure 18.15.	Radio Burst Trace.	206
Figure 18.16.	Energetic Proton Trace (showing three different proton energy levels).	206
Figure 18.17.	Coronal Mass Ejection (CME).	207
Figure 18.18.	IMF Discontinuity Due to CME.	207
Figure 18.19.	Coronal Hole Seen In Ultraviolet Imagery (large dark blob at center of disk).	208
Figure 18.20.	Geomagnetic Storm Diagram.	209
Figure 18.21.	Aurora Viewed from the Space Shuttle.	209
Figure 18.22.	Auroral Ovals (Aurora Borealis and Australis).	210
Figure 18.23.	Van Allen Radiation Belts.	211
Figure 18.24.	11-Year Solar Cycle (as of December 2010).	212
18.4.	Space Weather Impacts.	212
Figure 18.25.	HF Window Throughout the Day.	213
Figure 18.26.	D-region Absorption Map During a Solar X-ray Flare.	213
Figure 18.27.	Auroral Oval Impact to Ionosphere During Average Geomagnetic Activity (red arrow indicates direction of sun).	214

Figure 18.28. D-region Absorption Map During a Moderate PCA Event.	215
Figure 18.29. D-region Absorption Map During a Major Solar X-ray Flare and an Extreme PCA Event (compare to Figure 18. 26and Figure 18.28).	215
Figure 18.30. Solar Radio Interference on Weather Radar Imagery (streak to the southeast).	216
Figure 18.31. Earth's Magnetic Equator and Associated Scintillation Band (note its deviation from the geographic equator, black line).	217
Figure 18.32. Scintillation Pattern at 2300 GMT.	217
Figure 18.33. Radar Auroral Clutter.	218
Figure 18.34. Dual Frequency GPS Error.	219
Figure 18.35. Single Frequency GPS Error.	220
Figure 18.36. Radiation Dosage Chart for High Altitude Flight.	221
Attachment 1—GLOSSARY OF REFERENCES AND SUPPORTING INFORMATION	223

Chapter 1

THE EARTH'S ATMOSPHERE

1.1. Introduction. Benjamin Franklin aptly remarked: “Some people are weather-wise but most are otherwise.” He wisely understood that weather affects all facets of life. Virtually all of our activities are affected by weather, but none is affected more than aviation. Aviation weather can be as uneventful as a “clear and a million” day or as challenging as descending through a solid deck of nimbostratus clouds with moderate rime icing and embedded thunderstorms. Aviators can narrow the uncertainty surrounding weather with a well-rounded understanding of weather processes. They can anticipate and avoid potential or existing hazardous weather conditions, and take advantage of favorable conditions such as tail winds, or clearing weather behind a cold front.

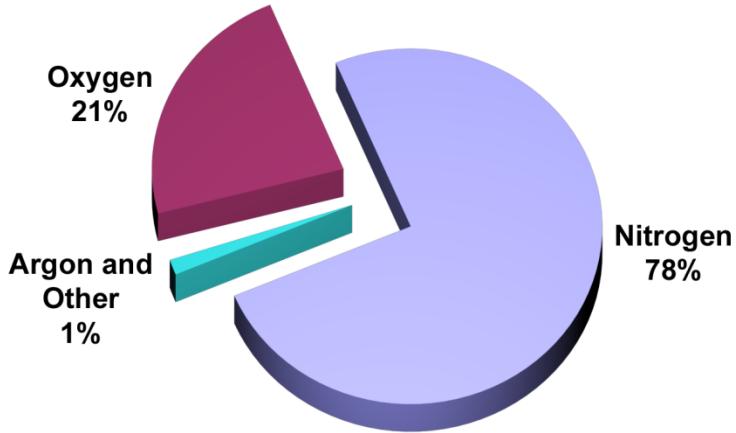
1.1.1. This handbook explains basic meteorological concepts and common weather problems. Aviators can use this knowledge to ask weather forecasters critical questions such as the expected movement of reported severe thunderstorms or the length of time the visibility is to stay below 1/4 mile. Perhaps mission planners want to know how the anticipated weather conditions will affect their sensors during Night Vision Goggle (NVG) training. What adjustments must be made if forecast target weather is marginal? Will low-level jet stream winds affect the paratroop drop over the drop-zone or the bombs’ impact? You may only have a phone number to a remote weather briefing site to retrieve weather information. Furthermore, once in the air, you may not be able to consult with a forecaster or see updated weather maps when confronted with unexpected changes. The Hazardous In-flight Weather Advisory Service (HIWAS) may not be updated. At any rate, the better you understand weather, the safer your flight will be.

1.2. Composition of the Atmosphere.

1.2.1. The atmosphere is the gaseous envelope covering the Earth and held in place by gravity. Comparing the Earth to a baseball, the atmosphere, in perspective, would be about as thick as the baseball’s cover. This envelope of air rotates with the Earth. The atmosphere also has motions relative to the Earth’s surface called circulations. Circulations are caused primarily by the large temperature difference between the tropics and the polar regions, with other significant factors such as the uneven heating of land and water areas by the sun. The atmosphere consists of a mixture of various gases. Pure, dry air is composed of approximately 78 percent nitrogen, 21 percent oxygen, and a 1 percent mixture of other gases, mostly argon (**Figure 1.1**). One of the most important contents of the atmosphere is water vapor, which varies in amounts from near zero to 5 percent by volume. It is present in three physical states; a gas, a liquid, or a solid. The maximum amount of gaseous water vapor the air can hold is temperature dependent; the higher the temperature, the more water vapor it can hold. Water vapor remains invisibly suspended in varying amounts in the air until, through condensation, it grows to sufficient droplet or ice crystal size to form clouds or precipitation. Even when the atmosphere is apparently clear, it contains variable amounts of impurities, such as dust, smoke, volcanic ash, and salt particles. Concentrations of these impurities can lower visibility resulting in hazy skies and blurring of long distance visual cues. The depth of the atmosphere is commonly accepted as being 300,000 feet or up to 22

miles thick. Roughly half of it, by weight, lies below 18,000 feet due to gravity. This creates a blanket of dense air near the Earth's surface upon which other forces act.

Figure 1.1. Composition of the Atmosphere.



1.3. The Troposphere.

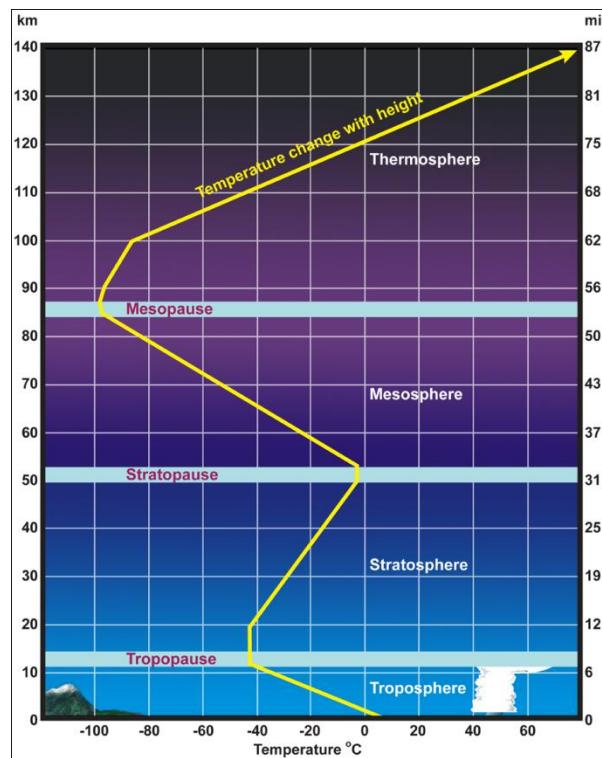
1.3.1. The atmosphere is divided into layers, or spherical shells, each having certain properties and characteristics. The upper boundaries of these layers are referred to as "pauses". Since most weather and flying is in the troposphere and stratosphere, we will restrict our discussions to these two layers. The troposphere is the layer closest to the Earth's surface. It varies in depth from an average of 60,000 feet over the equator to about 30,000 feet over the poles, with greater depth in summer than in winter. Some principal characteristics include:

- 1.3.1.1. Generally decreasing temperatures with height (**Figure 1.2**)
- 1.3.1.2. Generally increasing wind speeds with height
- 1.3.1.3. Most active atmospheric phenomena called weather.

1.3.2. At the top of the troposphere is the tropopause which serves as the boundary between the troposphere and the stratosphere. The location of the tropopause is characterized by a change from a decrease in temperature with height to no change of temperature with height (isothermal). The tropopause acts like a "lid" in that it resists the exchange of air between the troposphere and the stratosphere. This explains why almost all water vapor is found in the troposphere. This also explains why the tops of thunderstorms rarely exceed the tropopause level. Above the tropopause are the stratosphere, the mesosphere, and the thermosphere respectively (Figure 1-2). The average altitude of the top of the stratosphere is 30 miles. Characteristics of this layer are a slight increase in temperature with height (as opposed to the decrease with height encountered in the troposphere). Except for the near absence of water vapor and clouds and a substantial increase in the amount of ozone, the composition of the stratosphere is the same as the troposphere. Ozone is important because it absorbs most of the dangerous ultraviolet rays from the sun. Aircrews flying unprotected through areas of higher ozone concentration may experience irritation to eyes, nose, and mouth, or coughing symptoms associated with ozone sickness. Ozone also has a corrosive effect on certain metals and has become increasingly important as supersonic aircraft operate in regions of

higher ozone concentration. The maximum temperatures associated with the absorption of the sun's ultraviolet radiation occur at the stratopause.

Figure 1.2. Troposphere--Decrease in Temperature with Height.



1.4. AircREW Environment.

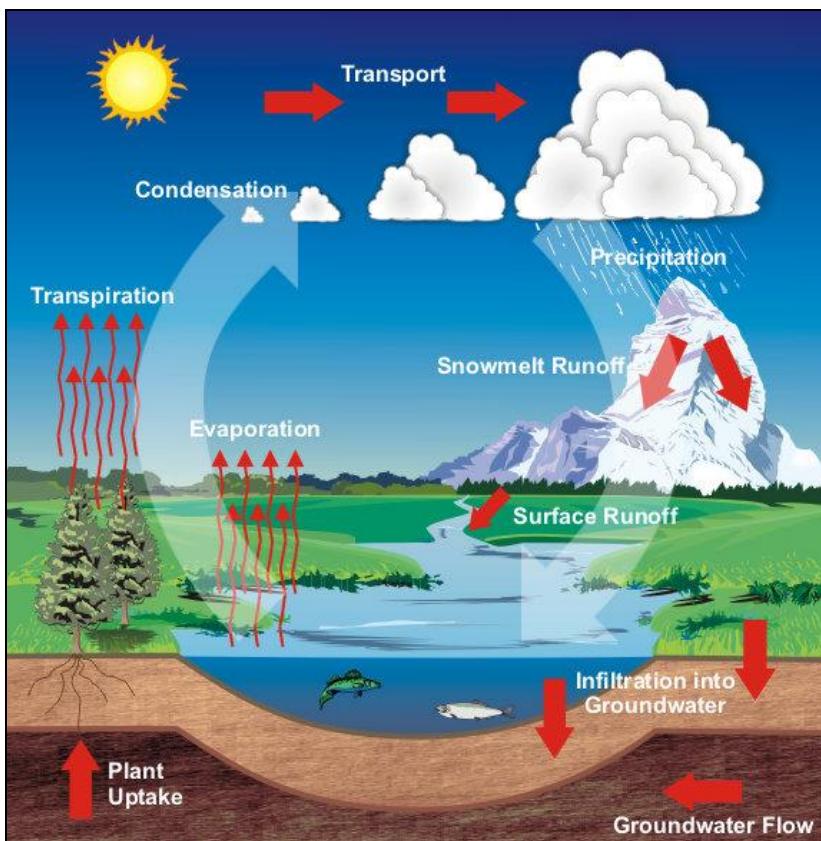
1.4.1. Because the atmosphere contains 21 percent oxygen, the pressure oxygen exerts is about one-fifth of the total air pressure at any given level. This is important to aircrews because the rate at which the lungs absorb oxygen depends upon the oxygen pressure. The average person is accustomed to absorbing oxygen at a pressure of 3 pounds per square inch (psi). Since air pressure decreases with increasing altitude, atmospheric pressure also decreases. Prolonged high altitude flight without supplemental oxygen results in hypoxia starting with a feeling of exhaustion, then vision impairment, and finally unconsciousness. Since the first effects of hypoxia can occur without the person realizing it, auxiliary oxygen must be used during prolonged flights above 10,000 feet, or when flying above 12,000 feet for even short periods of time. When the atmospheric pressure falls below 3 pounds per square inch (approximately 10,000 feet), a system of environmental pressurization becomes essential.

Chapter 2

MOISTURE

2.1. Introduction. Water covers around two-thirds of the Earth's surface. It is in a constant state of transformation, where the three most important stages are evaporation, condensation, and precipitation. This continuous process is called the hydrologic cycle (Figure 2.1). It keeps the atmosphere supplied with moisture and helps produce temperature and pressure changes. Most of the atmosphere's moisture is concentrated in the troposphere, and is rarely found in significant amounts above the tropopause. The remaining third of the Earth's surface is land with elevation contrasts and vegetation differences. A good working knowledge of local and regional terrain variations is important to understanding local weather effects. Terrain varies from sharply contrasting mountain ranges to vast stretches of flat plains and plateaus. Each type of terrain significantly influences low level wind flow, moisture availability, and temperature. The weather can be cloudy and rainy on the windward side of a mountain range and cloudless and dry on the leeward side. Knowledge of terrain features can help you anticipate likely precipitation areas characterized by instrument flight rules (IFR) conditions, as well as areas of visual flight rules (VFR) conditions.

Figure 2.1. Hydrologic Cycle.



2.2. Changes of State.

2.2.1. Water in the atmosphere exists in three states: vapor, liquid, and solid. Water vapor is water in the gaseous state and is not visible. In the liquid state, it forms as rain, drizzle, fog, and as small water droplets which form clouds. In its solid state, it forms as snow, hail, ice pellets, ice-crystal clouds, and ice-crystal fog.

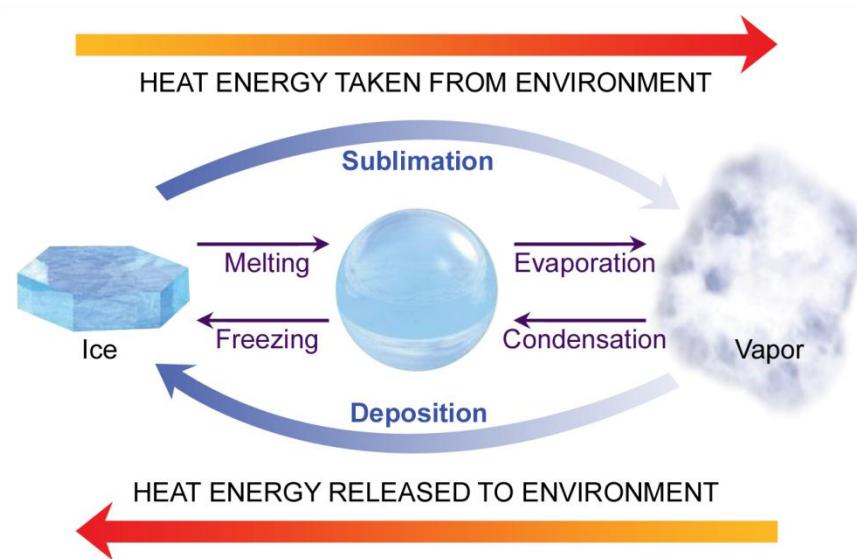
2.2.2. The oceans serve as the primary source of water vapor for the atmosphere. To a lesser extent, moisture sources also include lakes, rivers, swamps, moist soil, snow, ice fields, and vegetation. As moisture evaporates into its vapor state, the wind may carry moisture great distances before it changes states into liquid or solid precipitation.

2.2.3. Evaporation, condensation, sublimation, and deposition are changes of state. When water changes from a liquid to a gas, molecules escape from the liquid's surface and enter the air as water vapor. Evaporation rate increases with temperature. This is a simplified explanation of evaporation. Condensation is the change of state from a gas to a liquid. Condensation takes place when a volume of air reaches its saturation point. Sublimation is the change of state directly from a solid to a gas. The reverse is called deposition which is the change directly from a gas to a solid. Two other familiar changes of state are melting and freezing.

2.2.4. Any change of state involves heat exchange where energy is absorbed or released. [Figure 2-2](#) illustrates the heat exchanges between the different states of water. During evaporation, escaping water molecules absorb energy (heat) to break away from the attraction of the other molecules. This cools the remaining liquid since it has less heat. Heat required for evaporation is not lost, but remains hidden or latent in the water vapor. When the vapor condenses to liquid water or deposits directly to ice, this heat is released to the atmosphere and the surrounding air becomes warmer. As an example, the amount of heat given off in a thunderstorm during the process of precipitating one-half inch of rain over a square mile is over 71 trillion Joules. The energy released by the atomic bomb dropped on Hiroshima was almost 84 trillion Joules. Melting, freezing, and sublimation all involve the exchange of heat in a similar manner.

2.2.5. The capacity for a parcel of air to hold water vapor is related to the temperature, where as temperature is a measure of energy. Therefore, the warmer the air, the more energy is available for evaporation or sublimation. The cooler the air, the less energy is available for condensation or deposition, until the saturation point is reached and water droplets or ice crystals grow to the point they form visible clouds. According to Charles' Law, when pressure is held constant, as temperature increases, so does the volume of air ([Figure 2.3](#)). In this case the warmer the air, the more water vapor it can hold before reaching saturation when the water condenses. For approximately every 20°F (11°C) increase in temperature, the capacity of a volume of air to hold water vapor doubles. Conversely, as a parcel cools, the temperature and dew point temperature eventually equalize, and the relative humidity becomes 100%. Further cooling allows some water vapor to visibly condense as fog, clouds, or precipitation. The relative humidity and dew point concepts are expanded during the next few paragraphs.

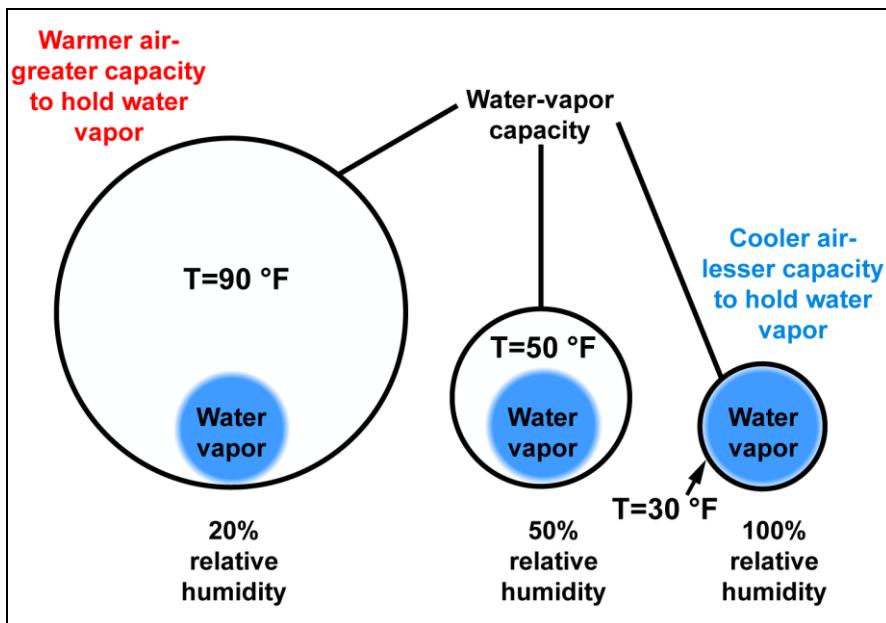
Figure 2.2. Phase Transitions of Water.



2.3. Relative Humidity.

2.3.1. Relative humidity is the ratio of the actual water vapor in the air to the water vapor that the air would contain if saturated. When a given air sample contains all the water vapor possible at a given temperature, the relative humidity is 100 percent ([Figure 2.3](#)). A relative humidity value of 50 percent means the air contains half the water vapor it is capable of holding at that temperature. Practically speaking, on a cold day with a temperature of 35°F and a dew point of 30°F, the relative humidity is 84 percent. On a hot day with a temperature of 95°F and the same dew point of 30°F, the relative humidity is only 10 percent. The dew point temperature is the same, but the relative humidity is quite different. If on the same hot day the temperature was 95F with a dew point of 74F, the relative humidity will feel high but in actuality is only 50%!

Figure 2.3. Relative Humidity and Dew point.



2.4. Dew Point, Dew and Frost.

2.4.1. The dew point is the temperature to which a volume of air at constant atmospheric pressure must be cooled to become saturated, i.e., reach 100% humidity. When this temperature is below freezing, it is sometimes called the frost point. The difference between the actual air temperature and the dew point temperature is an indication of how close the air is to becoming saturated. This temperature difference is commonly called the dew point depression. Relative humidity increases as the dew point depression decreases. When the relative humidity becomes 100%, the dew point depression is zero. Weather observations regularly include the dew point. Be alert for fog or low cloud formation any time the surface air temperature is within 4°F of the dew point, and the spread between the two is decreasing. Generally this condition is optimal during late night and early morning hours. On the other hand, when the difference between the two temperatures is increasing, existing fog and low clouds will likely dissipate because water vapor is evaporating into the warming air. This is often true in the morning hours, when air temperature is increasing as the day progresses. Be aware, however, that fog and low clouds may form 2 to 3 hours after sunrise if there is a layer of moist air in the first few hundred feet above the surface.

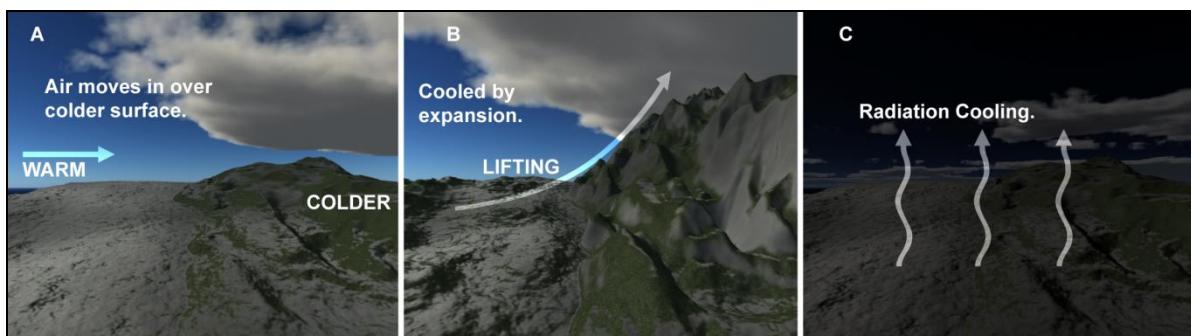
2.4.2. During clear, still nights, aircraft surfaces often cool by radiation to a temperature equal to the dew point of the surrounding air. The moisture or dew collects on the airframe surface just as it does on a pitcher of ice water in a warm room. The moisture comes from the air in direct contact with the cool surface. Frost forms when the temperature is colder than the melting or freezing point of water. Water vapor then deposits directly as ice crystals or frost rather than condensing as dew. Sometimes dew forms and later freezes, but frozen dew is easily distinguishable from frost since it is transparent and frost is opaque. Aircrews should not underestimate the dangers associated with frost formation. When frost forms on airframes it results in increased drag and decreased lift. This will be covered more thoroughly in Chapter 11, Aircraft Icing.

2.5. Condensation and Evaporation.

2.5.1. Condensation occurs if moisture is added to a volume of air after saturation has been reached or if cooling of the air reduces the temperature to or below the saturation point. As shown in **Figure 2.4**, the most frequent cause of condensation is cooling of the air resulting when: (a) air moves over a colder surface, (b) air is lifted and cools by expansion, or (c) air near the ground is cooled at night as a result of radiational cooling.

2.5.2. Evaporation is the change of state from liquid to a gas. Some common causes of evaporation are advection (transport) of dry air into a cloud and compressional warming due to subsidence (sinking air) that increase the dewpoint depression in a volume of air.

Figure 2.4. Causes of Condensation.



2.6. Clouds and Fog.

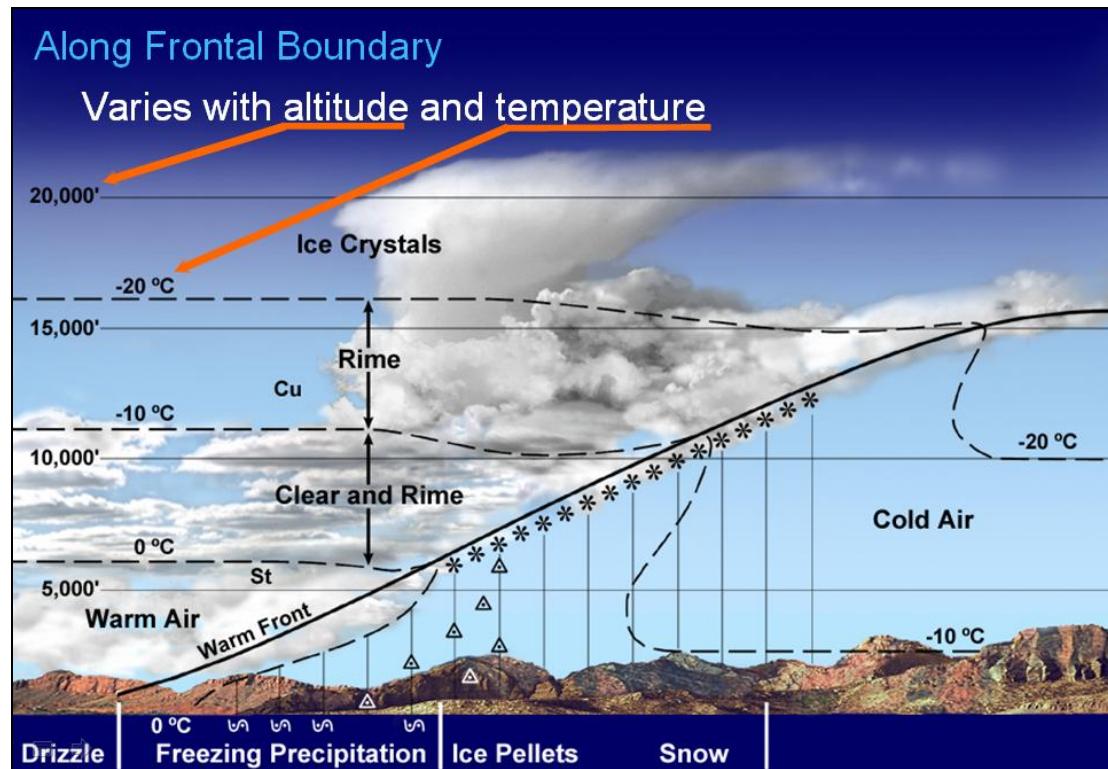
2.6.1. Clouds and fog form in air that has become saturated with respect to liquid water or crystalline ice. Clouds and fog are composed of very small droplets of water or ice which collect on microscopic water-absorbent particles called condensation nuclei (water) or deposition nuclei (ice). These aerosols include sea salts, dust, industrial pollution particles, volcanic ash, and a variety of other sources. They are so small their size is measured in microns (millionths of a meter). Clouds generally form when the air becomes saturated. Clouds and fog which form at temperatures well below freezing (-20°C or lower) are usually composed of ice crystals, which form directly from water vapor through the deposition process. However, liquid water droplets are frequently observed in the atmosphere at temperatures much lower than the freezing point, and have been observed at -40°C . These supercooled water droplets are prevalent in clouds to a temperature of about -20°C . Aircraft flying through supercooled clouds will likely encounter icing as the impact of the aircraft induces freezing of the supercooled droplets upon contact.

2.7. Precipitation.

2.7.1. Precipitation is liquid or solid moisture that falls from the atmosphere as rain, freezing rain, drizzle, freezing drizzle, ice pellets, snow, hail, or a combination of these. As shown in **Figure 2.5**, the type of precipitation is largely dependent upon air temperature and the degree of turbulence present. Precipitation often begins as suspended ice crystals grow through collisions with other ice crystals while traveling through moving air currents within a cloud. The growing ice crystals eventually attain a fall-speed which exceeds the upward air current velocity. As the ice crystals fall through the freezing point into warmer air they begin to melt

and, when melted completely, form raindrops. They continue to collide with other raindrops and grow larger.

Figure 2.5. Precipitation Products.



2.7.2. In clouds with no freezing level and the presence of minute droplets, collision and coalescence of variable sized water droplets produces liquid precipitation. Vertical air currents cause the droplets to collide and assist in the growth of clouds by carrying water droplets to higher altitudes. Gentle ascending air currents will produce light precipitation and thinner clouds. Turbulent air currents produce heavier precipitation with larger droplet sizes and clouds more than 4,000 feet thick. Usually precipitation of light intensity falls from stable stratus type clouds less than 4,000 feet thick. Precipitation can change its state as its environmental temperature varies. For example, during the winter, descending snow can change to rain as the precipitation goes through warmer layers of air, and the rain can descend further into colder air (below freezing point) refreezing into ice pellets before reaching the ground. This situation can happen frequently in the vicinity of warm fronts during the winter when an aircraft can cross the freezing level several times while ascending or descending.

2.7.3. Not all precipitation reaches the Earth. Sometimes it evaporates completely in dry air beneath the cloud base. This phenomenon is known as "virga" and is a common occurrence in hot, dry areas such as the western United States and Southwest Asia. Virga appears as wisps or streaks of liquid water attached to the bottom of a cloud but not reaching the surface (**Figure 2.6**). Virga composed exclusively of ice crystals is known as "fallstreaks". The evaporation process cools the air. This cooler, denser air sinks creating a downdraft. If the virga reaches the ground, it's reported as precipitation. If a large volume of virga evaporates

rapidly, it can form a downburst or microburst. Microbursts are downdrafts concentrated in an area of less than 2.5 miles in diameter that are dangerous to aircraft taking off or landing because they dramatically increase wind shear and increase or decrease air speed and lift.

Figure 2.6. Virga.



Chapter 3

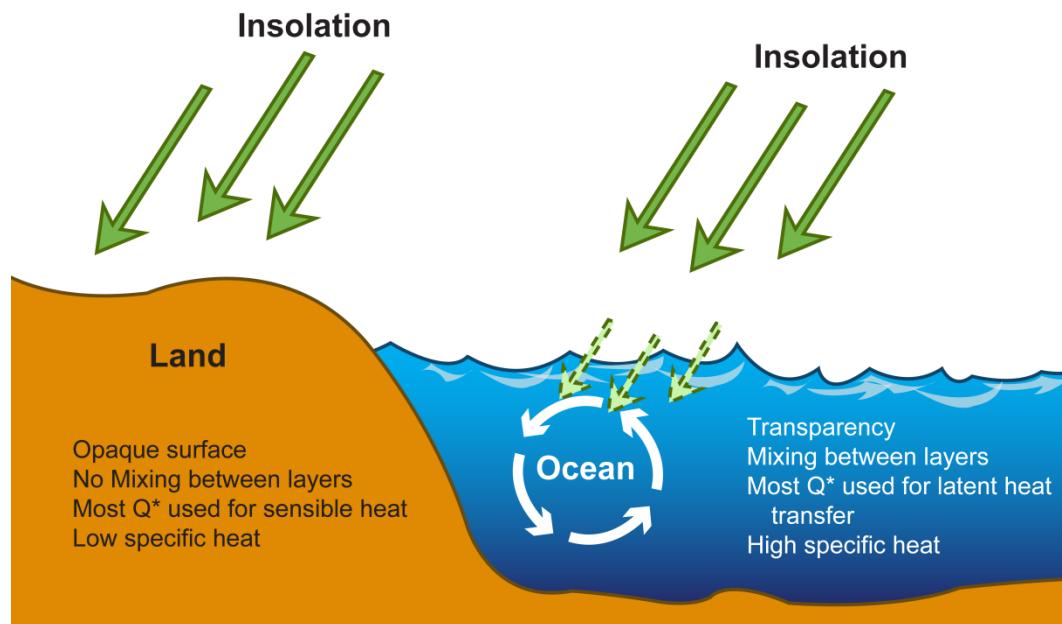
TEMPERATURE

3.1. Introduction. Temperature is important to the aircrew because it enters into the computation of most aircraft performance parameters. Aircrews can use the information to determine load capacities and takeoff roll information. During hot weather conditions some aircraft cannot take off until the temperature and pressure altitude conditions become more favorable. This chapter relates heat and temperature, describes commonly used temperature scales, and surveys temperature variations both at the surface and aloft.

3.2. Measuring Temperature.

3.2.1. Temperature is a measurement of heat energy and describes the degree of molecular activity. Since different substances have different molecular structures, equal amounts of heat applied to two different objects of equal mass usually results in one object getting hotter than the other. For example, a land surface becomes hotter than a water surface when equal amounts of heat are added to each. In [Figure 3.1](#), Q^* indicates the heat which becomes sensible or measurable heat on land but in water becomes latent or stored heat. The sun's radiation unevenly heats the Earth's surface during the day, creating temperature and pressure differences that ultimately drive the Earth's weather.

Figure 3.1. Land has Greater Temperature Variance than Water.

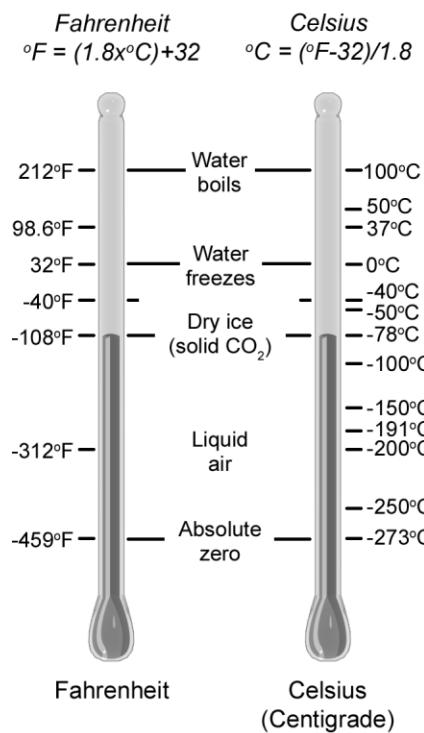


3.3. Temperature Scales.

3.3.1. Fahrenheit and Celsius (centigrade) are the names given to the two temperature scales important to the aircrew member. On the Fahrenheit (F) scale, the freezing point is at 32 degrees and the boiling point at 212 degrees --a difference of 180 degrees ([Figure 3.2](#)). On the Celsius (C) scale, the freezing point is at 0 degrees and the boiling point at 100 degrees -- a difference of 100 degrees. The ratio between degrees F and degrees Celsius is, therefore,

180 to 100, or 9 to 5. This means that a temperature difference of 9 degrees F is equal to a difference of 5 degrees C. This ratio is used in converting from one scale to another as shown in **Figure 3.2**. The measurement of outside air temperatures with the typical aircraft thermometer is influenced by several factors (such as radiation, air compression, and friction) which tend to decrease the accuracy of these observations. Such effects may cause the reading to differ from the true free-air temperature by 25 degrees F (14 degrees C) or more, except where careful engineering has been provided. Most flight manuals contain a temperature correction chart to obtain true air temperature.

Figure 3.2. Temperature Scales.



3.4. Diurnal Cycle.

3.4.1. Diurnal variation is the daily change in temperature from day to night. During the day, incoming solar radiation exceeds outgoing terrestrial radiation and the surface becomes warmer. The daily temperature maximum usually lags behind the maximum solar insolation, occurring during the mid-afternoon hours. At night, solar radiation ceases, but longwave terrestrial radiation continues to emanate upward from the Earth's surface, causing it to cool. The same temperature lag process explains why the minimum temperature usually occurs just after sunrise. The continued nighttime cooling process lags a bit even after sunrise and is one reason fog can form shortly after sunrise. The range of temperature between night and day varies considerably, both with season and location. This daily variation ranges as much as 30 to 50 degrees Fahrenheit in arid areas to 15 to 20 degrees Fahrenheit in most mid-latitude locations. It is greater near the surface of barren high-level areas, over sand, plowed fields, and rocks. It is much smaller over thick vegetation and deep water surfaces. Practically no daily temperature change occurs in the free air 4,000 feet or more above the surface in the

troposphere. The daytime vertical temperature mixing process rarely extends above 4,000 feet above ground level (AGL).

3.4.2. Aircrack Note.

3.4.2.1. *The temperature (and resultant air density) at and near the surface greatly affects aircraft allowable gross weights for both takeoff and landing. An aircraft taking off during night or early morning in cooler, denser air has more allowable gross weight (all other factors being equal) than it would have in the early afternoon when the air is warmed and becomes less dense.*

3.5. Land/Sea Difference.

3.5.1. The temperature distribution over the Earth's surface largely depends on the seasons and on the composition and distribution of land/sea surfaces. [Figure 3.3](#) and [Figure 3.4](#) shows the surface temperature distribution for January and July in both hemispheres and clearly illustrates the influence of topography on the temperature. The following pertinent information can be noted:

- 3.5.1.1. Ocean areas between latitudes 40 degrees N and S show little temperature change from summer to winter.
- 3.5.1.2. Land areas are warmer than the adjacent water areas at the same latitude during summer.
- 3.5.1.3. Water areas are warmer than the adjacent land areas at the same latitude during winter.
- 3.5.1.4. Both the warmest and coldest temperatures are found over the land areas.

Figure 3.3. Surface Temperature Distribution (Jan).

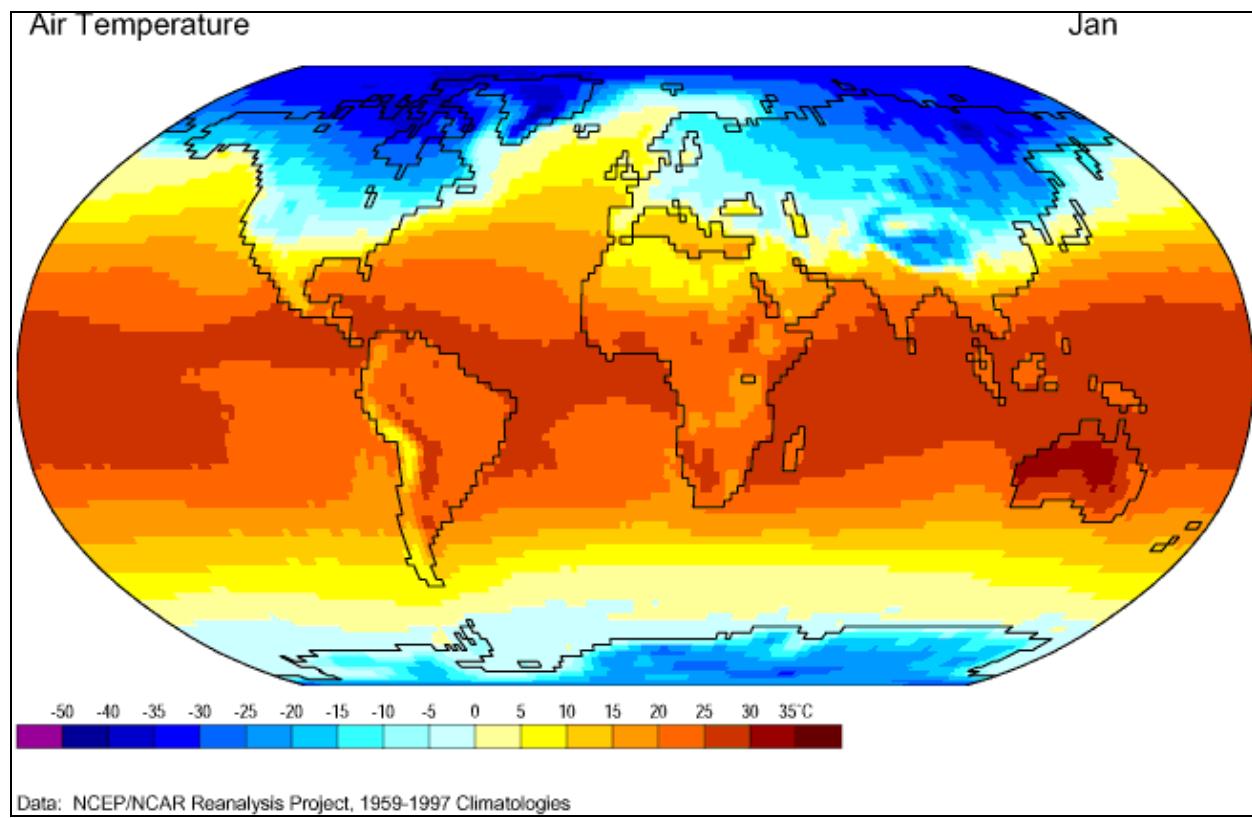
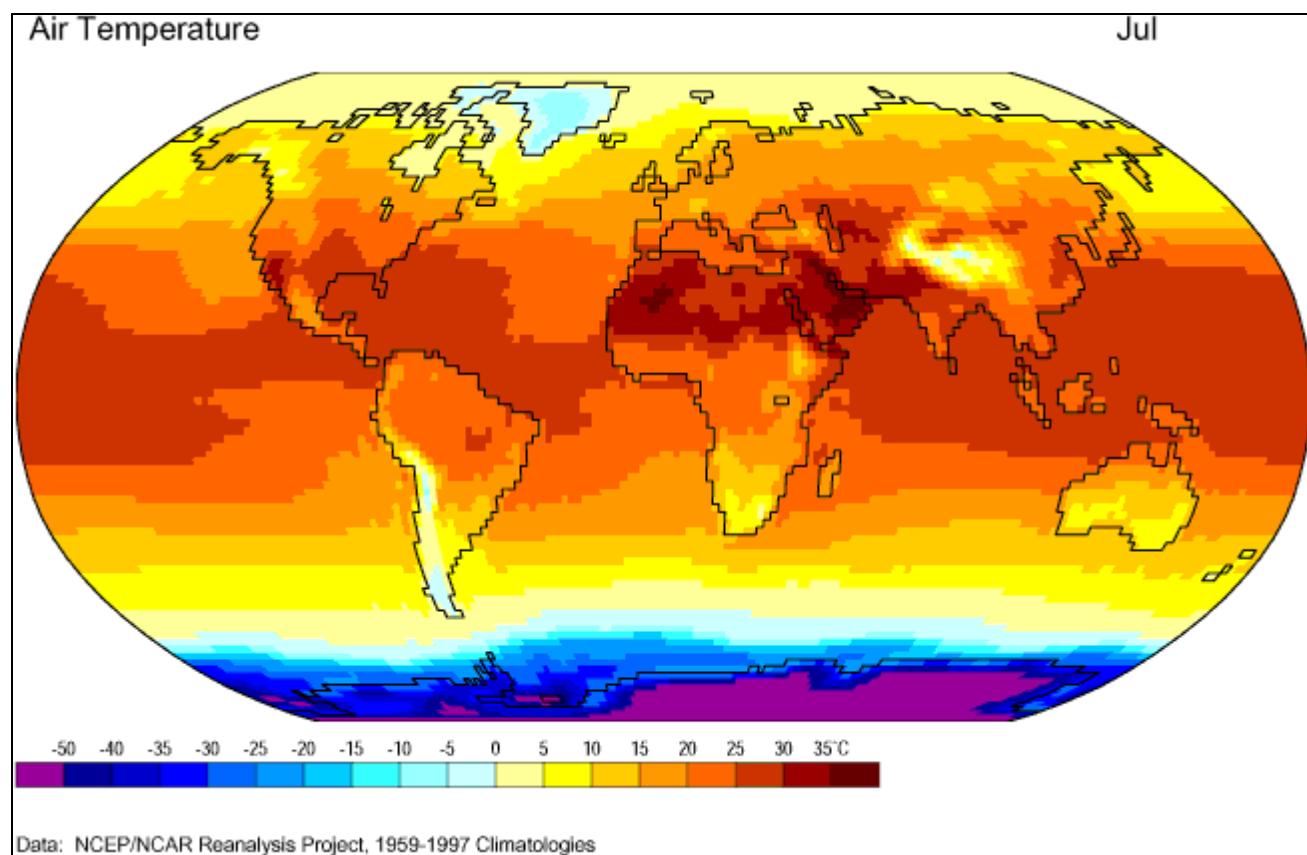
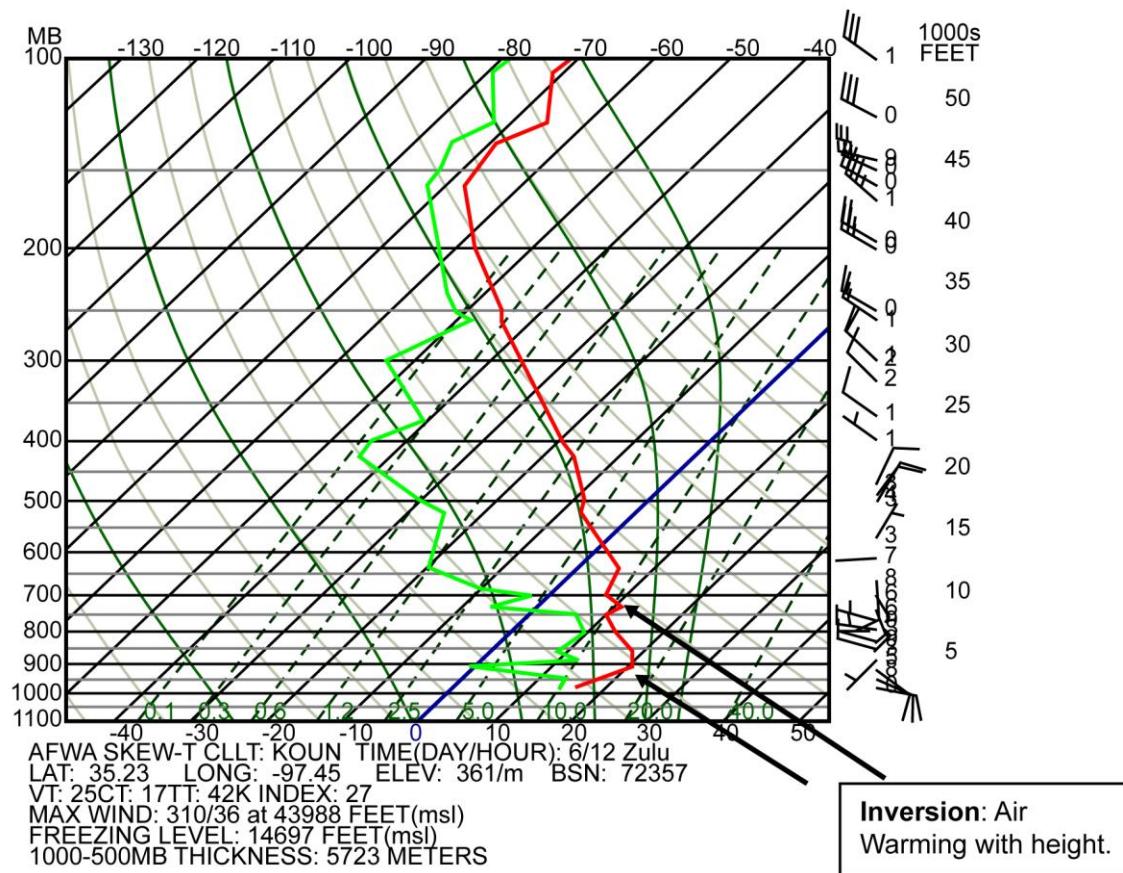


Figure 3.4. Surface Temperature Distribution (Jul).

3.6. Lapse Rate.

3.6.1. Temperature normally decreases with increasing altitude throughout the troposphere. This decrease of temperature with altitude is called the lapse rate, expressed in degrees per thousand feet. The standard lapse rate in the troposphere is 2 degrees C (3.6 degrees F) per 1,000 feet. This value serves as the basis for calibrating aircraft instruments and preparing performance charts. [Figure 3.5](#) is a plot of the vertical profile of temperature (red line), dewpoint (green line), and pressure (horizontal black lines) at a point location. Variation in the lapse rate may change with altitude. At a given time and place, the vertical temperature might decrease at a rate of 3°C per 1,000 ft from the ground to an altitude of 5,000 ft, at a rate of 1°C per 1,000 ft between 5,000 and 7,000 ft, and at 2°C per 1,000 ft above 7,000 ft until the tropopause is reached. Rarely does the temperature decrease at an orderly rate. In fact, temperature inversions are common in the troposphere, where temperature increases with height. Notice the relatively deep inversion from 1000 mb to 900 mb in Figure 3-4, with a smaller one between 750 mb and 725 mb.

Figure 3.5. Lapse Rate Temperature Reversals are Called Inversions.



3.7. Inversions.

3.7.1. When a layer within the troposphere increases in temperature with altitude it is called an inversion, because the usual decrease in temperature with altitude is inverted. Inversions are usually confined to a relatively shallow layer several hundred feet thick but can be up to a few thousand feet in depth. The three main types of inversions are the radiation, subsidence and frontal. The most common inversion over land, the radiation or nocturnal inversion, is produced immediately above the ground on clear, relatively still nights. Since air is a poor conductor, the ground loses heat rapidly through terrestrial radiation, cooling the layer and creating a temperature inversion. The coldest air is often adjacent to the Earth's surface with the amount of cooling decreasing rapidly with altitude, which causes the temperature to increase up to some elevation. The air temperature a thousand feet above the ground is affected very little or not at all. Terrestrial radiation thus causes the lowest layer of air to be colder than the air just above that layer. If skies are overcast, nighttime cooling is reduced, thus reducing the likelihood of a radiation inversion forming. Inversions are also found in association with movement of colder air under warm air or the movement of warm air over cold air. Such inversions are often called frontal inversions. Their formation will be discussed in the chapter on fronts. A subsidence inversion sometimes forms as a result of widespread sinking of air (subsidence) within a relatively thick layer aloft, while the air below this layer is essentially unchanged. This sinking air is heated by compression, and it may become warmer than the air below it. Subsidence inversions are commonly encountered

in areas affected by high pressure. Sometimes an aircraft will encounter more than one subsidence inversion. [Figure 3.5](#) (above) illustrates a ground (surface-based) inversion and an inversion aloft.

3.7.2. Aircrew Note.

3.7.2.1. *Restrictions to vision, such as fog, haze, smoke, and low clouds, are often found in or below low inversions and in layers through which there is only a small change in temperature. The air in these layers is usually very smooth; however, light turbulence may be expected when flying through inversion flight levels.*

3.7.2.2. *Inversions often form the boundary between altitudes of widely varying wind speeds and directions. In the Midwest, a summertime radiation inversion often divides the light and variable surface winds from the low level jet winds. The wind speed difference can be 40 knots within a few hundred feet, causing wind shear and turbulence in the lower levels. The low level radiation inversion and associated wind shear/turbulence is most common in the lowest 2,000 feet of the atmosphere.*

Chapter 4

ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE AND ALTIMETRY

4.1. Introduction. Atmospheric pressure is one of the most important weather parameters that aviators need to understand. Aviators need to know the differences between the altimeter setting, sea level pressure, pressure altitude, density altitude, and constant pressure values. All of these different pressure variables impact aviators in significantly different ways. A “QNH” altimeter setting used by most countries represents a pressure reading quite different than a “QFE” pressure reading used by a few. The following sections will discuss the important pressure concepts and their impact upon flying operations.

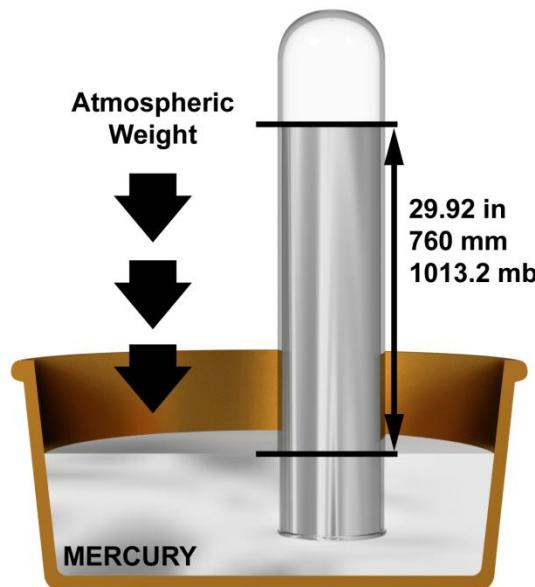
4.2. Atmospheric Pressure.

4.2.1. Atmospheric pressure is the force-per-unit area exerted by the weight of a column of air extending directly above a given fixed point. As a result of constant and complex air movements and changes in air mass characteristics, the weight of this air column is continually fluctuating. These changes in air weight, and therefore air pressure, are measured with pressure-sensitive instruments called barometers. Most military weather stations use two barometers for barometric pressure readings.

4.2.2. Barometric pressure is expressed in many ways throughout the world. The three most common units are inches of mercury (Hg), millibars (mb), and hectopascals (hPa). Since the Kollsman window of altimeters in United States aircraft is calibrated for settings in inches of mercury, United States military and civil weather agencies express altimeter settings in inches of mercury. Many foreign nations use millibar for altimeter settings. Crew members flying in these countries can consult the Flight Information Handbook, Conversion Tables, Section D, for a table of millibars to inches of mercury and vice versa. The standard atmospheric pressure at sea level is 1013.25 mb, which corresponds to 29.92 inches of mercury.

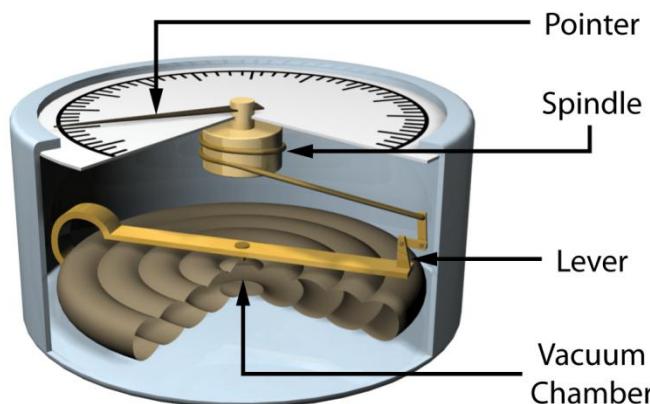
4.2.3. Some civilian weather stations, both domestic and overseas, still use the mercurial barometer. Air Force crew members should be familiar with all three barometric pressure instruments. The mercurial barometer, shown in [Figure 4.1](#), consists of an open dish of mercury into which is placed the open end of an evacuated glass tube. Mercury is used because it is one of the heaviest liquids at normal temperatures. The mercury barometer was used as the standard for deriving pressure readings for many years and is still used as the measuring standard at many civilian overseas locations. Atmospheric pressure forces mercury to rise in the tube. In an ideal or standardized atmosphere at sea level, a column of mercury rises to a height of 29.92 inches or 760 millimeters. In other words, a column of mercury measuring 29.92 inches represents the weight of a column of air having the same cross section as the column of mercury and extending from sea level to the top of the atmosphere. The change in mercury height measures differences in air pressure at that location.

Figure 4.1. Normal Atmospheric Pressure at Sea Level.



4.2.4. The necessity for a more convenient and sturdy pressure instrument resulted in the Aneroid Barometer. This barometer doesn't use fluid to measure pressure. Instead the internal workings has a cell made of thin metal to make it flexible, operating in a partially evacuated environment so it responds more readily to changes in atmospheric pressure ([Figure 4.2](#)). One end of the cell is fixed, while the other end is coupled to a pointer on a dial marked with pressure readings expressed in feet. The coupling itself magnifies the movement of the free end of the cell so as to express its calibration of 1,000 feet of altitude to each one inch of barometric pressure change. This approximates the rate of pressure change found in the lowest 10,000 feet of the atmosphere.

Figure 4.2. Aneroid Barometer Inner View.

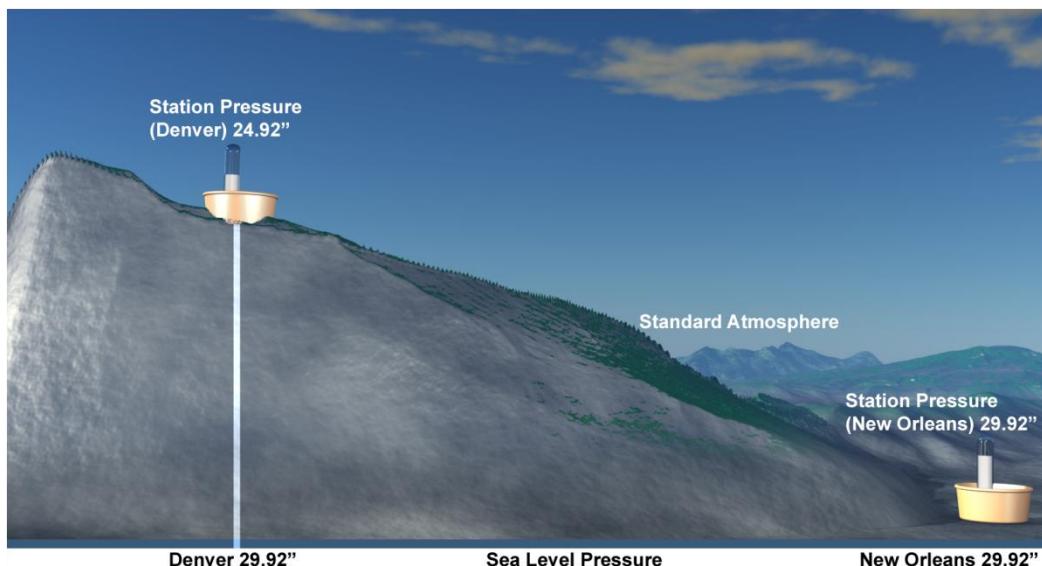


4.2.5. Most military and all fixed Air Force Weather observing sites use some form of automated observing system. The system continuously displays the altimeter setting and can display station pressure when needed. It digitally displays pressure readings in either inches or millibars.

4.3. Pressure Distribution.

4.3.1. When the pressure is measured at an airport, it is the weight of the air above the airport that is measured. This is called station pressure. Pressure usually decreases with height so the pressure at a high elevation will be less than pressure at a lower elevation. To analyze weather maps, the pressure at different observing stations must be compared. Since station pressure varies with the station elevation, all station pressures must be adjusted to some common level to make the comparison ([Figure 4.3](#)). The commonly reduced level used is Mean Sea Level (MSL).

Figure 4.3. Larger Air Column = Higher Station pressure (assuming a standard atmosphere).



4.4. Pressure Correction.

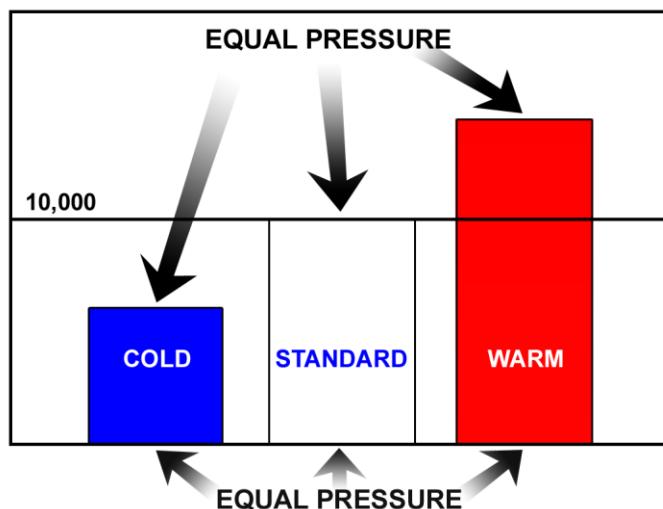
4.4.1. The biggest change in barometric pressure comes with height. Within the lowest few thousand feet of the troposphere, where most of the atmosphere is concentrated because of gravity, the change amounts roughly to 1 inch of mercury for each 1,000 feet of altitude. In [Figure 4.3](#) (above), we illustrate this concept by using two reported barometric pressures at Denver and New Orleans in an assumed standard atmosphere. The observer at Denver, located at 5,000 feet above sea level, will read approximately 24.92 inches on the barometer. The observer at New Orleans will read approximately 29.92 inches. Since all stations are not at the same elevation and conditions (e.g., densities) vary, the observed station pressure is adjusted to mean sea level pressure (MSL) for pressure reporting purposes. If this correction was not applied, Denver would almost always report a lower barometric pressure than New Orleans. Pressure variations are continually occurring at any given location at any given time. There are diurnal, seasonal, frontal, and occasional abrupt pressure changes. Abrupt changes occur due to frontal passages, thunderstorms, and the movement of high and low pressure systems. Passages of well-developed pressure systems (either highs or lows) are often accompanied by a large change in pressure with the changes occurring over a several hour period. The more gradual variations occur on a weekly, monthly, and seasonal basis.

But pressure varies most with vertical altitude changes and corresponding air temperature changes.

4.5. Temperature Effects on Pressure.

4.5.1. Air expands as it becomes warmer and contracts as it cools. **Figure 4.4** shows three columns of air--one colder than standard temperature, one at standard temperature, and one warmer than standard temperature. Air pressure is equal at the bottom of each column and at the top of each column, but the volume of each air column differs with respect to temperature. Vertical expansion of the warm column makes it higher than the column at standard temperature. Contraction of the cold column makes it shorter. Since pressure decrease is the same in each column, the rate of decrease of pressure with height in warm air is less than standard. The rate of decrease of pressure with height in cold air is greater than standard. Atmospheric pressure readings are used quite extensively by meteorologists and aircrew members alike. Analyzed weather chart pressure patterns give insight to observed weather and forecast weather changes.

Figure 4.4. Pressure Rate Decrease with Height Varies with Temperature.



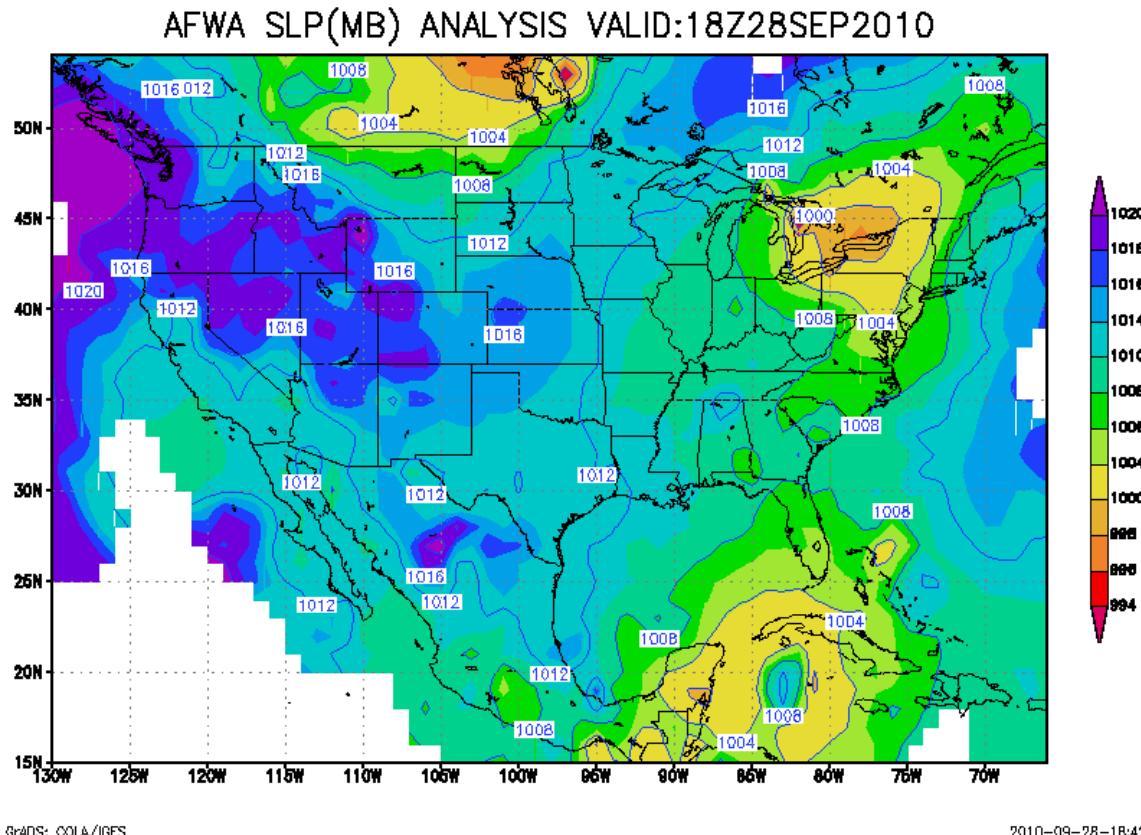
4.6. Pressure Maps.

4.6.1. There are numerous pressure patterns that aircrews can learn to recognize on weather charts because they frequently happen and are associated with numerous flying hazards. There is a direct relationship between pressure systems and air flow (wind). In general, high pressure areas are typically regions of favorable weather conditions, while lows are often associated with bad weather.

4.6.2. To provide a visual portrayal of the pressure patterns across the country, the MSL pressures from the observing stations are plotted on a surface weather map. Lines connecting stations of equal pressure are called isobars (expressed in millibars). They are usually drawn at 4 millibar (mb) intervals. These isobars form a pressure "topographic" map. In many cases, isobaric patterns yield clues to possible weather conditions. Lower pressure values usually indicate bad weather while high pressure typically indicates good weather (**Figure 4.5**). Tightly compacted isobars indicate quickly changing weather and strong winds. Loosely aligned isobars indicate light winds and generally fair or static weather conditions. On Figure

4-5, notice the high pressure values and weak pressure gradient over Texas. This area is likely to experience clear skies and light winds. Comparatively, notice the low pressure values and tight pressure gradient over upstate New York. This area is likely to experience worse weather conditions with a greater potential for flying hazards.

Figure 4.5. Surface Pressure Chart.



4.6.3. Above the Earth's surface, the convention is to use constant pressure charts, with lines called contours depicting the varying height of standard atmospheric pressure levels. Thus, contours are lines of equal altitude ([Figure 4.6](#)) and are expressed in meters. Analyzed contour patterns can indicate the relative strength of upper level winds much the same as the isobars on the surface weather map. The tighter the contour, the stronger the winds because rapid change in atmospheric pressure heights are correlated with increased winds. Common surface pressure and upper air chart symbols are explained below:

4.6.3.1. Low--An area of low pressure surrounded on all sides by higher pressure (as outlined by isobars on surface charts) or an area of low true altitude surrounded by higher true altitudes (as shown by contours on upper air charts): also called a cyclone.

4.6.3.2. High--An area of high pressure surrounded on all sides by lower pressure (as outlined by isobars on surface charts) or an area of high true altitude surrounded by lower true altitudes (as shown by contours on upper air charts): also called an anticyclone.

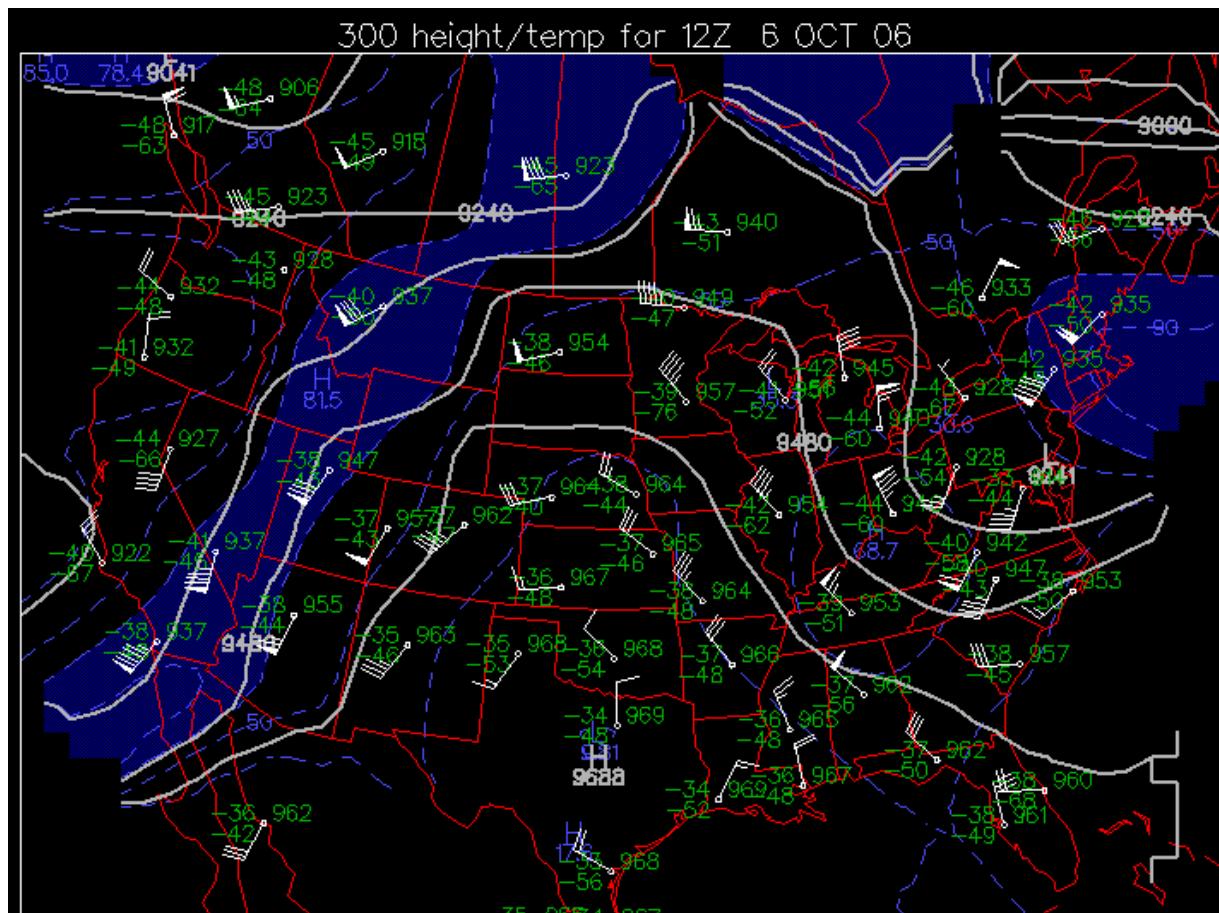
4.6.3.3. Trough--An elongated area of relative minimums in the pressure or height field. On a surface chart, a trough appears as an elongated area of lower pressure, with the

lowest pressure occurring along a line called a "trough line" that marks the place of maximum curvature in the isobars. On an upper-air chart, a trough appears as an elongated area of lower heights, with the lowest heights occurring along a trough line that marks the place of maximum curvature in the height contours.

4.6.3.4. Ridge-- An elongated area of relative maximums in the pressure or height field. On a surface chart, a ridge appears as an elongated area of higher pressure, with the highest pressure occurring along a line called a "ridge line" that marks the place of maximum curvature in the isobars. On an upper-air chart, a ridge appears as an elongated area of higher heights, with the highest heights occurring along a ridge line that marks the place of maximum curvature in the height contours.

4.6.3.5. Col--The neutral area between two highs and two lows.

Figure 4.6. Upper Air Chart.



4.6.4. Aircrae Note.

4.6.4.1. Pressure variations also affect the atmosphere's density, and therefore they affect flight. The most noticeable effects of decreased pressure due to increased elevation are higher required true air speed for takeoffs and landings, increased takeoff and landing distances, decreased rate of climb, and stalls at increased true air speeds.

4.7. Standard Atmosphere.

4.7.1. Since the vertical distribution of both temperature and pressure changes with time and place, some convenient vertical structure of the atmosphere, representing average conditions, had to be assumed to obtain fixed reference points. The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) determined a year-round average of pressure/height/temperature soundings that is now considered the standard atmosphere for use in calibrating the aneroid barometer.

4.7.1.1. Here is a partial list of conditions assigned by ICAO that make up the standard atmosphere:

4.7.1.1.1. A surface temperature of 15°C (59°F) at sea level.

4.7.1.1.2. A surface pressure of 29.92 inches of mercury (1013.2 millibars, 14.7 pounds per square inch) at sea level.

4.7.1.1.3. A lapse rate within the troposphere of approximately 2°C per 1,000 feet up to the tropopause.

4.7.1.1.4. A tropopause at approximately 36,000 feet.

4.7.1.1.5. A lapse rate of 0°C in the stratosphere to approximately 82,000 feet.

4.7.2. The advent of aviation early in the last century brought about a search for an accurate method of measuring the altitude at which an aircraft was flying. Barometric pressure was ideal for several reasons, chiefly the fact that pressure change with altitude is approximately 10,000 times greater than that found in equivalent horizontal distances. The rate of change in vertical heights in the lower atmosphere is about 1 inch for every 1,000 feet of altitude. An aircraft altimeter (**Figure 4.7**) is essentially an aneroid barometer calibrated to indicate altitude in feet instead of pressure. This altitude is independent of the terrain below. An altimeter reads accurately only in a standard atmosphere and when properly adjusted altimeter settings are used. Remember, an altimeter is only a pressure-measuring device. It indicates 10,000 feet with 29.92 set in the Kollsman window, and the pressure is 697 millibars, whether or not the altitude is actually 10,000 feet.

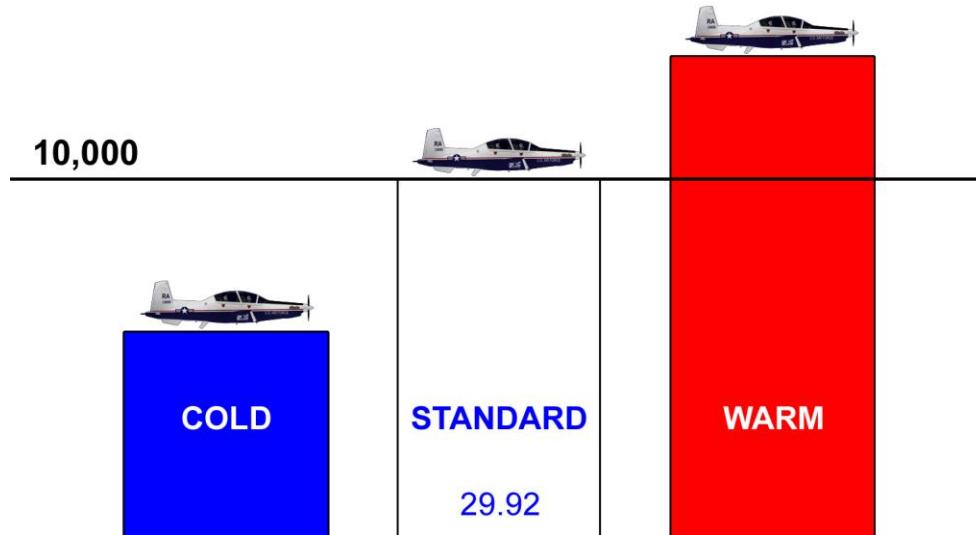
Figure 4.7. Aneroid Altimeter.



4.7.3. The effect is important since in the lowest 15,000 feet of the atmosphere a $2\text{-}3^{\circ}\text{C}$ deviation of the mean temperature from the standard temperature of 2.8°C will cause about a 1% percent error in the altimeter reading. For example, if an aircraft with a correct altimeter

setting is flying at an indicated altitude of 10,000 feet but the air below flight level is 11°C warmer than the standard atmosphere temperature of 2.8°C, the altimeter will read about 4 percent too low. The aircraft will be flying at a true altitude of 10,400 feet (400 feet higher than indicated). Carefully study **Figure 4.8** to visually see the effects of temperature on aircraft indicated and true altitudes.

Figure 4.8. Effects of Temperature on True and Indicated Altitude.



4.8. Pressure Altitude.

4.8.1. In the standard atmosphere, sea level pressure is 29.92 inches Hg or 1013.2 millibars. This is called the standard datum plane. Pressure falls at a fixed rate upward through this hypothetical atmosphere. Pressure altitude is the altitude above that standard datum plane. Therefore, crew members can easily determine pressure altitude from the aircraft altimeter whether in flight or on the ground. Simply set the altimeter to the standard altimeter setting of 29.92 inches, and the altimeter will indicate pressure altitude. Block 7 of the Flight Weather Briefing, DD Form 175-1, is for pressure altitude calculations furnished by AF Weather personnel.

4.9. Density Altitude.

4.9.1. Density altitude is pressure altitude corrected for nonstandard temperature. Since standard atmospheric conditions are seldom encountered, the density altitude for an airfield may vary several thousand feet from the actual mean sea level elevation of the field. On a hot day, the air becomes "thinner," and its density at the field is equivalent to a higher altitude in the standard atmosphere. The field then has a high (+) density altitude. An example of this would be a field located 5,000 feet above mean sea level with a density altitude of 10,000 feet. An aircraft flying at this field would then be operating in air normally found in the standard atmosphere at 10,000 feet. Conversely, on a cold day the air becomes heavy. Its density is the same as that at an altitude in the standard atmosphere lower than the field elevation. The density altitude is then lower (-) than normal.

4.9.2. The efficiency of aircraft performance is greatly affected by the varying densities of the atmosphere. Low density altitude increases aircraft performance. High density altitude, however, can be a hazard since it reduces aircraft performance, especially if the aircraft is critically loaded. The lift of the wing or blade is affected by the speed of the air around it and the density of the air through which it moves. In areas of high density altitude, additional engine power is required to compensate for the thin air. Takeoff and landing rolls are lengthened, and rates of climb and service ceiling are reduced. Density altitude can also be determined by using a dead reckoning (DR) computer or a conversion chart found in aircraft T.O.'s. If you know the ambient temperature and the pressure altitude, you can use a simple conversion chart to find the density altitude. For example, reference Figure 4-9b., if the outside temperature is 30°C and the pressure altitude is 2,010 feet, follow the 30°C value vertically until it intersects the slanted pressure altitude value of 2,010 feet. Follow the horizontal density altitude value to the left of the graph for the density altitude in thousands of feet. In this case, the density altitude is approximately 4,300 feet. For a more precise DA use the complete formula illustrated in **Figures 4.9 & Figure 4.10** Temperature variation is incorporated into the formula for obtaining density altitude from a known pressure altitude. Each 1°C variation from standard temperature changes the density altitude approximately 120 feet. If the actual temperature is below standard, the density altitude is lowered.

Figure 4.9. Example.

You can use the below formulas to calculate DA:

The field elevation is 1,500 feet with a current altimeter setting of 29.41. Surface temperature is 30°C.

Pressure altitude variation (PAV) = $(29.92 - 29.41) \times 1,000 = 510$ feet

PA = field elevation + PAV = $1,500 + 510 = 2,010$ feet

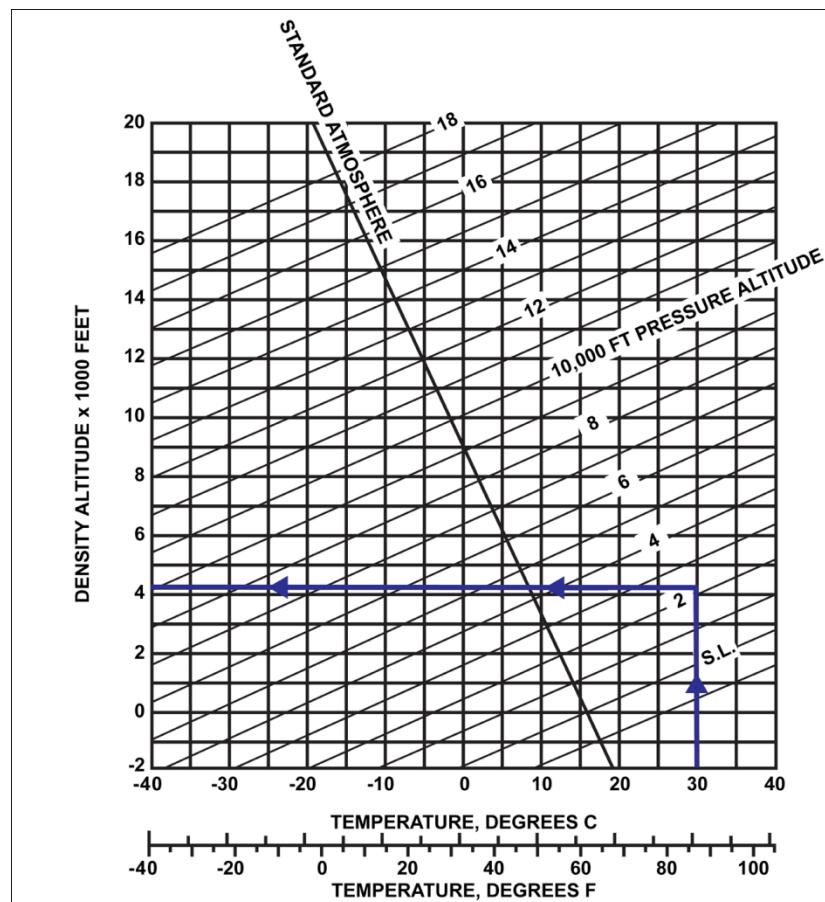
The standard temperature for 2010 feet is 11°C

$V_t = 30^\circ\text{C} - 11^\circ\text{C} = 19^\circ\text{C}$

$DA = 2010' + (120 \times 19) = 4,290$ feet

Or use a chart if you know PA and current Temperature (next page).

Figure 4.10. Density Altitude Chart.



4.9.3. There are three different altimeter settings. Listed below are comparisons of the three altimeter settings:

<u>SETTING</u>	<u>AT AIRPORT</u>	<u>IN THE AIR</u>
Standard QNE 29.92 Hg 1013.25 mb	Variable elevation reading above or below actual elevation.	Positive separation by pressure level but at varying altitudes.
QNH	Actual elevation above MSL reading when aircraft on ground.	Altitude above MSL (without consideration of temperature).
QFE	Zero elevation reading when indicated aircraft on ground.	Height above ground (without consideration of temperature.)

4.9.4. The QNE is always 29.92 inches Hg and results in the altimeter indicating height above the standard datum plane or pressure altitude. This altimeter setting is used above the

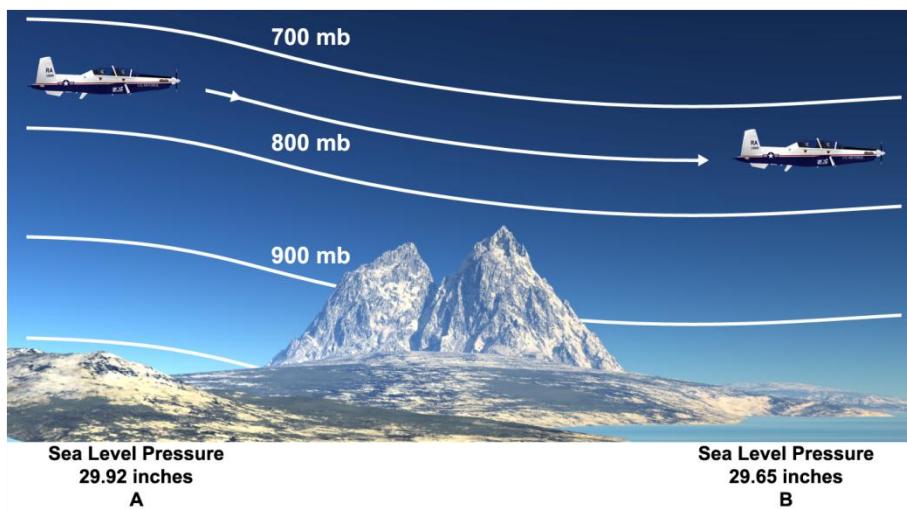
transition altitude (18,000 feet MSL in the United States). The QNH altimeter setting is a pressure reading which, when set in the aircraft altimeter Kollsman window, will cause the instrument to read its true height above MSL. Although QNH is the standard altimeter setting throughout most of the world, some locations may give it in millibars. If pressure data cannot be obtained in inches, use the conversion table in the Flight Information Handbook, Section D, to convert them. A QFE altimeter setting (used by a few nations) is the actual surface pressure and is not corrected to sea level. If QFE is set, the altimeter indicates actual elevation above the field, but does not ensure terrain clearance. Aircrews must exercise extreme caution if conducting operations at a location using QFE. An altimeter correctly set is good for aircraft traffic separation because any atmospheric pressure or temperature deviation is common to all aircraft in the area. It is also useful for landing, since a ground-level pressure variation would diminish to zero. But the pressure altimeter will not automatically show exact actual height when in flight. It is still the aircrew's responsibility to ensure terrain avoidance.

4.9.5. There are three factors that determine the pressure altimeter:

- 4.9.5.1. The atmospheric pressure level which the instrument is measuring.
- 4.9.5.2. The mechanical displacement of the indicator needles: the altimeter setting.
- 4.9.5.3. Instrument error. (Determined for each individual altimeter)

4.9.6. Aside from the possible instrument error, it is easy to anticipate the effects of the other two variables by understanding the meteorological factors: first, the variation of sea level pressure from that of the standard atmosphere; and second, the deviation of the vertical temperature distribution from that of the standard atmosphere. At and above the transition altitude (18,000 feet MSL in the US), aircraft altimeters must be set to the standard altimeter setting 29.92 inches Hg. The pilot flying above the transition level must adjust the altimeter to the QNH setting when descending through the transition level for operation below that altitude. This will provide proper air traffic and terrain separation. When flying below the transition altitude, the altimeter must be adjusted to the surface pressure setting (QNH) of the nearest ground reporting station. Even when sea level pressure does not change along a route of a flight, incorrect altitude indications may result from temperature changes. If the air is much colder than the standard atmosphere, the actual aircraft altitude will be lower than the altimeter indicates; if the air is warmer, the aircraft will be higher than the altimeter indicates ([Figure 4.11](#)). It is important that crew members understand these errors so that when flying in cold weather and operating in mountainous regions at minimum en route altitudes (MEA), they do not have difficulty maintaining terrain clearance.

Figure 4.11. Altitude Error Due to Nonstandard Temperatures Aloft (D-Value).



Chapter 5

WIND

5.1. Introduction. Wind is moving air, and while normally referred to as “wind,” certain geographic locations have significant types of winds that are referred to by names. For example, the Mediterranean has the Mistral, the Rocky Mountain region has the Chinook, Southern California has a wind called the Santa Ana, and northern Africa has the hot, dry, Sirocco wind. Whatever it is called, the aviator is concerned with wind on every flight. Winds near the surface and aloft are important in takeoff, en route, and landing conditions. Knowledge of the winds is essential for navigation, fuel management, and flight safety purposes.

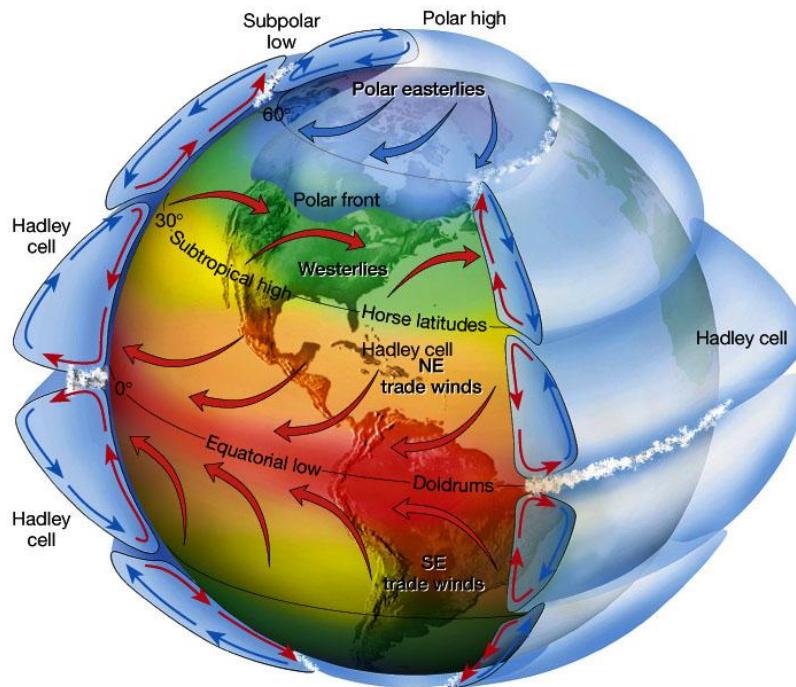
5.2. Causes of Wind.

5.2.1. Atmospheric pressure and temperature variations cause the air to move in two ways: ascending and descending currents (vertical motions) and the horizontal flow of air known as wind. Both of these air motions affect the weather. Wind transports water vapor and therefore plays an important role in the formation of clouds, fog, and precipitation. This chapter will discuss mainly the horizontal flow of air. The vertical motion of air and its impact upon weather is treated in later chapters. General circulation describes the observed patterns of winds and pressure which persist throughout the year. General circulation patterns redistribute the unequal heating of the Earth’s surface allowing large scale migrations of warmer and cooler air. The circulations form semi-permanent pressure systems, steer any migratory pressure systems and also determine where tropical storms may track. Also the general circulation uniquely balances many controlling factors such as angular momentum and the Coriolis force. The key driver of atmospheric circulation is uneven heating of the Earth’s surface by the sun. The most direct rays strike the Earth near the equator, heating equatorial regions much more than polar regions. Yet the equatorial regions don’t get hotter and hotter, nor do the polar regions colder and colder because the general circulation transports heat between latitudes.

5.2.2. Because the Earth rotates, and its surface is not even or uniform in heat capacity, three sets of primary circulation cells develop in both hemispheres ([Figure 5.1](#)). The cells closest to the equator are called the Hadley cells, the mid-latitude cells are called the Ferrel cells, and the farthest cells are called the Polar cells. This simple circulation model is constantly modified by:

- 5.2.2.1. The irregular distribution of oceans and continents.
- 5.2.2.2. Irregular terrain.
- 5.2.2.3. Daily variation in temperature.
- 5.2.2.4. Seasonal changes.

Figure 5.1. Three-Cell Model of the Earth's Circulation.



5.2.3. When a migrating parcel of air moves either northward or southward, a phenomenon known as the Coriolis force impacts its horizontal motion. If the parcel of air moves northward to a higher latitude, as with the northerly surface wind typically associated with the Ferrel cell, it will move ahead (to the right) of the point directly north of its initial starting point due to its greater speed (Figure 5.1). A parcel of air moving from north to south, from an area with a smaller circumference to an area with a larger one, encounters a lag because it enters a plane with a greater rim speed than the plane it left. Therefore, because of the lag, the air parcel would also deflect to the right. From this, we observe that if the only force at work is the rotation of the Earth, parcels of air moving north or south over considerable distances deflect to the right in the Northern Hemisphere (Figure 5.1). Therefore, if a parcel of air migrates from north to south, the parcel will deflect to the west. The Coriolis force is strongest at the poles and decreases to zero at the equator, and increases in strength as wind speed increases.

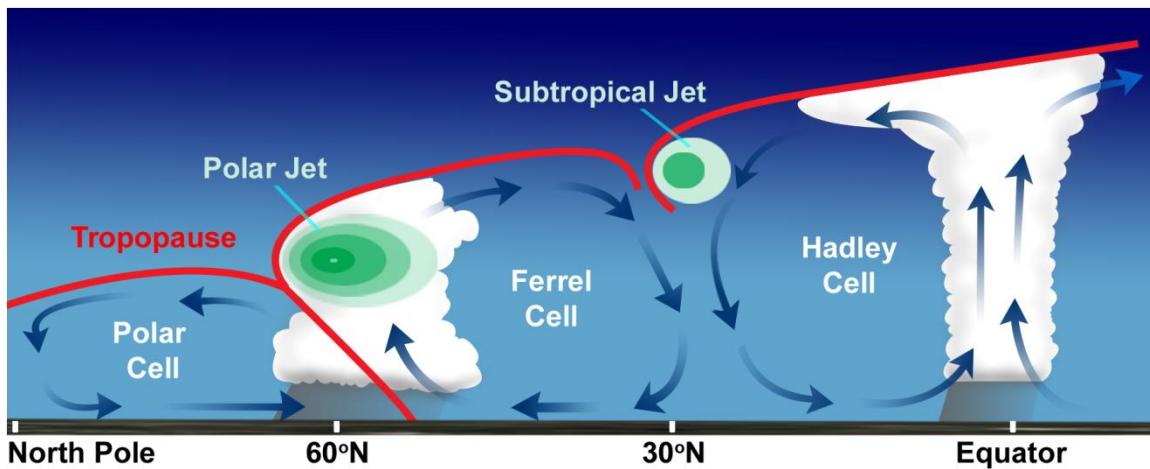
5.3. Jet Streams.

5.3.1. Using the three-cell model discussed earlier, we see that the various circulations due to unequal heating combine to create the jet streams that are centered at 30°N/S and 60°N/S on average (Figure 5.2) but constantly meander north and south. Winds generally increase with height through the troposphere due to the presence of a north-south temperature gradient in the mid-latitudes and the conservation of angular momentum, reaching a maximum near the tropopause. This wind maximum is called the jet stream. A jet stream, or “jet”, is a meandering region of concentrated, higher wind speeds that circles the Earth. In the wintertime, there are often two or three predominant jet streams: the polar-front jet (PFJ) stream, the subtropical and the arctic jet streams. The main and best known jet stream is the polar-front jet stream which frequently enhances major weather system development in the mid-latitudes. Within the jet stream are concentrated pockets of the strongest winds, often

called jet stream maxima or simply a “jet max”. The strongest vertical motions associated with jet streams occur under jet maxima, and these motions are a major factor in the development of low pressure systems.

5.3.2. The PFJ is generally found parallel to and on the “poleward” (cold) side of surface frontal systems, generally in the neighborhood of 30,000 feet; but, they can be above or below this level depending on the latitude and the season. In the Northern Hemisphere, as you look downwind into the jet stream, you will notice that the air in a jet core slowly rotates in a counterclockwise direction. If the air is moist, the ascending air on the warm air side will cause cirrus clouds to form. Strong vertical wind shear may be evident from the windswept appearance of the trailing ice crystals of hook-shaped cirrus. Very dense cirrostratus clouds form with an abrupt “poleward” edge near the jet core. The PFJ has a life cycle of formation, intensification, movement, and dissipation related to the polar front. The strength of the jet stream is greater in winter than in summer. The mean position of the polar jet stream shifts south in winter and north in summer moving with the seasonal migration of the polar front. As the jet stream moves southward, its core rises to higher altitudes, and on the average, its speed increases. The core of strongest winds is generally found between 25,000 feet and 40,000 feet, depending on latitude and season.

Figure 5.2. Formation of Jet Streams.



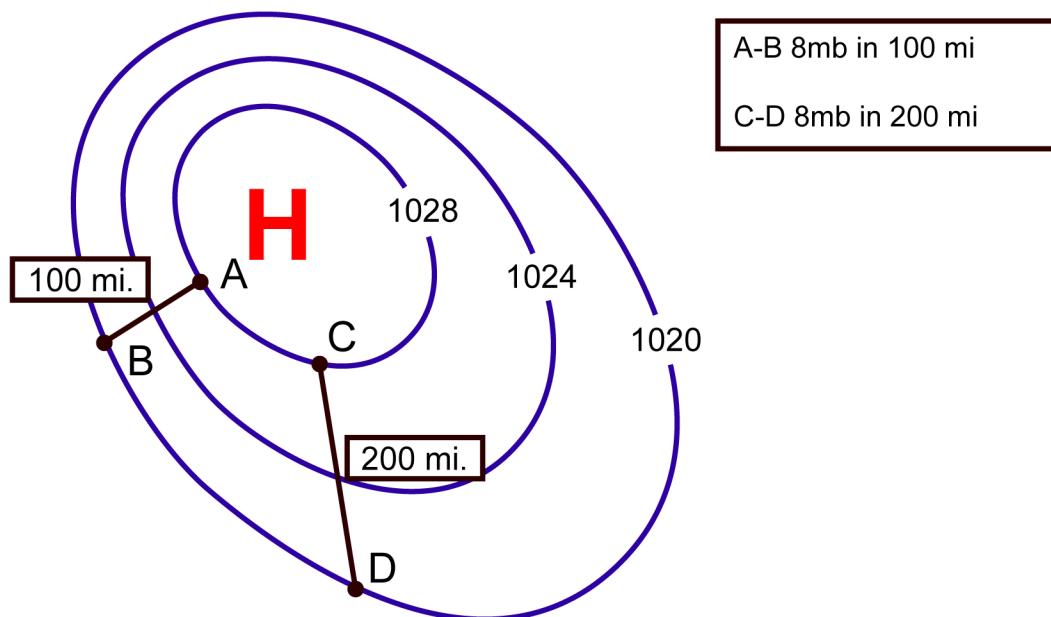
5.4. Circulation Patterns.

5.4.1. In the Northern Hemisphere, air flows clockwise around high pressure areas and counterclockwise around low pressure areas. This circulation pattern is referred to as cyclonic for a low and anti-cyclonic for a high. In briefings and forecasts, you will often encounter the term “pressure gradient” or just “gradient.” The pressure gradient is the rate change of pressure or height of a pressure surface (such as 850mb) with horizontal distance between high and low pressure areas. The greater the difference in pressure between highs and lows, the greater the pressure gradient is between those points. On surface and upper air charts, closer spacing of the isobars and contours indicate greater differences in pressure over a given distance. The closer the spacing, the faster air flows to equalize the pressure difference, therefore indicating higher wind speeds. The reason for this begins when a parcel of air from the higher pressure area starts moving toward the low pressure area. As it does, the Coriolis force begins to swing the parcel of air to the right. The force initiating the

horizontal movement (pressure gradient force) still exerts its pull, now to the left. When the pressure gradient force balances the Coriolis force, the air blows parallel to the isobars or contours. As this parcel of air enters these “lanes” between isobars or contours, it is virtually squeezed through the narrower channels formed by the stronger pressure gradient, and shown on the surface chart by a closer spacing of the isobars. Thus the moving parcel of air, channeled into a narrower corridor, picks up speed. The wind will lose speed if the air enters an area where the isobars indicate a lower pressure gradient (by being spaced farther apart). Without the Coriolis force, a parcel of air would move directly across the isobars from high to the lower pressure until the pressure equalized. This attempt to equalize pressure initiates the movement of the parcel of air from the higher to lower pressure area.

5.4.2. If you measure the perpendicular distance between the two adjoining isobars in **Figure 5.3**, the difference between A and B, and C and D is 4 mb. However, the 4 mb difference between A and B occurs over a shorter distance, making the pressure gradient and resultant winds stronger than those between C and D. Pressure gradients may be described as: steep, strong, flat, or weak. From a practical standpoint, it is sufficient to remember that the gradient (and wind) is strongest where the isobars or contours are closest.

Figure 5.3. Pressure Gradient Versus Wind Speed.



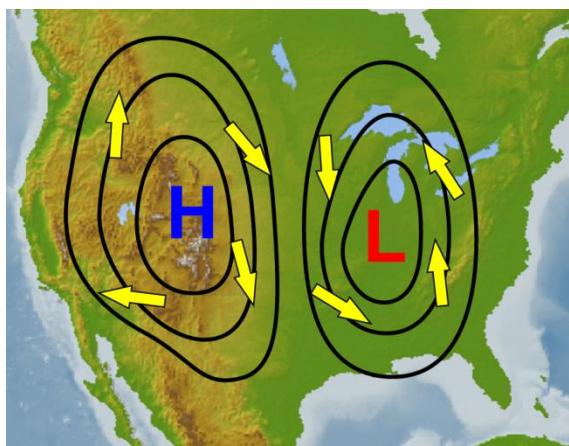
5.4.3. AircREW Note.

5.4.3.1. *If you need to get away from high velocity pressure gradient winds, the quickest route is to fly perpendicular to the winds with the wind flowing right to left; this will lead you toward the High pressure area and lower winds. If you fly with the wind flowing left to right, you will be going toward the Low, and toward higher winds.*

5.4.4. Surface friction slows air movement. Since the Coriolis force varies with wind speed, a reduction in the wind speed by friction means a reduction in the Coriolis force. This results in a disruption of the balance between the Coriolis and pressure gradient forces. When the new balance, including friction, is reached, the air blows at an angle across the isobars from

high to low pressure. This angle varies from 10° over the oceans to as much as 45° over rugged terrain. Friction effects on the air are greatest near the ground, but the effects are also carried aloft by ascending currents. Surface friction slows winds up to about 2,000 or 3,000 feet AGL (Figure 5.4). Above this level, friction effects decrease rapidly and are negligible for all practical purposes. Therefore, air about 3,000 feet or more AGL tends to flow parallel to the contours. As a result of changing pressure patterns with height, the flow of air around high and low pressure areas above the surface friction layer may be entirely different than indicated on the surface chart. It is quite possible for the surface wind to be light and variable, while the 30,000 foot wind has a speed of over 100 knots. In forecasting winds at flight level, the forecaster uses the constant pressure chart nearest that level, instead of the surface chart.

Figure 5.4. Surface Winds are Deflected Across Isobars Toward Lower Pressure.



5.5. Cyclones and Anticyclone (Highs and Lows).

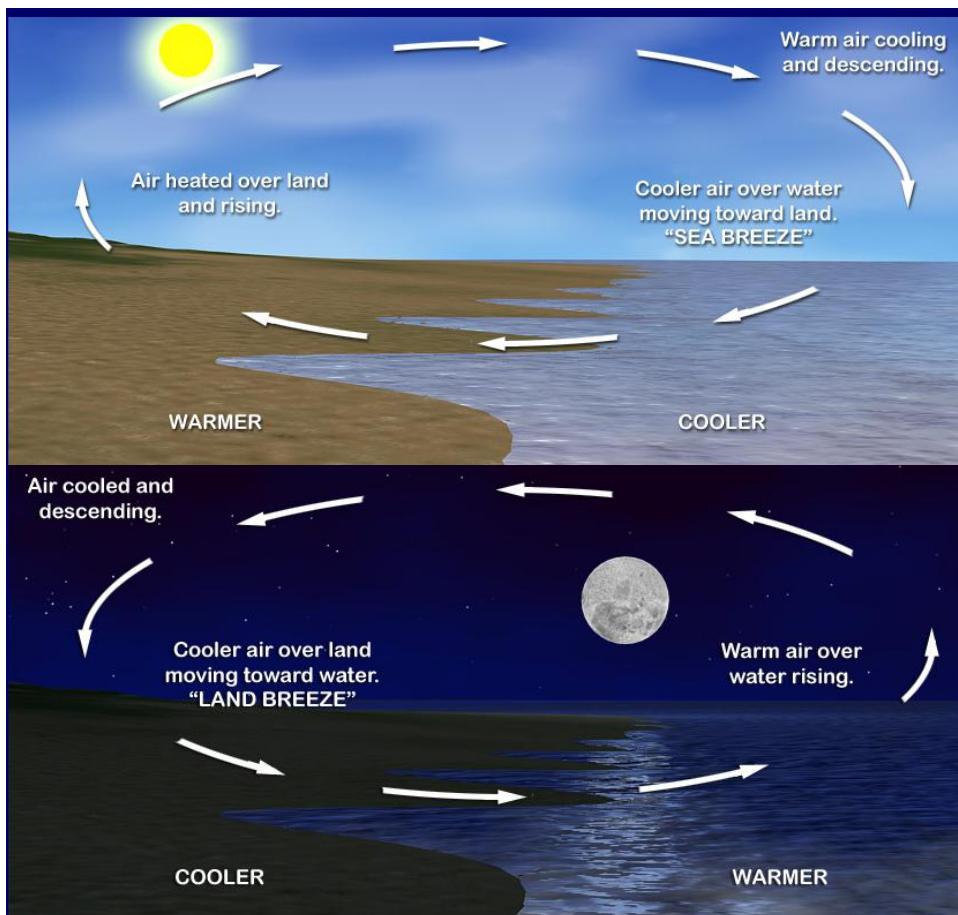
5.5.1. People living in the temperate zone and farther north know that their weather changes with the alternate passage of cyclones (low pressure systems) and anticyclones (high pressure systems). These migrating systems usually move from west to east with the prevailing westerly winds. They are accompanied by wind shifts, rapid changes in temperature, and broad areas of precipitation. Migrating cyclones and anticyclones are the primary means for the heat exchange between high and low latitudes. Lows (cyclones) are usually a few hundred miles in diameter. Highs (anticyclones) are generally larger and more elongated, the longer axis sometimes extending over 2,000 miles.

5.5.2. Hurricanes (intense low pressure areas) originate over the Atlantic Ocean, the Caribbean Sea, the Gulf of Mexico, and the eastern Pacific along the coasts of Central America and Mexico. In the tropical areas of the northwestern Pacific Ocean, they are called "typhoons." In the Indian Ocean near the east coast of Africa, and in the Southern Hemisphere, they are called "tropical cyclones." The extremely low pressure, intense winds, torrential rains, and other characteristics of hurricanes, typhoons, and tropical cyclones will be discussed in several chapters of this handbook. Their treatment in detail is reserved for Chapter 14, Tropical Weather, since these phenomena originate in the tropics.

5.6. Local Effects Winds.

5.6.1. Zooming in from the global circulation and the transient pressure systems, we get to the local effects wind systems created by an area's geography. These local wind systems can cause significant changes in the area's weather. The term "local," in the case of wind systems, applies to areas whose sizes range from tens of miles (e.g., mountain passes), to hundreds of miles (e.g., Gulf Coast sea breeze). In any case, local geographical differences determine the size and degree of local wind development. Land surfaces warm and cool more rapidly than water surfaces through incoming solar radiation (insolation) and outgoing (terrestrial) radiation. Therefore, the land is normally warmer than the sea during the day and colder at night. This difference in temperature is more noticeable during the summer months and when there is little horizontal transport of air in the low levels. In coastal areas, this difference of temperature between the land and water produces a corresponding difference in pressure (a pressure gradient). During the day the pressure over the warm land is lower than over the colder water. The low-level cool air over the water moves toward the lower pressure, forcing the warm air over land upward. The resulting cool onshore wind is a "sea breeze." At night the circulation reverses so that the air movement is from land to sea, producing a warm offshore wind called "land breeze." Sea breezes are usually stronger than land breezes, but they seldom penetrate far inland. Both land and sea breezes (Figure 5.5) are shallow in depth. Ten to twenty knot sea breezes are common.

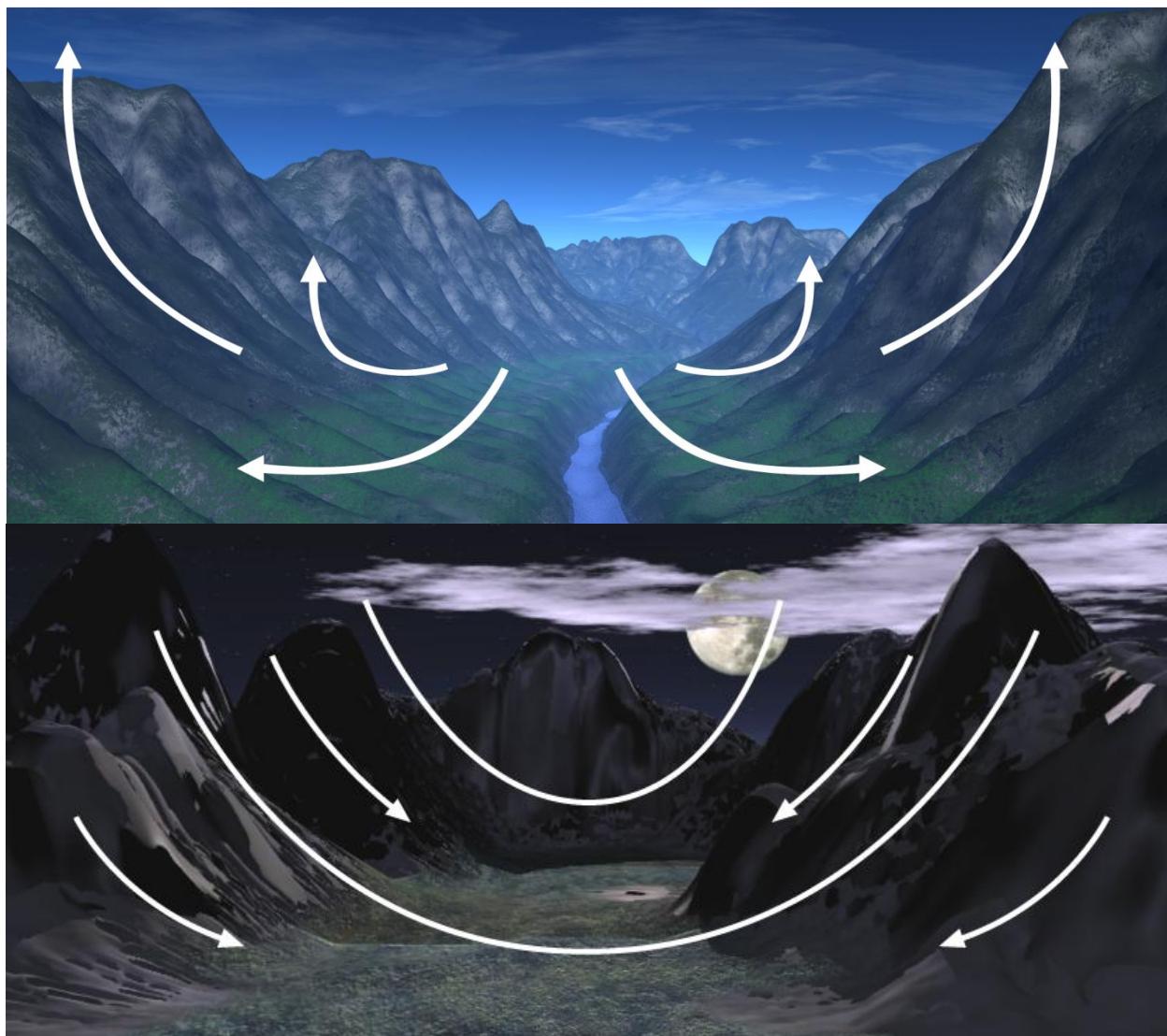
Figure 5.5. Sea and Land Breezes.



5.7. Valley Wind and Mountain Breeze.

5.7.1. In the daytime, air next to a mountain slope heats by contact with the ground as it receives radiation from the sun. This air becomes warmer than the surrounding air farther away from the slope. Colder, denser air in the surrounding areas settles downward and forces the warmer air near the ground up the mountain producing the valley wind, so called because the air flows up out of the valley (Figure 5.6). These winds are of particular importance for light aircraft, helicopter, and low-level operations. At night the air in contact with the mountain slope cools by outgoing terrestrial radiation and becomes denser than the surrounding air. It sinks along the slope producing the mountain breeze. In mountainous areas where the performance of some fixed wing aircraft or helicopters is marginal, the location of valley and mountain winds can be critical.

Figure 5.6. Valley Wind and Mountain Breeze.



5.8. Katabatic Winds.

5.8.1. A katabatic wind is any wind blowing down an incline. The mountain breeze, therefore, is a type of katabatic wind. If the down-slope wind is warm relative to the air in the

valley or plain below, it is called a foehn. If the down-slope wind is cold, it is called either a fall wind or a gravity wind. Many katabatic winds recurring in local areas have been given colorful names due to their dramatic effect. For example, the warm wind located along the eastern slopes of the Rockies is called a Chinook ([Figure 5.7](#)). As air rises it cools and its moisture condenses out during ascent on the western slopes. The latent heat released by condensing water vapor warms the air parcel. As it flows downhill, the parcel heats further due to compression. A Chinook can raise the temperature at the base of a mountain 30°F in a few minutes. Another example is the Santa Ana wind, a foehn wind which descends from the Sierra Nevada Mountains into the Santa Ana Valley of California. This hot, dry wind is noted for its high speeds and extremely low humidities. Fall winds are found in very cold plateau regions ([Figure 5.8](#)). In southeastern Alaska there is a fall wind known as the Taku, while in the Alps there is one known as the Bora. Because the cold air is heavy, it flows downhill due to gravity, resulting in a shallow wind sometimes attaining high speeds. These winds usually affect a rather large area and may occur during the day or night. Fall winds are usually stronger at night, though, because radiational cooling of the ground further cools the air.

Figure 5.7. Chinook Wind.

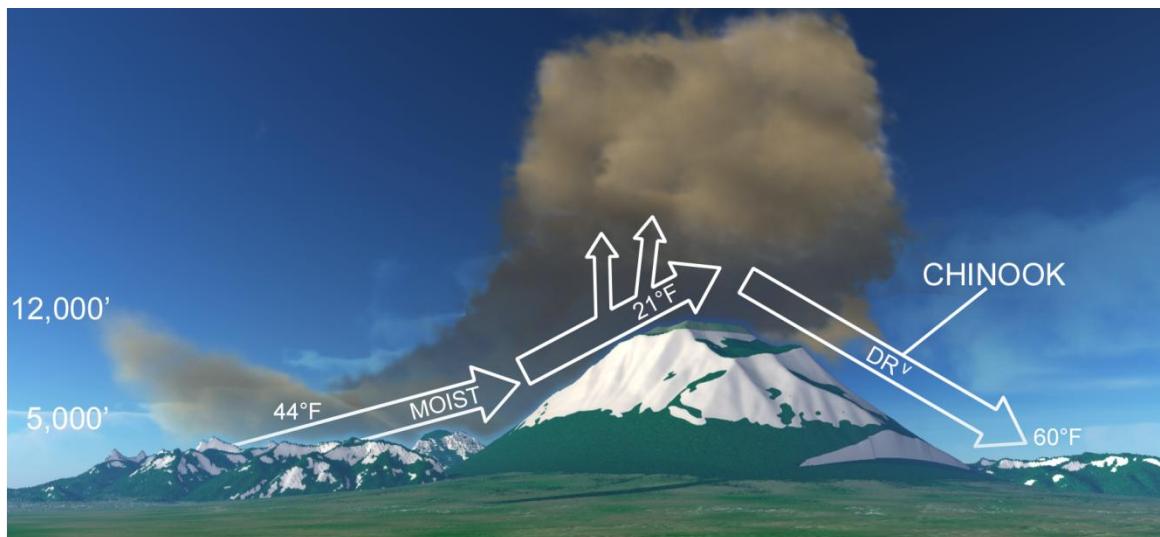
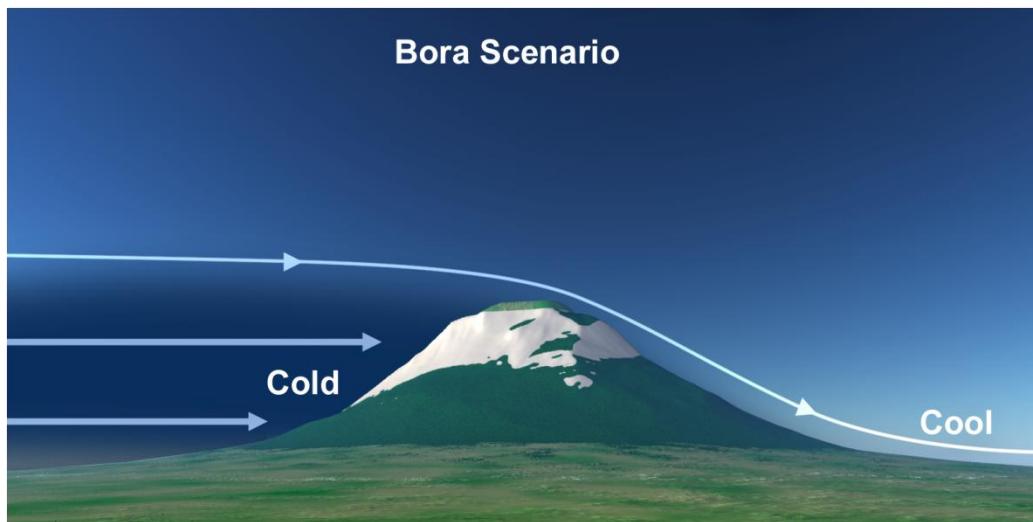


Figure 5.8. Fall or Bora Wind.



5.9. Upslope Winds.

5.9.1. Upslope winds flow up a slope or a valley during the day. Air adjacent to a slope facing the sun becomes warmer and less dense than the air at the same level some distance from the slope. The warm air becomes buoyant and floats up the slope. Surface heating, a frequent ingredient of thunderstorm development, develops instability which causes the flow to be turbulent. The depth of the upslope wind increases with height, and the air can become very turbulent at the top of the hill or ridge. For the same reason, air tends to flow up a valley during the day rather than along isobars. In these situations there will be an upslope wind on the sunny side of the valley and a down-slope wind on the shaded side.

5.10. Down-slope Winds.

5.10.1. A down-slope wind may consist of either a warm or cold flow of air down a slope and may develop into an extremely strong wind with dangerous shears. Air cooled by radiational cooling at night becomes dense and is pulled by gravity down the natural pathways of hills and mountains to collect in the valleys; then it flows down the valleys out onto the plains or oceans. The flow tends to be shallow and streamlined. The glacier wind is a form of down-slope wind that can develop to hazardous proportions if the cooling is extreme. This can occur over glaciers where shallow winds of 80 knots or more can form. The winds blow downhill both day and night in this case because the cooling is caused by the underlying ice. At times the flow is pulsating with the cold air building up to a critical point and then being released in a rush down the slope.

5.10.2. AircREW Note.

5.10.2.1. *Since the wind at any level blows according to the pressure system at that level, there is a definite connection between wind and altimeter error. If you are flying at 10,000 feet and are experiencing a direct headwind or tailwind, you must be flying parallel to the isobars. There is no pressure change to affect the accuracy of your altimeter. If during flight you experience a marked drift to the left, you will be approaching an area of higher pressure. If the drift is to the right, you are approaching an area of lower pressure. During a flight at higher levels, the observed wind will*

indicate the pressure pattern at flight level, which may not be the same as the pressure pattern at the surface. If you are flying at a constant pressure level, a marked left-hand drift indicates the aircraft is gradually gaining altitude and a marked right-hand drift indicates the aircraft is gradually losing altitude, although in both cases the altimeter reading would remain unchanged. Therefore, winds determined during flight can be of great value in assessing altimeter errors due to pressure.

Chapter 6

CLOUDS

6.1. Introduction. Clouds display a wealth of information about present and future weather. They provide visible evidence of atmospheric motions, water content, and stability. A good working knowledge of cloud types enables fliers to reasonably understand what flying weather to expect. Clouds are classified by their height and appearance. Puffy cumulus clouds are the “fair weather clouds” while the nimbostratus clouds “look like rain.” Altocumulus standing lenticular clouds usually indicate mountain wave turbulence, while large, cumulonimbus clouds mean trouble! Since there are such a variety of clouds, meteorologists have simplified cloud identification by using ten cloud genera defined by the World Meteorological Organization (WMO). This chapter will introduce cloud formation processes and cloud composition. It will further explain the cloud types, typical heights, and specific characteristics of each type. Cloud pictures will help identify the different types. The chapter will conclude by looking at special cloud formations and topics.

6.2. Cloud Composition.

6.2.1. Chapter 2 indicated that clouds are composed of minute liquid water droplets and/or ice crystals, depending on the cloud’s temperature. When the outside air temperature is between 0°C and -20°C, clouds are largely composed of supercooled water droplets, and usually contain some ice particles. Ice crystals predominate at temperatures lower than -20°C. However, supercooled water droplets can exist at temperatures as low as -40°C. If the cloud droplets become large enough, they are no longer buoyant and they begin to slowly fall as supercooled or naturally occurring water droplets. The droplets stick together or coalesce and fall faster eventually becoming precipitation. The cloud temperature and atmospheric stability determines the precipitation type. A stable atmosphere favors precipitation droplets of a more uniform size. Condensation nuclei, such as windblown dusts, sea-salt, and combustion by-products, compose the centers of cloud particles. The presence of condensation nuclei is necessary for the formation of water droplets. Most nuclei are found within the first few kilometers of the ground. Within higher elevations, complex cloud physics processes allow condensation nuclei to grow and gradually overcome gravity. The type of condensation nuclei also is a determining factor of how fast a precipitation particle will grow.

6.3. Cloud Families.

6.3.1. The forms and varieties of clouds have always challenged those whose livelihoods depended upon the weather. Aircrews can also learn the language of clouds and use this information. Although the weather field has become highly technological and computerized, basic cloud knowledge will still reap dividends for aircrews. For our purpose, aircrews should be concerned with only the basic cloud types, which are divided into four “families.” The basic cloud types are low clouds, middle clouds, high clouds, and clouds with extensive vertical development ([Figure 61.](#)). The average height of middle and high clouds varies with latitude, time of year, and with the tropopause height. Low cloud altitudes vary little with latitude. Low, middle, and high cloud families are further classified according to the way they are formed. There are two basic types of clouds, cumulus and stratus, and the degree of

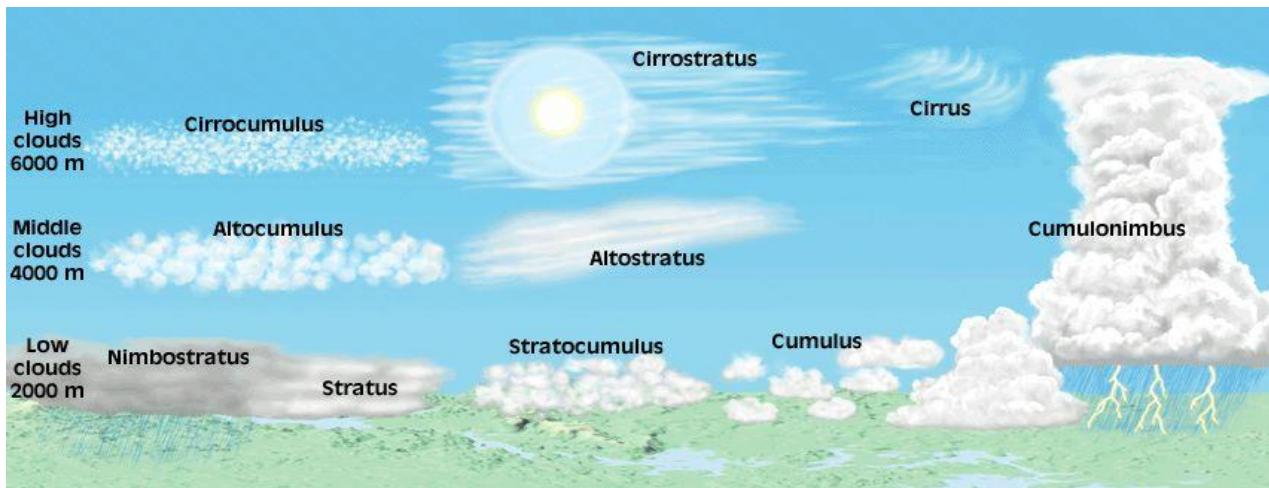
the air's stability largely determines cloud type. Clouds formed by vertical currents of unstable air are called cumulus, meaning "accumulation" or "heap." They are characterized by their lumpy, billowy appearance. Due to the associated vertical air currents, there is always some degree of turbulence within and beneath cumuliform clouds. Clouds formed by the cooling of a stable layer are called stratus, meaning "spread out" and appear layered. They are characterized by their uniform, sheet-like appearance. Stratiform clouds, having little or no vertical motion, experience little or no turbulence.

Figure 6.1. Basic Cloud Types.

	ALTITUDE OF BASE	CLOUD TYPE	ABBREVIATION
HIGH CLOUDS	Usually Above 16000 FT	CIRRUS	CI
		CIRROCUMULUS	CC
		CIRROSTRATUS	CS
MID CLOUDS	Range from 6500 FT AGL to 20000 FT AGL	20000 FT	
		ALTOCUMULUS	AC
		ALTOSTRATUS	AS
LOW CLOUDS	Range from Surface To 6500 FT AGL	NIMBOSTRATUS	NS
		6500 FT	
		CUMULUS	CU
		CUMULONIMBUS	CB
		STRATOCUMULUS	SC
		STRATUS	ST
SURFACE			

6.3.2. In addition to cloud family descriptions, different prefixes and suffixes are added to create descriptions of combination-type clouds. For example, the prefix nimbo or the suffix nimbus, meaning "rain cloud," is added to the name of precipitation producing clouds. Thus a rain-producing stratiform cloud is called nimbostratus, while a developing cumulus growing into a thunderstorm is referred to as cumulonimbus. Heights of the various cloud types are illustrated in [Figure 6.2](#)

Figure 6.2. Cloud Heights.



6.4. Low Clouds.

6.4.1. Low clouds consist of stratus, stratocumulus, and cumulus. Cloud bases range from the surface to about 6,500 feet AGL. Clouds forming below 50 feet and extending to the surface are classified as fog. During the summer, low clouds are almost entirely water droplets. During colder weather, these clouds may consist of ice crystals or supercooled water droplets and may therefore cause icing conditions hazardous to aircraft. A brief description of each low cloud follows.

6.4.1.1. **Stratus (ST)** is a low, uniform, sheet-like cloud ([Figure 6.3](#)). Stratus clouds tend to be between a couple hundred to thousands of feet thick and produce only drizzle, ice prisms, or ice crystals. When associated with fog or heavier precipitation, stratus clouds often become mixed with nimbostratus clouds, which are discussed later. Stratus clouds often present problems by causing low ceilings and restricted visibilities. A slowly lifting fog layer often becomes stratus clouds before dissipation. Finally, fog formed over water bodies and driven inland by onshore winds becomes stratus. While stratus clouds indicate stable flying conditions, extended flying through stratus clouds with temperatures below freezing can cause hazardous icing conditions.

Figure 6.3. Stratus Clouds (ST).



6.4.1.2. **Stratocumulus** (SC) clouds appear as large, globular masses or rolls which look like dirty gray cotton balls (**Figure 6.4**). They often result from a layer of stable air lifted and mixed by wind blowing over rough terrain. Stratocumulus also forms from the breaking up of a stratus layer and from the spreading out of cumulus clouds. Ceilings and visibilities are generally higher with stratocumulus clouds than in stratus.

Figure 6.4. Stratocumulus Clouds (SC).



6.4.1.3. **Cumulus** (CU) clouds form as warmed “blobs” of air rise and visibly condense. They can also form as a cold air mass warms as it passes over a warmer surface. Relatively flat bases, dome-shaped tops, and a cauliflower appearance characterize cumulus (**Figure 6.5**). Fair weather cumulus indicates a shallow layer of instability. Expect some light turbulence and no significant icing or precipitation. If cumulus clouds continue to vertically develop, they become towering cumulus and can eventually become cumulonimbus clouds.

Figure 6.5. Cumulus Clouds (CU).



6.5. Middle Clouds.

6.5.1. In the middle cloud family are altostratus, altocumulus, and nimbostratus clouds. In the middle latitudes, middle cloud bases range from about 6,500 feet to about 20,000 feet

AGL. These clouds may be composed of ice crystals, water droplets, and/or supercooled water droplets. The middle cloud family has the most variation of the four families and contains a few of the most dangerous clouds, notably the altocumulus standing lenticular and rotor clouds which indicate the likelihood of moderate to severe turbulence. Therefore, accurate recognition can be crucial to flight safety.

6.5.1.1. **Altocstratus** (AS) are relatively uniform gray to blue sheets covering the entire sky ([Figure 6.6](#)). Altocstratus will signal the arrival of a warm front or approaching storm by appearing as a thinly veiled, whitish-gray sheet. The sunlight dimly shines through this higher altocstratus cloud deck as though shining through frosted glass. The altocstratus usually becomes thicker or lowers until the sun gradually disappears and assumes a grayer, uniform appearance. Light precipitation usually will form in lower altocstratus clouds. Aircraft experience little or no turbulence but may experience moderate icing in this type of cloud.

Figure 6.6. Altocstratus Clouds (AS).



6.5.1.2. **Altocumulus** (AC) white or gray patches of solid cloud ([Figure 6.7](#)). Altocumulus also can be composed of both water and ice crystals of varying compositions. These clouds are associated with many types of approaching frontal systems and often signal a change in the weather in the next few hours. Altocumulus develops from dissolving altocstratus or lifted cumulus. Altocumulus clouds can appear as layered cells and also be encountered at differing altitudes.

6.5.1.2.1. **Note:** Altocumulus clouds aligned in rows parallel with mountainous terrain usually signal turbulence. Aligned altocumulus cloud patterns can be spotted on visible satellite imagery and should be treated with utmost respect. A particularly dangerous variety of altocumulus is the altocumulus standing lenticular (ACSL). It is discussed in the Special Cloud Types section of this chapter.

Figure 6.7. Altocumulus Clouds (AC).

6.5.1.3. **Nimbostratus** (NS) is a gray or dark, extensive cloud layer accompanied by continuous precipitation ([Figure 6.8](#)). This cloud is classified as a middle-cloud, although it generally extends downward into the low cloud ranges. Nimbostratus appears as dense, threatening clouds, and often produces nearly continuous periods of precipitation. When precipitation becomes heavy, the bases of nimbostratus clouds become obscured and affect cloud measuring equipment making the ceiling difficult to determine. Nimbostratus clouds can vertically extend in a continuous cloud layer from a couple hundred feet AGL up to 20,000 feet or more. Flight visibility is considerably reduced in heavy precipitation. Ragged cloud shreds underneath nimbostratus clouds are called stratus fractus. This particular variety of stratus often accompanies strong low level wind conditions and often extends below the observed ceiling.

Figure 6.8. Nimbostratus Clouds (NS).

6.6. High Clouds.

6.6.1. Cirrus, cirrostratus, and cirrocumulus--the cirriform clouds--are the most common upper level clouds. These cloud bases range from about 16,000 to 45,000 feet in mid-latitudes. The upper limit of these clouds may be as high as 60,000 feet in the tropics. Since cirriform clouds are composed of ice crystals, they do not present a significant icing hazard. Thick cirriform clouds can affect air refueling operations by restricting in-flight visibilities.

6.6.1.1. **Cirrus** (CI) clouds are thin, feathery clouds in patches or narrow bands ([Figure 6.9](#)). Clouds arranged in bands or connected with cirrostratus or altostratus may be a sign of approaching bad weather. Wispy cirrus appearing to have trailing tails or looking like “mares tails” indicates upper level wind direction and relative speed. **Note:** Cirriform clouds can also indicate the presence of a jet stream (see Chapters 5 and 9). The tail is formed by precipitating ice crystals falling into slower moving, lower level winds thus forming the “tail” appearance.

6.6.1.1.1. Cirrus clouds often extend from the upper part of thunderstorms or cumulonimbus clouds in what is known as the cirrus anvil. They can blow away from the main cloud, or the main portion of the cloud may evaporate, leaving only the ice crystal top portion. Cirrus clouds herald incoming bad weather or indicate that stormy weather is still several hundred miles away.

Figure 6.9. Cirrus Clouds (CI).



6.6.1.2. **Cirrostratus** clouds are thin, whitish cloud layers appearing as a sheet or veil ([Figure 6.10](#)). The ice crystals composing cirrostratus may produce halos. Sunshine will appear slightly dimmed through cirrostratus clouds. Gradually thickening cirrostratus will eventually transition into high level altostratus clouds. Classic cirrostratus usually signals the approach of a warm front within 12 to 24 hours. Since cirrostratus occur only in stable layers, expect little to no turbulence. Icing, if any, is light and normally poses no significant hazards.

Figure 6.10. Cirrostratus Clouds (CS).



6.6.1.3. **Cirrocumulus** (CC) clouds are thin, closely-spaced, individual elements, appearing as small cotton balls ([Figure 6.11](#)). This cloud may result from the lifting of a shallow unstable layer, but more often develops from a layer of cirrostratus and consists primarily of ice crystals. Heat loss by radiation occurs from the top of the cirrus layer, and the cooler air sinks into the cloud, setting up shallow convective currents within the layer. Large layers of cirrocumulus can form the so-called “mackerel sky.” Cirrocumulus signals upper level instability and can precede thunderstorms by up to 12 hours. Expect some turbulence in cirrocumulus.

Figure 6.11. Cirrocumulus Clouds (CC).



6.7. Clouds With Extensive Vertical Development.

6.7.1. Clouds in the extensive vertical development family are towering cumulus and cumulonimbus. Their bases range from the low to middle categories and their tops up through the high category. These cloud types are treated separately because of their significance to flying operations.

6.7.1.1. **Towering Cumulus (TCU)** is an important variety of the cumulus cloud. It is a transition type cloud between the fair weather cumulus and the eventual cumulonimbus (CB) cloud. Not all towering cumulus clouds become cumulonimbus but towering cumulus does indicate the potential for further vertical development ([Figure 6.12](#)). Towering cumulus clouds signal changes in atmospheric stability from stable to unstable. Carefully watch for rapidly growing towering cumulus clouds because it indicates an unstable atmosphere with thunderstorms probable within minutes. The towering cumulus is usually accompanied by turbulence and icing. TCUs are significant enough to be reported by weather technicians in their official observations when located at a manual observing station.

Figure 6.12. Towering Cumulus Clouds (TCU).



6.7.1.2. **Cumulonimbus (CB)**. Cumulonimbus clouds are large, dense, towering clouds with cauliflower-like tops. The mature cumulonimbus' top portion is often flattened into the classic anvil shape or consists of a cirrus formation ([Figure 6.13](#)). Water droplets form the major portion of cumulonimbus, but ice crystals appear in the upper portions.

6.7.1.2.1. **Note:** Cumulonimbus and thunderstorm are synonymous terms. Cumulonimbus results in strong winds, lightning, and potentially heavy rains. A well developed cumulonimbus can spawn hail and tornadoes. Dangerous wind shears are often encountered with strong updrafts and downdrafts associated with thunderstorm activity. An expanded review of this well respected cloud is treated in Chapter 13.

6.7.1.2.2. **Aircrew Note.** *Isolated towering cumulus or cumulonimbus seldom presents a flight problem since these clouds can be circumnavigated. But when these clouds rapidly develop into groups or lines of cumulonimbus, they become great flying hazards and difficult to circumnavigate. They may also become imbedded and hidden in stratiform clouds, resulting in hazardous instrument flight conditions. Associated turbulence and icing dangers always may affect safety of flight. Avoid*

flying near or under cumulonimbus. (See Chapter 13, Thunderstorms, Lightning, and Associated Hazards).

Figure 6.13. Cumulonimbus Cloud (CB).



6.8. Other Clouds.

6.8.1. **Altocumulus Standing Lenticular** (ACSL) clouds form on the crests of waves created by barriers in the wind flow ([Figure 6.14](#)). Condensation in the wave's ascending portion forms the cloud. In the wave's descending portion, the cloud evaporates. Thus, the cloud appears not to move although very strong winds can blow through it. Avoid these clouds, since their presence is a good indicator of severe turbulence. (See Chapter 9, Mountain Wave Turbulence.)

Figure 6.14. Altocumulus Standing Lenticular (ACSL).



6.8.2. Rotor clouds form on the lee side of mountains. Rotor clouds look like a line of small cumulus clouds parallel to the mountain ([Figure 6.15](#)). The rotor cloud gives visible clues to

probable turbulence associated with mountain wave activity. Aircrews may encounter extreme turbulence in the vicinity of rotor clouds. Chapter 9, Mountain Wave Turbulence, contains further descriptions.

Figure 6.15. Rotor Clouds.



6.8.3. Contrails or condensation trails are clouds formed (Figure 6.16) in an aircraft's wake when the moisture content of the air at a particular temperature exceeds a critical amount. This condition can be attained by two methods: (1) adding water vapor from an external source (exhaust contrails), or (2) changing the temperature and pressure of the air so that the resulting mixture is saturated (aerodynamic contrails). Jet aircraft produce contrails by both methods. A jet engine consumes large quantities of fuel and emits a large amount of water vapor forming the engine exhaust contrails. Engine exhaust contrails form when water vapor in the exhaust gas mixes with and saturates the air in which the aircraft flies. Winter is the season of maximum exhaust contrail formation, since cold air reaches saturation faster than warm air. A change in altitude or power setting may eliminate exhaust contrails. If the aircraft is flying through a dry, stable environment, contrails will either be short lived or fail to form at all. Aerodynamic contrails result from the rapid movement of air over the wings and body of the aircraft momentarily reducing air pressure. This reduction allows the surrounding moisture to condense, forming a contrail until the pressure increases and stabilizes.

6.8.4. AircREW Note.

6.8.4.1. *In a tactical environment, contrails highlight an aircraft's position. Of course, this seriously degrades the effectiveness of aircraft missions during combat operations. During mission planning, ask the forecaster about the likelihood of contrail formation and the altitudes expected for contrail formation. Reporting contrails on a pilot report (PIREP) alerts other aviators to their existence.*

Figure 6.16. Contrails.



Chapter 7

AIR MASSES

7.1. Understanding of Air Masses. An understanding of air masses helps aircrews anticipate certain kinds of flying weather associated with particular air masses. Certain air masses are more prone to develop persistent cloudiness and shower activity while other air masses generally have clear skies and few flying hazards. For example, if an air mass is of arctic origin, it will usually have little moisture content and have strong temperature inversions relatively close to the Earth's surface. Summertime continental polar air masses from Canada are quite refreshing after an extended bout of maritime tropical "hazy, hot, and humid" weather. Tropical air masses have much higher moisture content and higher average temperatures from the surface to the tropopause. Whether an air mass forms in a dry desert region or a moist maritime region also determines flying weather conditions. Collisions between two differing air masses result in a variety of weather along fronts. Let's examine air masses in closer detail.

7.2. Air Mass Types.

7.2.1. A detailed worldwide air mass analysis is beyond the scope and space of this handbook. This section presents a general description of common air masses affecting the continental United States. The same kinds of source region conditions also characterize air masses which affect Europe and Asia.

7.2.1.1. **Continental polar** (cP): Air stagnating over northern continental regions forms continental polar or continental arctic (cA) air masses. They are cold and dry, with little moisture. Their source region is very stable.

7.2.1.2. **Maritime polar** (mP): Form over northern oceanic areas. Generally, they are not as cold as cP air masses (especially in winter), have higher moisture content, and can be either stable or unstable.

7.2.1.3. **Maritime tropical** (mT): Form over warm oceanic areas near 30°N latitude in the high-pressure cells. Has high moisture content and is stable in its source region. When moving over land in the summer, maritime tropical air becomes unstable due to the warmer temperatures over land. This results in hot and humid conditions with afternoon thunderstorm development during periods of maximum heating. Meanwhile, when moving over land in the winter, maritime tropical air will tend to stabilize due to the cooler temperatures over land. This results in foggy and/or stratiform conditions.

7.2.1.4. **Continental tropical** (cT): Forms over desert or high plateau regions. These air masses are hot, dry, and unstable. Due to the absence of water vapor, they produce few showers. When precipitation forms, it tends to be high-based thunderstorms with virga and/or short, intense showers which can cause flash flooding and strong, damaging winds.

7.3. Air Mass Modification.

7.3.1. Just as an air mass tends to take on the temperature and moisture properties of its source region, it also modifies when moving to a new location. The modification processes

affect air mass moisture and stability and ultimately determine the predominant air mass weather. The degree of air mass modification is dependent on the following factors:

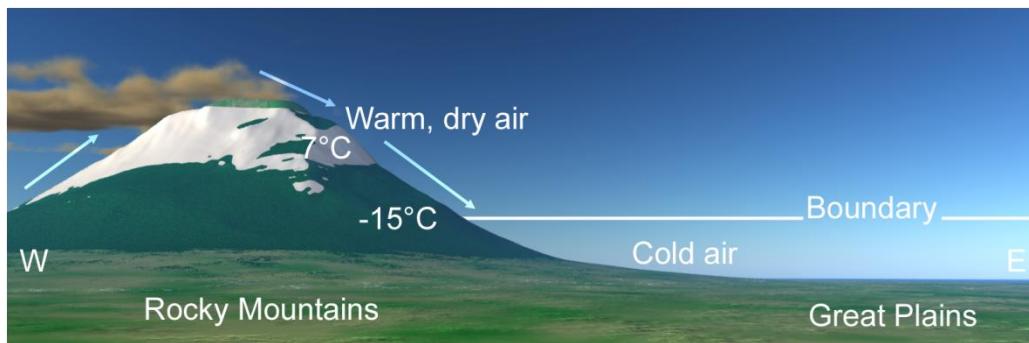
- 7.3.1.1. The speed at which it travels.
- 7.3.1.2. The terrain of the region it moves over.
- 7.3.1.3. The temperature difference between the new surface and the air mass.
- 7.3.1.4. The depth of the air mass.

7.3.2. When a cold air mass flows over a warmer surface, heat flows from the ground to the air. Convective currents carry the heat to higher and higher levels. This results in the air mass becoming more unstable. The convective process mixes the air, reducing the temperature differences between the land surface and the air mass. The following analogy will illustrate the convective process. If a large pan of water is heated on a stove, the heated water rises to the top of the pan. As long as direct heat is applied to the pan, the heated water distributes the heat by mixing with its environment while rising to the water surface. The warmer water has become unstable and will rise because the rising water is attempting to equalize the pan water temperature. The locally warmed pockets of rising water are thermals and closely simulate the atmosphere's actions. Locally warmed parcels of air will also rise, producing thermals. Thermals are simply rising convective air currents which allow heat transfer to take place and can visually be seen as cumulus clouds. Thermals can also cause light turbulence in the lower levels.

7.4. Air Mass Modification by Terrain.

7.4.1. Terrain changes will also modify an air mass within a relatively short distance. Water vapor can be added to the lower layers of an air mass due to evaporation from water surfaces; lakes, rivers, swampy terrain, falling liquid precipitation, or sublimation from ice or snow surfaces. Elevation differences can deplete air of moisture as the air is forced up the sloping terrain. The sharpness of terrain differences determines the extent of air mass modification. Gently forced air, such as moist air circulating northward from the Gulf of Mexico into Texas and Oklahoma, can produce extensive stratus cloud shields. The stratus cloud shields can gradually move north until reaching as far as eastern Nebraska and Kansas, Iowa, Illinois and southern Minnesota. Air forced up mountain slopes often results in clouds on the windward side. Precipitation and cloud cover amounts widely vary from the windward side of mountains compared with the leeward side. On the windward side, as air condenses releasing moisture, the unstable air eventually rises on its own and is forced down-slope on the leeward side ([Figure 7.1](#)). This air, heated by compression, is much warmer and drier resulting in a cloud free area. The persistent cloud free area on the leeward side of mountain ranges is called the rain shadow effect. The stability of an air mass determines its typical weather characteristics.

Figure 7.1. Sinking Air Increases Stability, can Create Inversion.



7.5. Air Mass Stability.

7.5.1. When an air mass flows over a colder surface, heat transfers from the air to the ground. This cooling from below increases the air mass's stability. If the air cools to its dew point, stratus and/or fog form. There is no limit to how stable an air mass can become. Prolonged cooling in the lower layers can set up conditions so stable that daytime heating cannot overcome the extreme stability and there will not be any convective currents. Many locations in the United States are favorable for stable air to become entrenched and stagnate. Local topography helps maintain stability by trapping stable air and not allowing circulation or drainage. Haze, fog, stratus, and smog can form in the cooled air and restricted ceilings and visibilities can remain for weeks. A few notorious western locations are the Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys of California and Oregon's Medford Valley. Some of the worst air pollution cases have also resulted from air stagnation. The Los Angeles basin, industrial cities in England, and some Mediterranean cities are favorable for thick smog formation. Normal upward convective currents cannot penetrate the inversion, so smoke, automobile exhaust and other pollutants spread out laterally butting against the mountains. Extreme cases of air stagnation can reduce slant visibilities to 1/2 mile or less with horizontal visibilities not much better. Another common situation develops when advection stratus and fog forms in the cooling, stable air. Advection stratus and fog forms over a water source and moves over land areas; many parts of England, Newfoundland, and the southeastern coast of China experience this fog problem. In the United States, it frequently happens along much of the Pacific Coast, in the southeastern United States, and along the lee shores of the Great Lakes and other large water bodies.

Table 7.1. lists typical characteristics of stable and unstable air masses, assuming that sufficient moisture is available.

Table 7.1. Air Mass Weather Characteristics Based on Stability and Moisture.

STABLE AIR MASS	UNSTABLE AIR MASS
Stratiform Clouds and Fog	Cumuliform Clouds
Continuous Precipitation	Showery Precipitation
Smooth Air	Rough Air, turbulence
Fair to Poor Visibility	Good Visibility (except in precipitation, blowing sand, or snow)

Chapter 8

FRONTS

8.1. Introduction. When most people think of weather, they think of common weather forecaster terms such as cold fronts, warm fronts, and high or low pressure systems with the associated weather. Weather programs focus on frontal weather for good reason. Active weather is concentrated along fronts. The term “front” was coined in the early 1920’s by Scandinavian meteorologists who found it advantageous to discuss active weather using the military analogy of opposing armies meeting at the battle front.

8.2. Fronts. are boundaries between air masses with temperature and density differences ([Figure 8.1](#)). The boundary or contrast zone between two differing air masses is called a front with the air mass on the Earth’s surface called the surface front. The frontal zone’s shape is determined by the frontal zone type and the extent of air mass differences. Generally, active weather is focused along and on either side of a surface front. Likewise, most aviation weather hazards are also found in the vicinity of fronts. In the mid-latitudes, fronts usually form between tropical and polar air masses. Frontal Zones, normally many miles in width, are most easily detected when the air masses have vastly different properties (e.g., cold, dry air from Canada colliding with warm, moist air from the Gulf of Mexico). Frontal zones are more difficult to locate over data sparse regions like the ocean, mountains and between highly modified air masses. Advances in satellite imagery processes and interpretation have helped meteorologists better locate frontal systems. Meteorological satellite imagery is indispensable in data sparse regions. If a flying unit is deployed to a data sparse region, the meteorologist can use satellite imagery as the only tool to locate fronts and other active weather boundaries. [Figure 8.2](#) shows an excellent example of a frontal system sprawling thousands of miles from the parent low pressure system located in the North Atlantic. The associated cold front, warm front, and occluded front are drawn.

Figure 8.1. Frontal Zone.

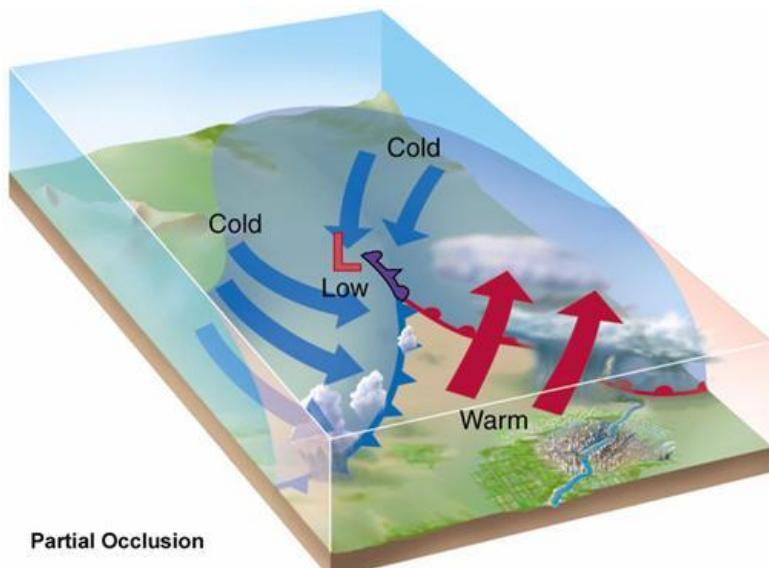
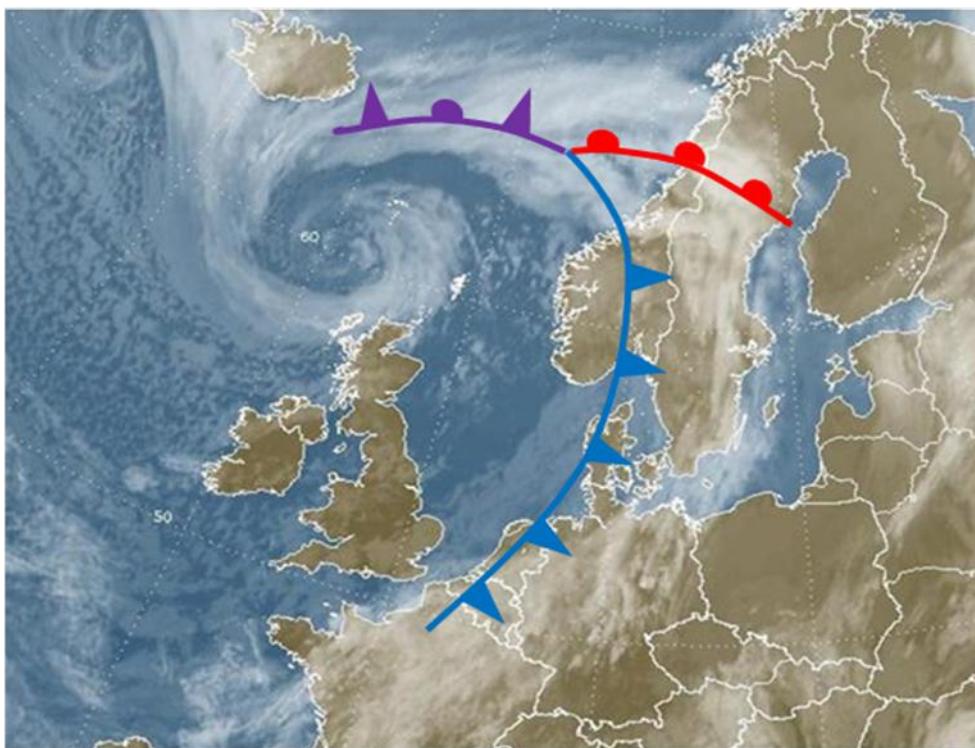
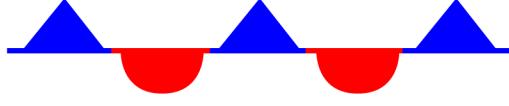


Figure 8.2. Satellite Picture of a Cyclone in the North Atlantic.

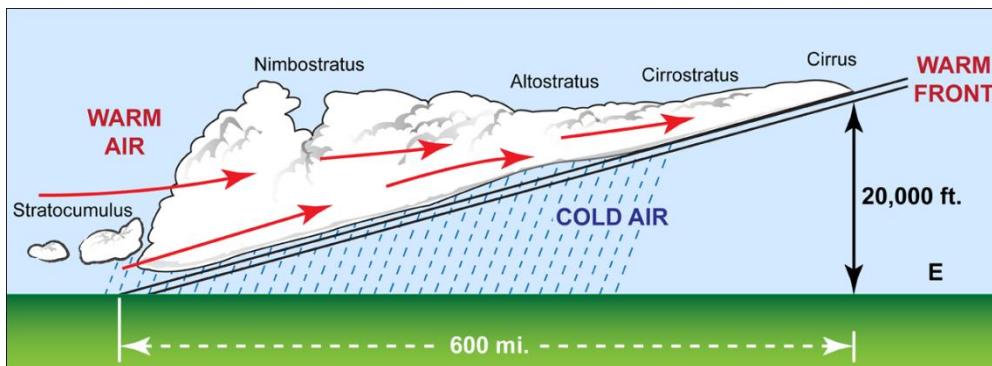


8.3. Types of Fronts.

8.3.1. There are four basic types of fronts: warm, cold, stationary and occluded. Warm and cold fronts are classified according to how the temperature of the air mass compares to the surface temperature over which the air mass passes. A stationary front generally occurs between two high pressure systems and normally is a former moving front which lost momentum and stalled. Occluded fronts result from either a faster moving warm or cold front overtaking a slower moving front with the surface-based colder air forcing the warmer air aloft. On surface analysis charts, fronts are designated with color-coded lines; red for warm fronts, blue for cold fronts, purple for occluded fronts, and alternating red and blue for stationary fronts. For black and white surface charts, designs (pips) on the line indicate the front type and point in the direction the front is moving. Triangle shaped pips designate cold fronts while half-circle shaped pips designate warm fronts. Mixtures of the pip arrangements indicate either stationary or occluded fronts with stationary fronts designated with alternating triangle and half-circle pips on both sides of a front. Occluded fronts use purple colored pips with both pips on one side of the front. **Figure 8.3** shows what the above fronts look like on a surface chart.

Figure 8.3. Types of Fronts.**Warm Front****Cold Front****Stationary Front****Occluded Front**

8.3.2. Typical or “classic” weather patterns precede and follow fronts as they move through an area. Approaching warm fronts are often preceded by an orderly procession of high clouds, middle clouds, and finally the extensive lower clouds ([Figure 8.4](#)). Additionally, weather typically associated with particular fronts may vary according to geographic location. For example, the northernmost portion of a wintertime cold front can have snow showers while the southern portion of the same front can spawn severe thunderstorms.

Figure 8.4. Warm Front Clouds.

8.4. Identifying a Front.

8.4.1. Temperature change is one of the most easily recognized features when locating a front because it changes the most. When flying through a front, aircrews notice significant changes in temperature, especially at lower altitudes. The rate of temperature change is an indicator of a front’s intensity. Abrupt and sizable temperature changes often accompany strong (narrow) fronts. Gradual and minor changes characterize weak or diffuse fronts. Temperature changes are more pronounced in the lower levels than the upper levels. Thus, for flight safety reasons, update the altimeter setting as often as practical when flying near a front. The dew point temperature gives a practical measure of an air masses’ moisture content. The dew point and temperature/dew point difference varies across a front. The “difference,” called the dew point depression, is the difference between the free air temperature and the dew point temperature. The dew point depression helps identify the front and gives a clue to the potential for cloudiness and fog. The smaller the dew point

depression, the more moisture an air mass possesses and it becomes more likely that condensation will occur.

8.4.2. When speaking of dew point temperature changes we must remain representative of the seasonal changes. Summer dew point temperatures will ultimately be higher than winter dew point temperatures. Remember that when the dew point temperature and the ambient temperature are nearly equal, the column of air will become saturated. Both temperatures and dew points are relatively higher behind warm fronts and often result in considerable cloudiness and restrictions to visibility. In the summer, higher dew points are a good indicator of showers and potentially strong thunderstorm development. When monitoring a potentially explosive thunderstorm situation, weather forecasters often focus on the dew point temperature. If the value is above 65°F, the potential for strong thunderstorm development is quite high. In wintertime, higher dew points indicate the potential for snow, freezing rain, ice pellets, and rain. Higher dew points aloft indicate a potential for icing hazards. This combined with air mass stability determines the type and severity of icing.

8.5. Frontal Passage.

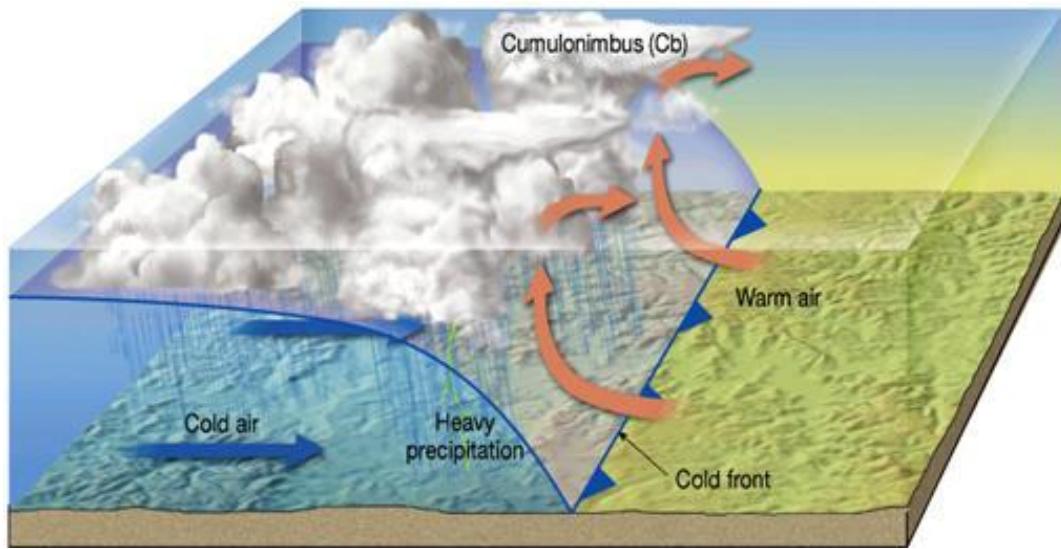
8.5.1. Frontal passage is evidenced by marked changes in wind direction and speed at the Earth's surface and aloft. Wind speed is often variable in direction and usually produce higher prevailing winds and stronger gusts behind a cold front. Other times, the wind speed may approach calm until the actual frontal surface passes through your location. Steady southeasterly, southerly or southwesterly winds precede cold frontal passage with the strongest pre-frontal winds observed just before cold frontal passage. Cold fronts are accompanied by gusty westerly, northwesterly to northerly winds. Again, wind strength is a function of the pressure gradient and differences in the air mass densities. The greater the difference, the stronger the winds will be. When flying from warm to cold air, the wind speed increases abruptly since wind speeds are generally greater in a cold air mass.

8.5.2. A front lies in a pressure trough, an area of lowest surface barometric pressure, with the pressure higher on either side of the trough. Thus, the pressure usually decreases when a front approaches and rises after the front moves through. The rate of barometric pressure change often accelerates as a front moves through. The change rate can be quite dramatic, up to 0.10" Hg change per hour or more, especially when flying in the vicinity of strong winter storms! Keep an eye on your altimeter and make sure it's current!

8.6. Cold Front.

8.6.1. A cold front is the leading edge of an advancing cold air mass. Colder air overtakes and wedges underneath the warmer air forcing the warmer air aloft. Surface friction slows the air in contact with the surface, creating a bulge in the frontal slope. This tends to give the front a steep slope near its leading edge ([Figure 8.5](#)). Cold frontal slopes average about 1:80 miles. This means that 80 miles behind the front's surface position, the frontal boundary is about one mile above the ground. A steep sloped front (1:40), results in a narrow band of active weather while a shallower sloped front (1:100), results in a wide band of weather.

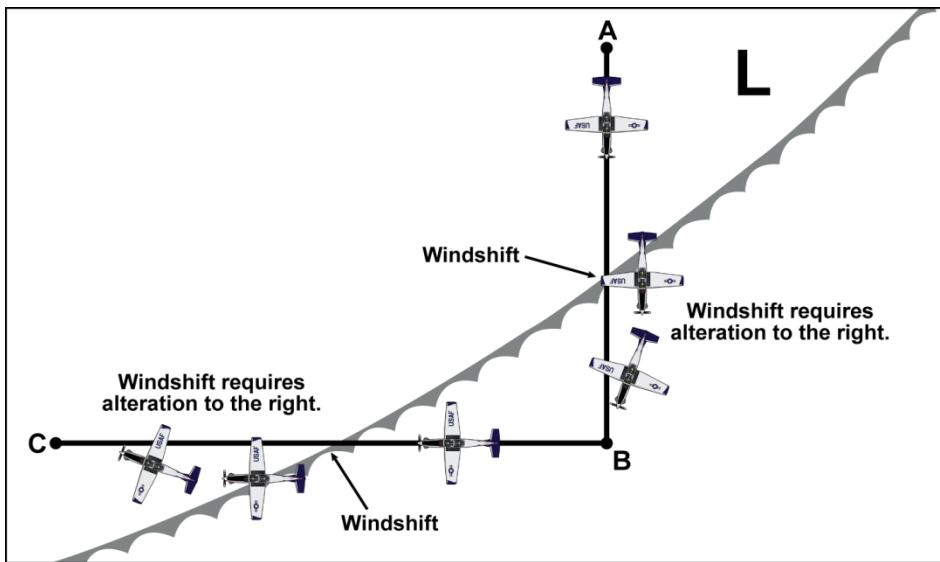
Figure 8.5. Fast Moving Cold Front Runs Under Warmer Air.



8.6.2. Cold fronts may be accompanied by dramatic weather changes and hazardous flying weather. [Figure 8.2](#) is an example of what a cold front, warm front, and occluded front would look like on a surface chart. There are two types of cold fronts: fast moving (Inactive front) and slow moving (active front). In extreme cases, fast moving cold fronts can move at 50 kts, but normally average between 25-35 kts. The slow moving cold fronts average 10-20 kts. Cold fronts usually move faster in winter than in summer and are dependent upon the jet stream strength and movement for surface speed.

8.6.3. During winter, the cold front will dramatically affect those airfields in the vicinity of water bodies downwind from the front. As a cold front with its colder, drier air, picks up moisture from the unfrozen water bodies, the lower-level, moisture-laden air will precipitate as snow as the air is forced to climb higher terrain. When you are flying through a cold frontal surface, the wind shift may be abrupt, and some form of heading change is generally required. The wind shift occurs at the location of air mass penetration rather than at the surface front. Cold fronts slope “back” towards colder air. This means that when you’re flying through a frontal surface, frontal passage will not be apparent at the same place it would be if you were on the ground ([Figure 8.6](#)). If you use the standard frontal slope ratio of 1:80, you will be approximately 80 miles on the cold air side of the surface front before encountering the cold air one mile up in the atmosphere. This means if you are flying directly towards the cold front from the “back” side of the front, you will pass through the upper cold front approximately 80 miles before you pass over the surface front. When cold fronts move with moderate or rapid speed, the active weather band is generally less than 50 miles. Ceilings and visibilities will quickly decrease usually coinciding with the onset of precipitation. If the front is a slow-moving cold front, the area of low ceilings and visibility may be extensive enough to seriously affect flight operations for several hours. Even with slow moving cold fronts, the frontal precipitation band is usually relatively narrow (as compared to a warm front). This is particularly true if the precipitation is showery in character.

Figure 8.6. Wind shifts Associated with Flight Level Cold Frontal Boundaries.



8.7. Squall Lines.

8.7.1. Under certain atmospheric conditions, a squall line composed of thunderstorms may develop 50 to 200 NM ahead of and parallel to a fast moving cold front. If a squall line does develop, little activity usually occurs at the cold front. Thunderstorms along a squall line are frequently similar to those along a cold front, but may be more violent. The cloud bases are often lower and the tops higher than with most other thunderstorms. The most severe conditions (large hail, damaging winds, and tornadoes) are generally associated with squall line thunderstorms. Squall lines are usually most intense during the late afternoon and early evening hours just after maximum daytime heating. Squall lines usually form rapidly, and sometimes a series will develop ahead of the cold front. Squall lines form when cold air downdrafts flowing ahead of the cold front lift warm, unstable air. The uplifted air develops its own updrafts and downdrafts and starts the thunderstorm development cycle. As the thunderstorms continue development, a squall line will form, often moving quickly attaining forward speeds of up to 50 knots. Eventually the squall line loses its momentum and energy and dissipates after a several hour life cycle. Sometimes a new squall line reforms and moves through approximately the same location of the dissipating one. **Figure 8.7** illustrates the squall line formation process. While squall lines frequently accompany cold fronts, the existence of a front is not a prerequisite. Squall lines may accompany low pressure troughs or lines where sea breezes converge against mountain barriers. Squall line flying hazards include turbulence (possibly extreme), wind shear, thunderstorms, lightning, heavy rain, hail, icing, and possibly tornadoes. Other hazards are the strong, variable, gusty, low level winds (wind shear) at the surface, around and under the thunderstorms and sudden altimeter setting changes. The altimeter can change 0.06 to 0.12" Hg in a matter of minutes. For an example of a squall line seen on radar, see **Figure 8.8**.

Figure 8.7. Formation of a Squall Line.

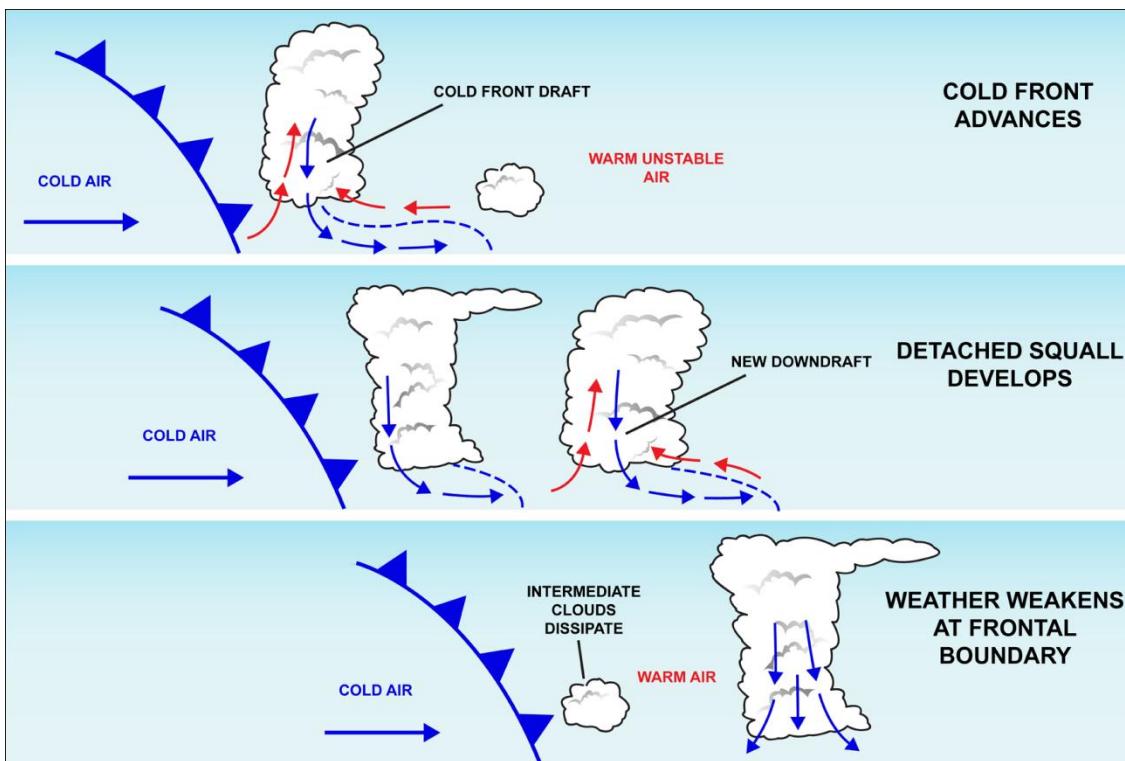
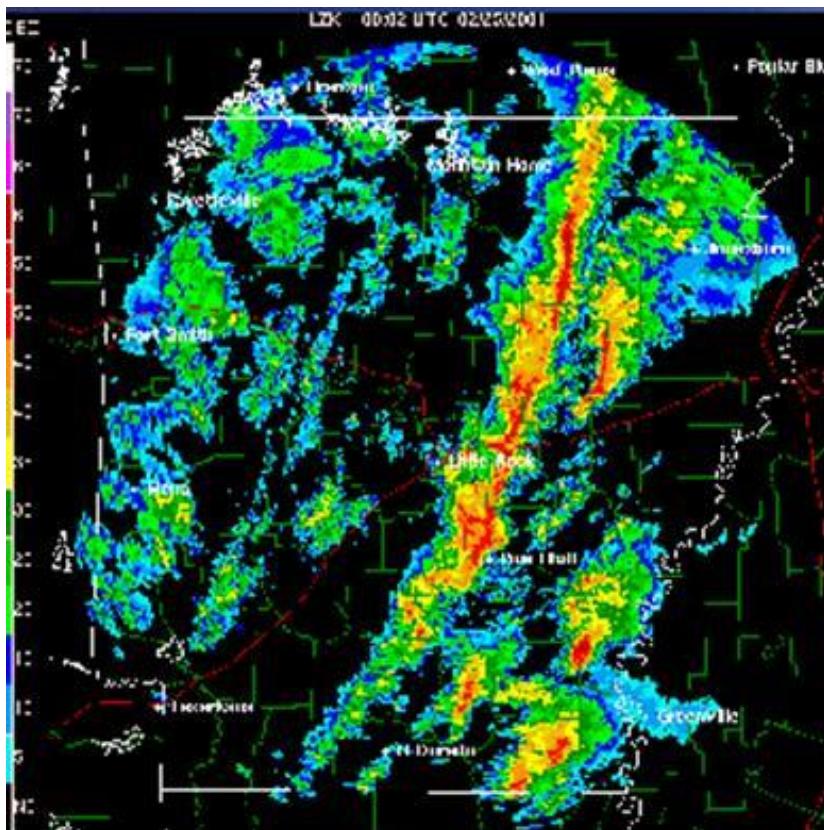


Figure 8.8. Squall Line on RADAR.



8.8. Warm Front.

8.8.1. A warm front is the edge of an advancing warm air mass; that is, warmer air overtaking and replacing colder air. Since cold air is denser than warm air, the cold air is slow to retreat in advance of the overriding warm air. This produces a warm frontal slope that extends ahead of the surface front and has a more gradual slope. Warm frontal slopes usually average about 1:200 mi. If the advancing warm air is moist and stable, stratiform clouds develop as shown in **Figure 8.9**. Precipitation increases gradually with the approach of this type of warm front and usually continues until it passes. If the advancing warm air is moist and unstable, as shown in **Figure 8.10**, altocumulus and cumulonimbus are embedded in the cloud masses normally accompanying the front. The presence of embedded thunderstorms may often be unknown to aircrews until they are encountered. Precipitation in advance of the front is usually showery with periods of steady light rain. The widespread precipitation ahead of a warm front is often accompanied by low stratus and fog. In this case, the precipitation raises the moisture content of the cold air until saturation is reached. This produces low ceilings and poor visibility covering thousands of square miles. When rain begins to fall from warmer air above the front into the colder air below the frontal surface, ragged clouds (stratus fractus) form in the cold air. These ominous looking clouds can cause very low ceilings and often obscure higher terrain. Steady precipitation will provide a constant source of moisture allowing the low stratus clouds to continuously form. Ceilings are often in the 300 to 900-foot range during steady, warm frontal rain situation. Just before the warm front passes your station, ceilings and visibilities can drop to zero with drizzle and fog. The worst conditions often occur in the winter when the ground is cold and the air is warm: the best scenario for dense fog and low ceilings.

Figure 8.9. Warm Front and Moist Stable Air.

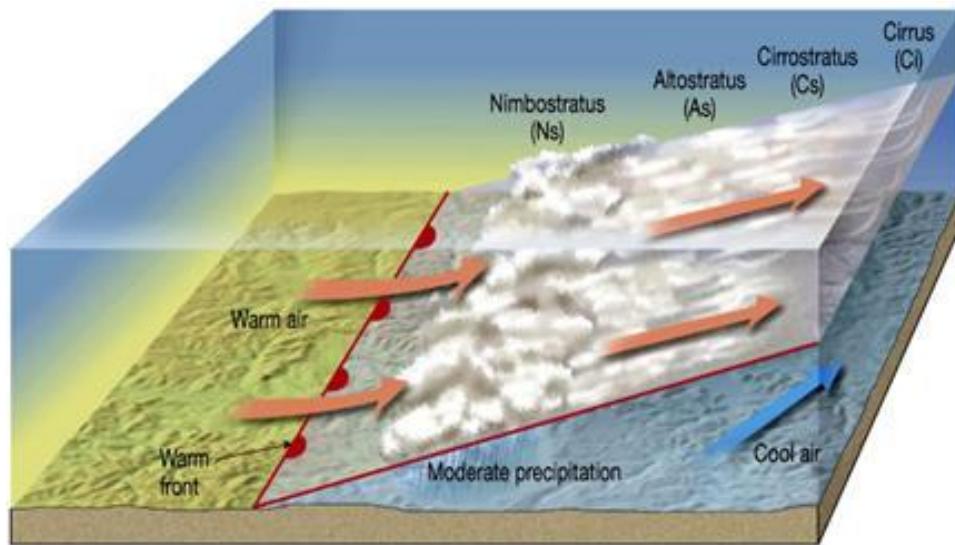
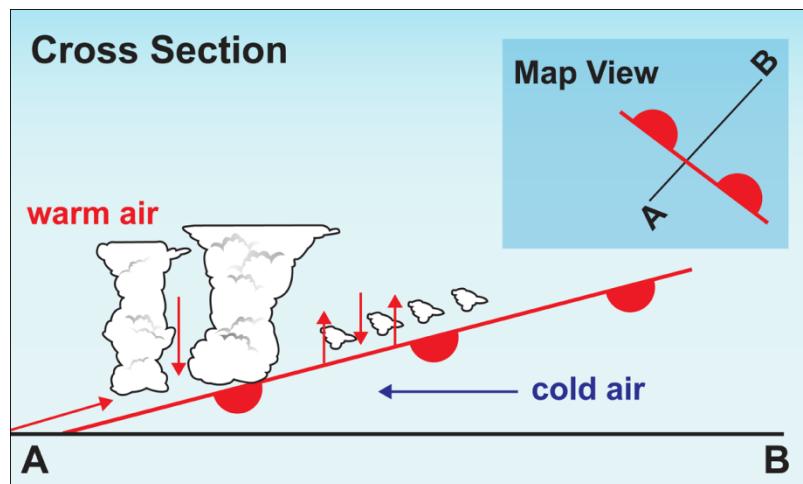


Figure 8.10. Warm Front and Moist Unstable Air.

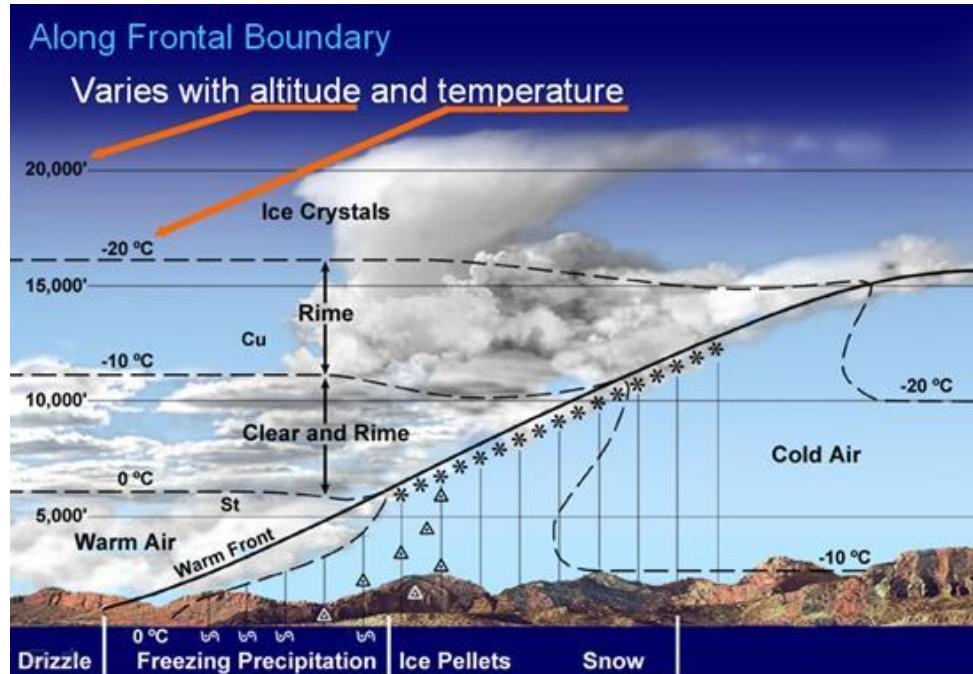


8.8.2. Depending on the depth and temperature of the cold layer below the warm layer, you could experience drizzle, rain, freezing drizzle, freezing rain, ice pellets, snow, or a combination of these. Wintertime warm fronts produce the greatest variety of precipitation types. [Figure 8.11](#) shows the various precipitation types in a wintertime warm front when temperatures are near freezing. Some of the heaviest snowstorms form when warm air glides over the colder air as a warm front approaches. With a strong low pressure system, the pressure gradient is strong enough to force large scale movements of air in both the vertical and horizontal directions. As warmer, moist air rises and condenses heavy snowfalls can result, often lasting for several hours. Many an airport has been closed for long periods of time due to heavy snowstorms associated with warm fronts. If the warm front is warm enough and advances close to your location, the heavy snow will gradually transition to ice pellets and rain before changing to all rain. Aloft, conditions are ripe for formation of moderate to severe clear icing and rime icing. On the ground, conditions may be favorable for extended bouts of freezing rain reducing braking action, runway condition readings (RCR), to “06” or less! Obtain the freezing level from your weather briefer and be observant when flying around and above the freezing level. The weather forecaster can generally forecast when icing potential is likely.

8.8.3. Unfortunately, pinpointing exact locations of icing formation is very difficult. In [Figure 8.11](#), snow falls from the part of the cloud with freezing temperatures below the cloud. Rain will fall from the portion of the cloud which is above freezing, but if it falls through a layer of cold air it becomes supercooled and will freeze on contact with any cold object creating freezing rain. As you fly through this region, the type of precipitation you experience in the air will not necessarily match that falling on the ground. The form of the precipitation reaching the ground depends on the thickness or depth of the cold air and warm layers above that point on the ground. There is a relatively narrow transition zone between the snow and the freezing rain area. In the upper portion of this zone there is a mixture of freezing rain and snow, in the lower levels there is a mixture of snow and ice pellets. Therefore, when flying toward the front in the lower levels of the cold air mass, you may meet snow, snow and ice pellets mixed, and then freezing rain, in succession. At higher levels, but still in the cold air, you will not encounter ice pellets. The sequence of

precipitation will be reversed if you are flying from the warm to the cold air mass. Warm front icing conditions and other icing scenarios are covered in Chapter 11.

Figure 8.11. Precipitation Types in Wintertime Warm Frontal Zone.



8.8.4. Whether you fly through a warm front with stable or unstable air, the clouds gradually descend from near 20,000 feet to 6,500 feet or lower. From the thick altostratus clouds, intermittent light precipitation may be encountered. If the altostratus deck is still quite high, this precipitation may not reach the ground. As flight is continued, the altostratus-altocumulus deck will lower and the precipitation will increase in intensity. Passage into the warm air mass will be indicated by a rise in temperature and a wind shift, even though the magnitude of this wind shift will be fairly small above 10,000 feet. The wind shift will occur at the frontal boundary, which may not coincide with the surface frontal position. Warm frontal wind shift and its effects on your flight are as follows:

8.8.4.1. The outside air temperature rises when you have passed through the frontal surface from the cold air side to the warm air side.

8.8.4.2. The wind shift requires an alteration to the right, no matter which way you are flying through the front.

8.8.4.3. The wind shift will be most noticeable in the lower levels, especially below 5,000 feet.

8.8.5. While flight through the lower levels of warm front isn't completely smooth, a turbulence problem arises when cumulonimbus clouds are embedded in the mainly nimbostratus cloud deck. The flight planning difficulty is that embedded thunderstorms may be scattered throughout the seemingly solid cloud decks and you have no way of knowing exactly when or where you will encounter storms. If you must fly through IMC weather, use all available resources (ATC, on board radar, etc.) to avoid embedded thunderstorms.

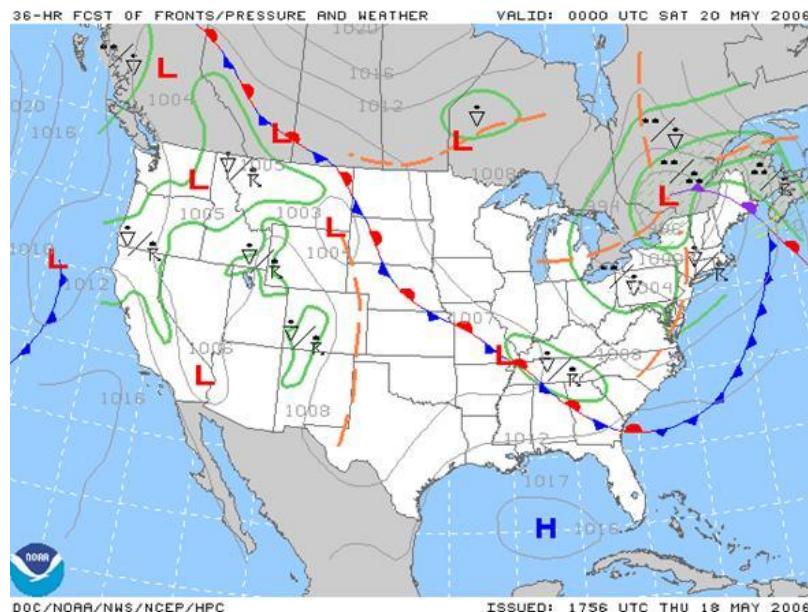
8.8.6. Warm fronts have a very shallow slope of approximately 1:200 miles and the air mass generally doesn't extend as far up in the atmosphere as a cold air mass. The time to be concerned about warm frontal wind shear is 6 to 12 hours prior to a warm frontal passage (while the airfield is still in the cold air) and an hour after warm frontal passage.

8.8.7. On the north side of warm frontal surfaces, especially in the vicinity of low pressure centers, low level convergence can cause surface winds to exceed 20 to 40 knots. When flying south through the warm frontal slope, winds can shift to the south-southwest with speeds up to 40 to 50 knots, usually from near ground level to approximately 5,000 feet AGL. If the pressure gradient is strong, the transition from northerly component winds to southerly component winds can be abrupt. This strong low level wind pattern is called the "low level jet stream." This is the same wind pattern which is often associated with a potential for severe weather. When penetrating this low level jet stream, you can experience large changes in headwind or tailwind components below 1,000 feet AGL. Often low level significant weather charts will forecast light to moderate turbulence with this situation.

8.9. Stationary Front.

8.9.1. Sometimes, opposing forces exerted by adjacent air masses are such that the frontal surface between them shows little or no movement. In such cases, surface winds tend to blow parallel to the front rather than against or away from it. This is called a stationary front, since it does not move and neither air mass replaces the other. **Figure 8.12** depicts a stationary front on the surface weather chart.

Figure 8.12. Stationary Front as Shown on Surface Weather Chart.



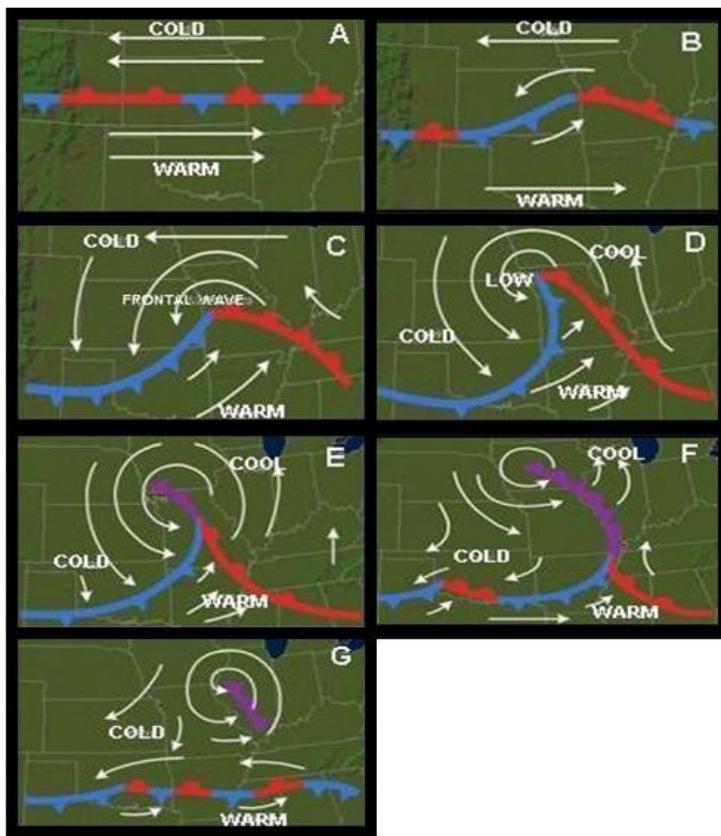
8.9.2. Although there is no movement of the surface position of the stationary front, there still is movement of air toward the front from either side of it. Warmer air will move towards it generally from the south while colder air from the north will also move towards the front. The clash of the two air masses will cause an active weather band to develop. The stronger air mass controls the angle of the air flow in relation to the front's surface position, the strength of the up-gliding wind, and determines the inclination of the frontal slope. Fronts

moving less than 5 kts are called either quasi-stationary or stationary. Weather conditions occurring with stationary fronts are similar to those found with warm fronts but are usually less intense. One annoying feature of the stationary front is that the weather pattern may persist and hamper flights for several days. Stationary fronts can also be the focus of heavy precipitation events and can result in local flooding over a period of time.

8.10. Frontal Waves.

8.10.1. Frontal waves are primarily the result of the interaction of two air masses; they usually form on slow-moving cold fronts or stationary fronts. During stage A of **Figure 8.13**, the winds on both sides of the front blow parallel to the front. Small disturbances in the wind pattern, as well as uneven local heating and irregular terrain may start a wave-like bend in the front (B). These disturbances are not obvious on the weather chart. If this tendency persists and the wave increases in size, a counterclockwise (cyclonic) circulation starts to form. One section of the front begins moving as a warm front, while the section next to it begins moving as a cold front (C). This deformation area is called a frontal wave. As the pressure at the peak of the frontal wave falls a low-pressure center forms. The cyclonic circulation strengthens, and the winds begin moving the fronts. The cold front moves faster than the warm front (D).

Figure 8.13. Frontal Wave and Occlusion.

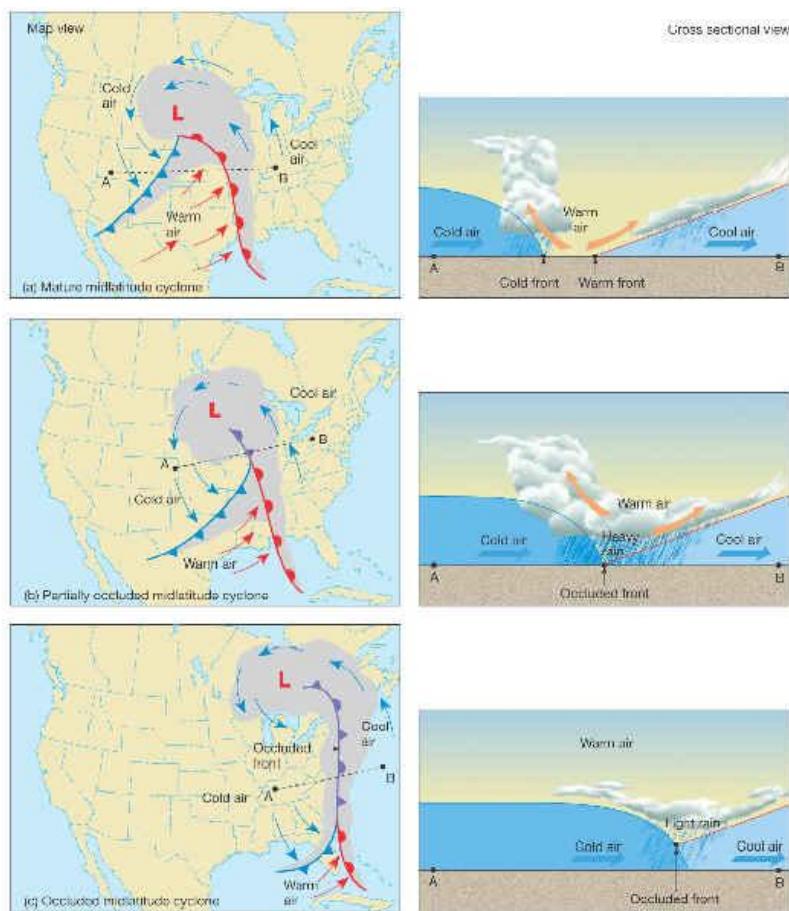


8.11. Occlusions.

8.11.1. When the cold front overtakes the warm front, the two of them occlude. During this stage of development the cold front pushes the warm air aloft resulting in an occlusion (E) or

the blocking or cutting off of the warm air from the Earth's surface. This is the time of maximum intensity for the wave cyclone. The occluded front will exhibit characteristics from both the cold front and warm front. This reason is why the weather symbol depicting an occlusion is depicted as a combination of the symbols and colors of the warm and cold fronts. The low pressure area at this stage will continue to deepen up to 12 to 24 hours, and the frontal movement will slow as the occlusion continues to grow in length, (F). During the dissipation or dissolving stage the low pressure center of the system becomes cut-off and the remnants of the occlusion begin to disappear (G). At this point, a new frontal wave may begin to form at the location of the triple point of the occlusion (where the cold front and warm front meet) or along the long westward-trailing portion of the cold front (G) that has elongated and become more stationary. **Figure 8.14** shows the development of an occlusion depicted on a map with the corresponding cross section profile to show how an occlusion is portrayed in the vertical.

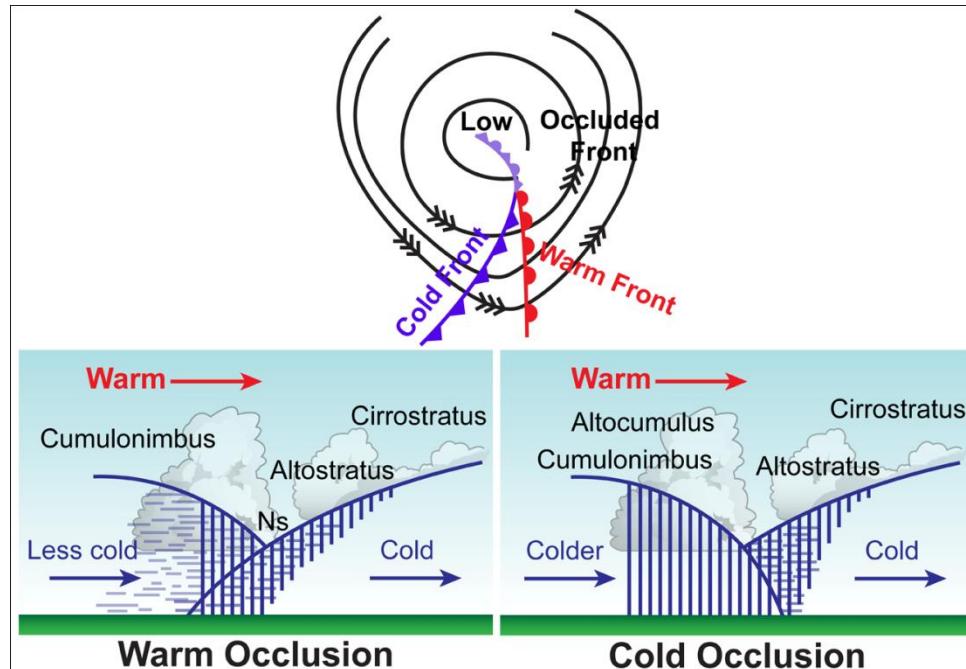
Figure 8.14. Occlusion Development and Cross- Profile.



8.11.2. There are two types of occluded fronts: warm and cold occlusions. The portion of the occluded front which intersects the Earth's surface determines whether the occlusion is a cold or warm occluded front. In a cold occlusion, the air mass overtaking the warm front is colder than the cool air ahead of the warm front, and plows under both air masses. In a warm occlusion, the air mass overtaking the warm front is not as cool as the cold air ahead of the warm front, and rides over the colder air mass while lifting the warm air. **Figure 8.15** shows

an examples of a cold frontal occlusion and a warm frontal occlusion. The figure also shows the relative positions of the cold air, cool air and warm air portions of the occlusion. The location of the occlusion is significant to aircrews because the most severe weather (including low ceilings and visibilities) is generally located in an area 100 NM south to 300 NM north of the frontal intersection.

Figure 8.15. Frontal Occlusion Profiles.



8.11.3. Since occlusions result from one frontal system overtaking another, occlusions combine the weather of both warm and cold fronts into one extensive system. A line of showers and thunderstorms typical of cold fronts merges with the warm front's low ceilings. Precipitation and low visibilities are widespread on either side of the occlusion's surface position. In addition, strong winds occur around an intense low pressure center at the occlusion's northern end. Aircrews should be aware of rapidly changing weather conditions in occlusions and that changes are most dramatic during the initial stages of development. If you are flying toward an approaching occlusion, the cloud pattern is very similar to that of a warm front. However, the weather is more complex because part of the occluded weather is characteristic of a cold front. If you approach an occlusion from behind, the cloud structure may resemble a cold front, but the effects on flight are different. In addition to the problems associated with a cold front, there are the problems of the extensive cloud deck which may lie ahead of the base of the warm air. If flight is conducted through the system at such an altitude that you pass below the base of the trough, you would expect one wind shift. If you fly at higher altitudes, there will be two wind shifts because you must pass through two frontal surfaces (see [Figure 8.6](#)).

8.11.4. Aircrew Notes.

8.11.4.1. *Be extremely cautious when flying in the vicinity of rough terrain around frontal boundaries. Surface-based directional and speed changes can be quite abrupt and*

terrain dependent. For instance, surface winds funneled down valleys result in stronger than expected wind speeds when the winds spill out over a nearby airfield.

8.11.4.2. Strong winds moving perpendicular to mountain tops will enhance mountain wave turbulence conditions during and after frontal passage.

8.11.4.3. Be especially alert for wind shear. Rapid changes in wind speed and/or direction create wind shear, which is extremely hazardous especially when departing or approaching an airfield. For example, winds at 220 degrees at 10 knots immediately ahead of cold front may be displaced by winds 330 degrees at 20 knots gusting to 30 knots behind the cold front. Wind shear is further discussed in Chapter 10.

8.11.4.4. Crosswinds are another hazard frequently experienced with frontal passage. Runway orientation is the key in determining whether or not you will experience sudden crosswinds. An in-depth discussion of wind hazards follows in Chapter 9.

Chapter 9

TURBULENCE

9.1. Introduction. Turbulence is one of the most unexpected aviation hazards to fly through, and one of the most difficult hazards to forecast. Severe and extreme turbulence have been known to cause extensive structural damage to B-52s, with lesser cases resulting in compressor stalls, flameouts, and injury to crew members and passengers. From minor bumps to severe mountain wave turbulence, it comes in many forms and is usually worst during the winter months. The National Transportation Safety Board estimates that turbulence accounts for approximately 71% of all weather-related accidents and incidents involving aviation. The cost to U.S. airlines due to injuries, cabin and aircraft damage, flight delays, and time lost to inspection and maintenance is substantial, with estimates in the \$150-\$500 million per year range.

9.2. Turbulence Causes.

9.2.1. Turbulence is caused by abrupt, small-scale variations in wind speed and direction. Upper level turbulence is associated with variations in the jet stream winds. It is mainly found in curved jet stream segments associated with troughs, ridges, closed upper level lows, and rapidly developing surface lows. Classifying turbulence intensity is difficult and is often a function of a pilot's flying experience and how much the pilot has been exposed to turbulence. In addition, the flier's assessment of turbulence is influenced by the length of time and the severity of the turbulence. Most of all, the type of aircraft and the aircraft's speed and weight determines how a crew will experience turbulence. Severe turbulence reported by a C-172 may be light to occasionally moderate when experienced by a C-5 crew.

9.2.2. Aircrew Note.

9.2.2.1. *The above problem is further complicated because air turbulence clues aren't plentiful, occur at infrequent intervals, and are often reported at widely separated locations. Thus, forecasters are very dependent on timely, accurate pilot reports (PIREPs). In fact, it may be your turbulence report which triggers a weather service turbulence advisory for your fellow fliers. Always include your aircraft location, time, turbulence intensity, flight level, aircraft type, and duration of turbulence when providing a PIREP.*

9.3. Categories of Turbulence.

9.3.1. Turbulence is categorized as light, moderate, severe and extreme. Each category is defined in terms which are perceived by the pilot in terms of effects on the aircraft and its occupants. Weather forecasters use moderate or greater when forecasting turbulence on their hazard charts. The weather community intends for turbulence reports to be used in two important ways: (1) pilot reports of turbulence received from one type of aircraft are to be used to predict how the pilot of another similar aircraft will experience the same turbulence and (2) Air Force weather briefers are to brief forecasted turbulence in a manner that will allow them to present these same turbulence categories to the pilot. This allows consistency in transmitting turbulence information and allows aviators to anticipate a particular level of forecasted turbulence.

9.3.2. Because of the different effects of turbulence on different types of aircraft, the DOD Flight Information Handbook, Section C, lists turbulence reporting categories. The tables are based on intensity, aircraft reaction, and the reaction within the aircraft.

9.3.2.1. Light turbulence: Momentarily causes slight, erratic changes in altitude and/or attitude (pitch, roll, and yaw).

9.3.2.2. Light chop: Slight, rapid and somewhat rhythmic bumpiness without appreciable changes in altitude or attitude.

9.3.2.3. Moderate turbulence: Similar to light turbulence but of greater intensity. Changes in altitudes and/or attitude occur but the aircraft remains in positive control at all times. It usually causes variations in indicated airspeed.

9.3.2.4. Moderate chop: Turbulence similar to light chop but of greater intensity and causes rapid bumps or jolts without appreciable changes in aircraft altitude or attitude.

9.3.2.5. Severe turbulence: Causes large abrupt changes in altitude and/or attitude. It usually causes large variation in indicated airspeed. Aircraft control becomes very difficult.

9.3.2.6. Extreme turbulence: Aircraft violently tossed around with control virtually impossible. There are large, sudden changes in altitude and/or attitude. Extreme turbulence may cause structural damage.

9.4. Causes of Turbulence.

9.4.1. Knowledge of turbulence causes and formation locations help you to minimize your exposure to turbulence or avoid it altogether. This chapter discusses the following turbulence types:

9.4.2. Convective Turbulence: Caused by alternating currents of warm air rising and cooler air descending.

9.4.3. Mechanical Turbulence: Caused by wind flowing over irregular terrain or obstructions, or by a marked change in wind speed or direction over a short distance.

9.4.4. Mountain Wave Turbulence: Caused by air blowing perpendicular across the top of a mountain range.

9.4.5. High Altitude Turbulence: Variations in wind speed and direction principally in the vicinity of the jet stream and occurs above 10,000 feet. This is commonly called clear air turbulence (CAT) because of scant, visible evidence of its existence.

9.4.6. Wake Vortex Turbulence: Generated by every aircraft in flight at its wing tips.

9.5. Effects on Aircraft.

9.5.1. Turbulence causes a variety of effects on aircraft ranging from gentle jostling to structural damage. Another important aspect of turbulence is that it can produce adverse effects on the aircrew. Aviation medicine and human factor research has shown that a severe turbulence environment can cause a compromise of aircrew performance in the following ways:

9.5.2. Delays decision time.

- 9.5.3. Produces involuntary control movements which may not be obvious to the aircrew.
- 9.5.4. Produces sensory illusion.
- 9.5.5. Makes reading instruments difficult.

9.6. Convective Turbulence.

9.6.1. Convective currents usually cause turbulence, especially at low altitudes. These currents are localized vertical air movements, both ascending and descending. For every rising current, there is a compensating downward current. The downward currents occur over a broader area than the rising currents, therefore having a slower vertical speed than the rising currents. Convective currents are most active on warm summer afternoons with light winds. Heated surface air rises creating a shallow, unstable layer. As surface heating increases, convection increases in strength and rises to greater heights. Barren surfaces such as sandy or rocky wasteland and plowed fields become hotter than open water or ground covered with vegetation ([Figure 9I](#)). The uneven heating of the surface results in rising and sinking air currents. Because of this, the strength of the convective currents varies considerably within short distances. [Figures 9.2](#) and [Figure 9.3](#) illustrate this effect on an aircraft approaching an airport. Winds and light turbulence that develop in hilly and mountainous terrain due to differential heating are of particular importance for light aircraft, helicopters, and low-level operations. In mountainous areas where the performance of some fixed wing aircraft or helicopters is marginal, the location of upslope and down-slope winds can be critical. As air moves upward, it cools as the convective current continues upward, continually cooling, until it reaches a level where its temperature is the same as the surrounding air. If it cools to saturation, a cloud forms. Aircrews should associate cumulus and cumulonimbus clouds with thermal turbulence. Turbulence may be light to moderate in or beneath the clouds, but the air is generally smooth above them ([Figure 9.4](#)). If the air is too dry, aircrews may have no turbulence indications until they encounter it. Just be aware of convective turbulence during sunny, hot, dry days. Aircraft response to turbulence varies with turbulence intensity and aircraft characteristics such as airspeed, weight, design, wing loading, and pilot technique. At higher speeds, turbulence places more stress on aircraft and aircrew alike. At slower airspeeds, aircraft control is reduced and becomes more sluggish. To minimize the effects of convective turbulence, fly above the turbulent layer, tighten your seat belt and shoulder harness, and fly the turbulence airspeed recommended by your Dash 1.

Figure 9.1. Strength of Convective Currents varies with Composition of Surface.

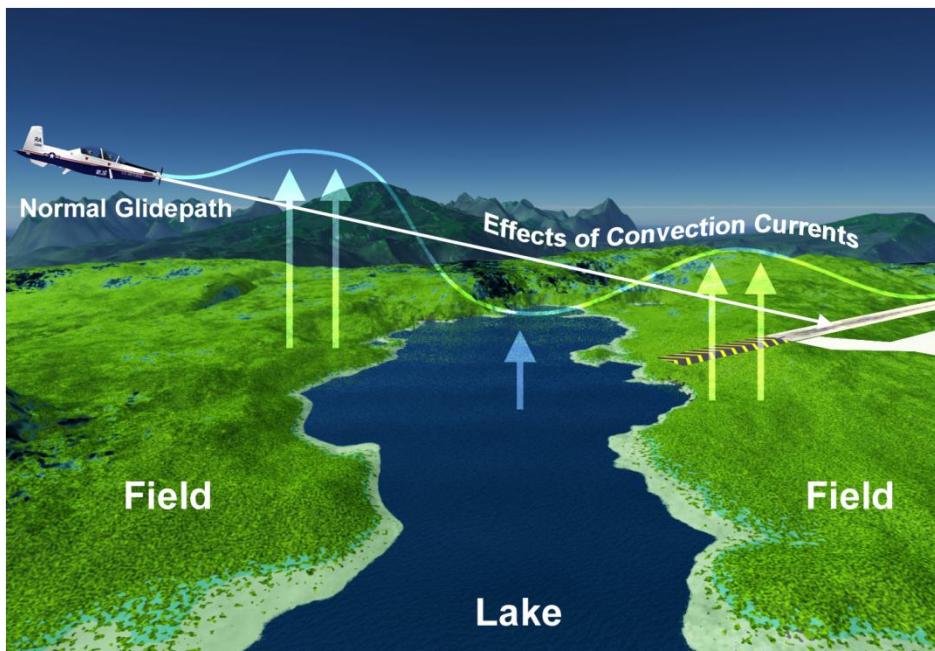


Figure 9.2. Updrafts May Cause Pilots to Overshoot.

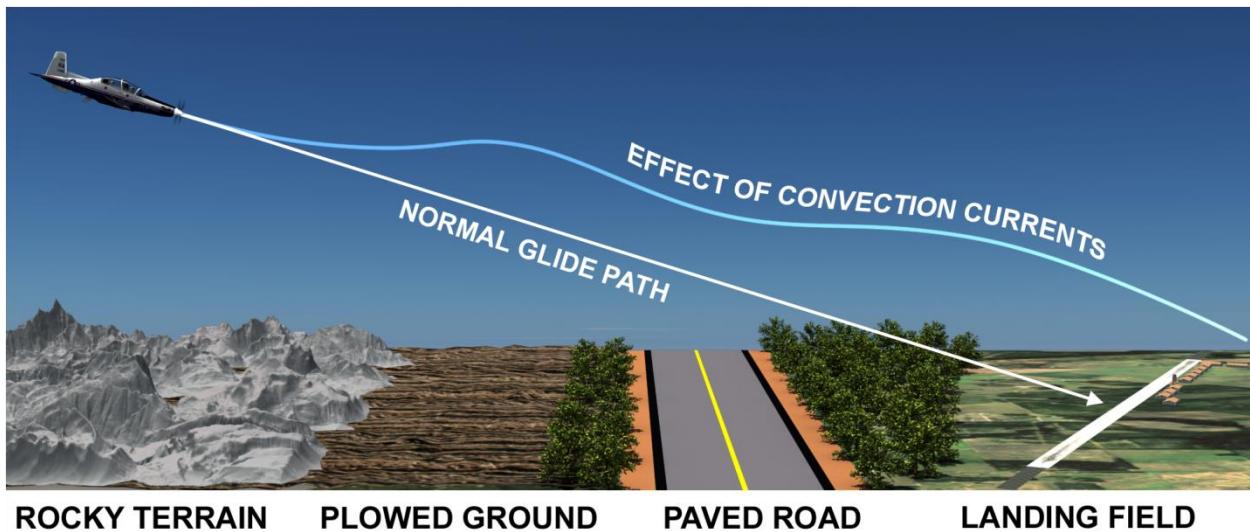


Figure 9.3. Downdrafts May Cause Pilots to Undershoot.

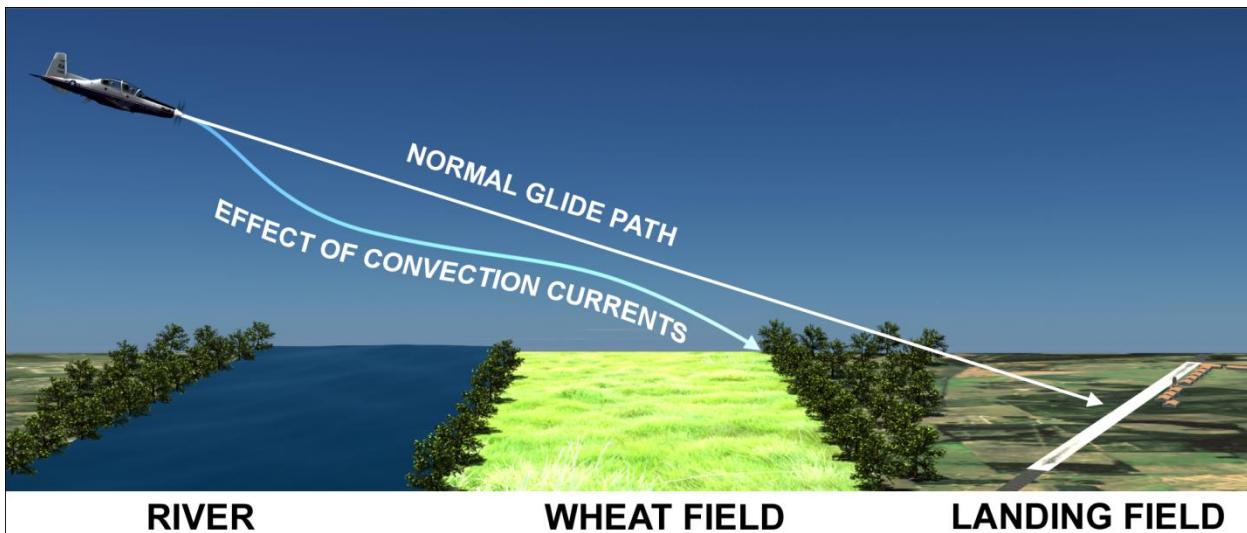
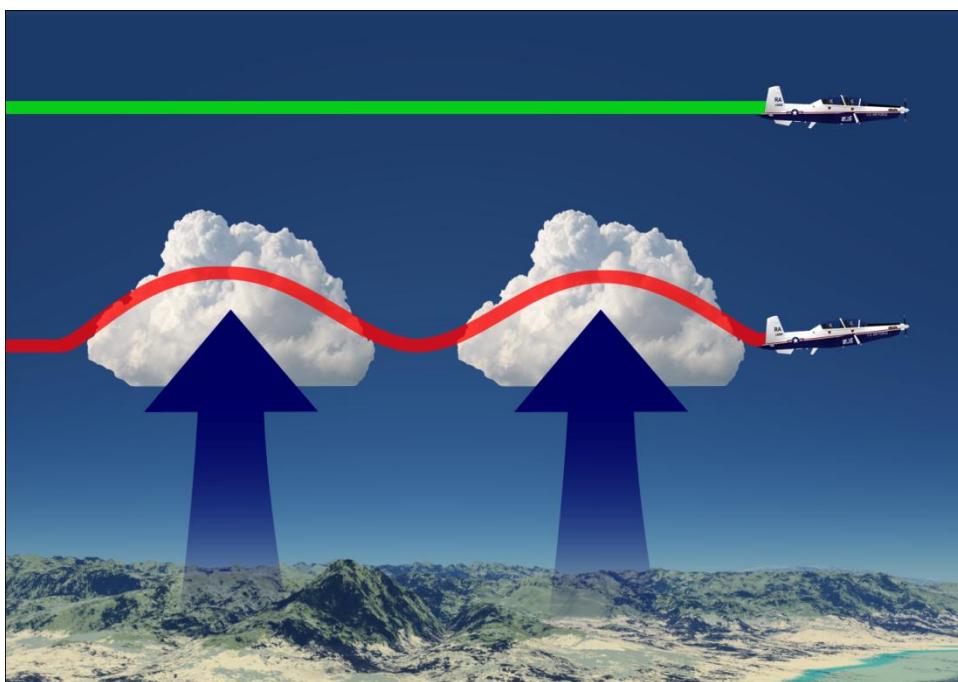


Figure 9.4. Avoid Convective Currents by Flying Above Cumulus Clouds.



9.7. Mechanical Turbulence.

9.7.1. Mechanical turbulence occurs when air near the surface flows over rough terrain or other obstructions. Obstacles such as trees, buildings, hills, and mountains transform the normal wind flow into a complicated snarl of eddies (Figure 9.5). These eddies are carried along with the general wind flow; their size and extent affects the flying characteristics of aircraft. The degree of mechanical turbulence depends on the roughness of the terrain or obstructions, wind speed, and air mass stability. The higher the wind speed or the rougher the surface, the greater the turbulence intensity will be. Unstable air allows larger eddies to form, but the instability breaks up these eddies more quickly, while in stable air they dissipate

slowly. Wind variability near the ground is an extremely important consideration during takeoff and landing, especially for light aircraft. Strong, gusty winds have caused many aircraft accidents. Aircrews landing at airports where large hangars or other buildings are located near the runways should be alert for formation of turbulent wind eddies as shown in **Figure 9.6**. If the wind is light, eddies tend to remain as rotating pockets of air near the windward and leeward sides of the buildings. If the wind speed exceeds about 20 knots, the flow may be broken up into irregular eddies which are carried a sufficient distance downstream to create a hazard in the landing area. The IFR en-route supplement should describe crosswind and turbulence problems as appropriate in the remarks section of the airfield entry. For example, Offutt AFB has in their remarks section “apch end turbulence and hi variable crosswinds dur S to SW sfc winds”.

9.7.2. When winds blow across rugged hills or mountains, the resulting turbulence may increase as the wind speed increases. Exercising caution is necessary when crossing mountain ranges under strong wind conditions. Severe downdrafts can be expected on the lee side as illustrated in **Figure 9.7**. These downdrafts can be dangerous and can place an aircraft in a position from which it may not be able to recover. Aircrews should allow for this condition when approaching mountain ridges against the wind. If the wind is strong and the ridges pronounced, pilots should cross obstructions at higher than normal altitudes. It is important to climb to the crossing altitude well before reaching the mountains to avoid having to climb (or, what is worse, trying unsuccessfully to climb) in a persistent downdraft. Attempting to cross at a lower altitude will also subject the aircraft to much greater turbulence and sudden crosswinds caused by winds blowing suddenly parallel to the valley instead of the prevailing direction. When the wind blows across a valley or canyon, a downdraft occurs on the lee side, while an updraft results on the windward side (**Figure 9.8**). If flight through the canyon is required, the safest path is to fly near the side of the pass or canyon, on the updraft side, which affords an upslope wind, since additional lift is provided.

Figure 9.5. Surface Obstructions Cause Eddies and Other Irregular Wind Movements.

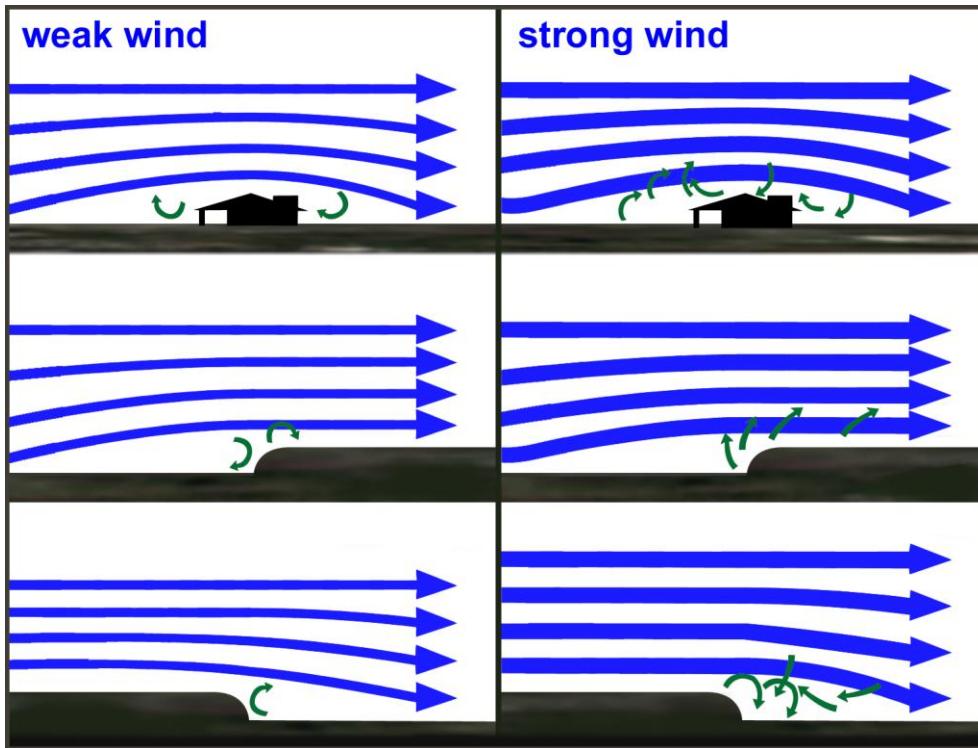


Figure 9.6. Buildings Near Landing Areas May Cause Turbulence.

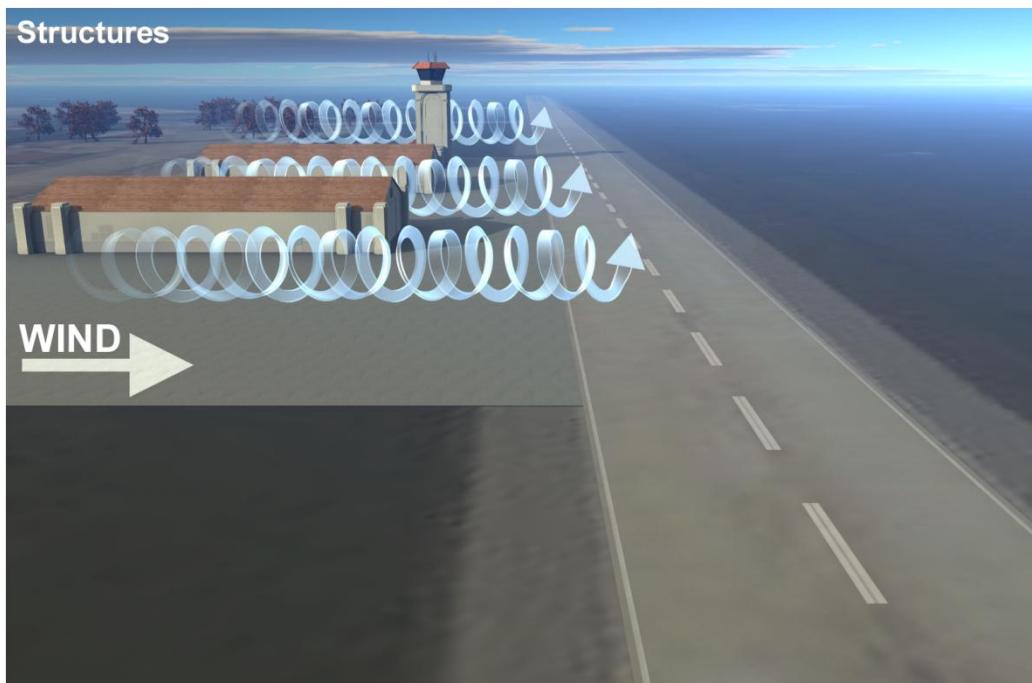
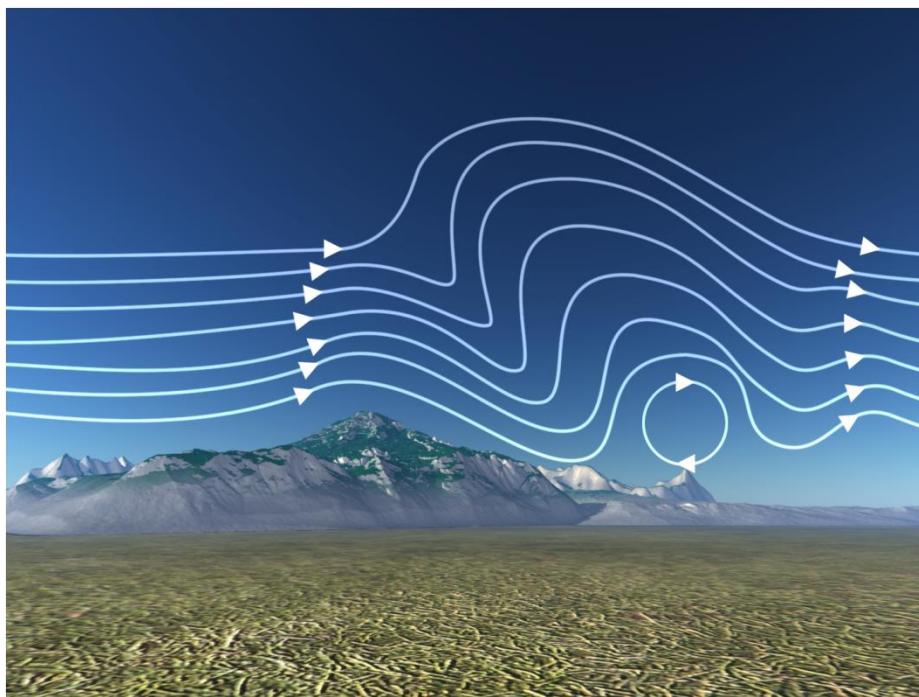


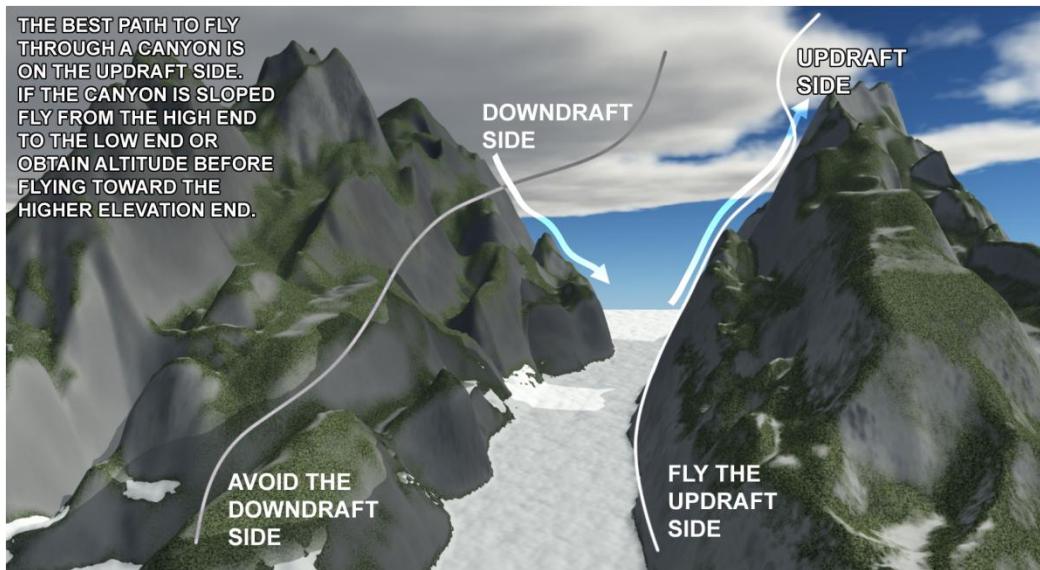
Figure 9.7. Wind Flow over Mountain Ranges Produces Turbulence.



9.8. Terrain Turbulence.

9.8.1. If the wind blows across a narrow canyon or gorge, it will veer down into the canyon (Figure 9.8). Turbulence will be found near the middle and downward side of the canyon or gorge. Acrews should exercise caution during flight on the downwind side of narrow canyons, because winds may cause rates of descent which exceed the aircraft's ability to out-climb.

Figure 9.8. In a Valley or Canyon, Safest Path is on Upslope Wind Side.



9.8.2. The mountains funnel winds into passes and valleys, thus increasing wind speeds and intensifying turbulence. Funnel winds blow out of mountain valleys and toward flat areas, reaching speeds of up to 80 knots and creating hazardous shear and turbulent conditions. **Figure 9.9** illustrates the funnel wind effect. In this case, the terrain is such that the wind is channeled through a narrow space where it is accelerated and then spills out into the flight path of aircraft as happens at Hill AFB, UT. This creates low-level wind shear that is different in origin from the wind shear associated with downbursts and microbursts.

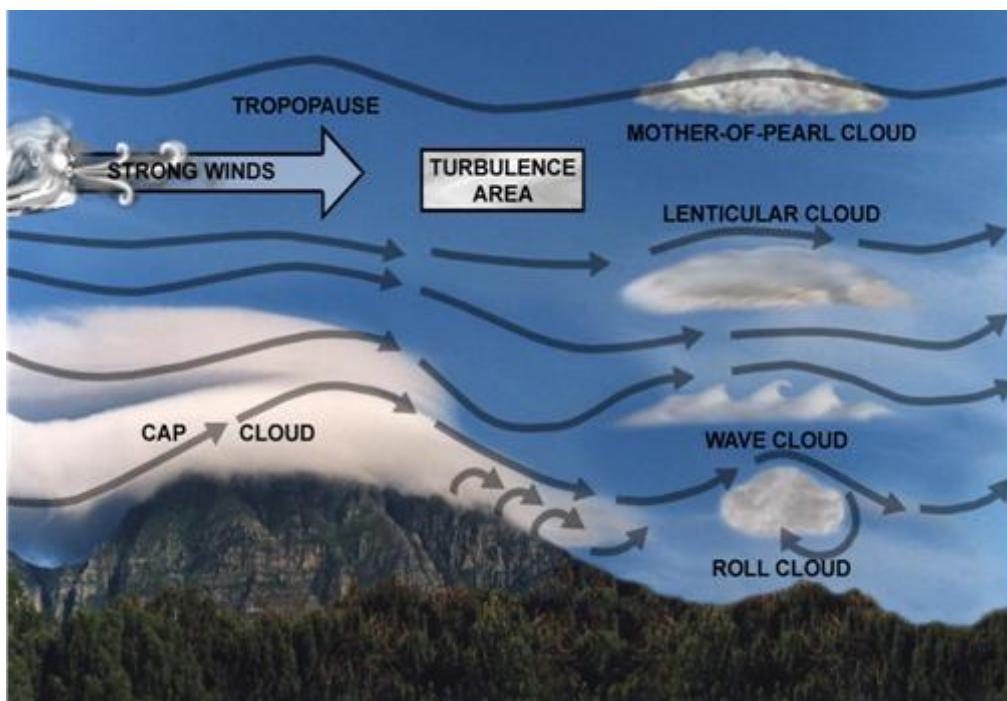
Figure 9.9. Winds Funneled through Mountain Valleys Create High Winds.



9.9. Mountain Wave Turbulence.

9.9.1. When stable (non-convective) air blows across a mountain range, a phenomenon known as mountain wave turbulence may occur. A wave condition usually develops when a component of wind flowing perpendicular to the top of the mountain exceeds 25 knots and an inversion exists within 2,000 feet of the mountain top. Although the actual wind direction can vary somewhat and still cause a wave, the strongest waves occur with a strong, perpendicular flow. The waves, which resemble ripples formed downstream from a rock in a swiftly flowing river, remain nearly stationary while the wind blows through them. The characteristics of a typical mountain wave are shown in **Figure 9.10**. Waves such as these are commonly associated with high mountain ranges, but it has been established that any mountain range or ridge line is capable of producing wave phenomena.

Figure 9.10. Typical Cloud Formation, Main Updraft and Downdraft in Mountain Wave.

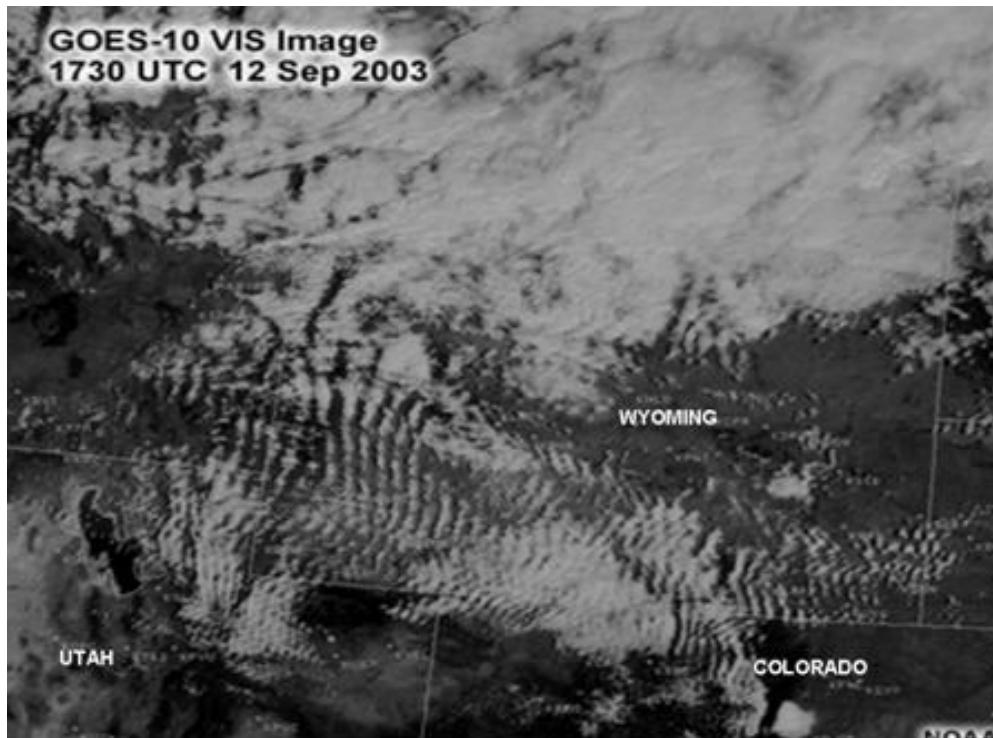


9.9.2. The most dangerous features of the mountain wave are the extreme turbulence and very high velocity updrafts and downdrafts on the lee side of the mountain range. In some cases, associated areas of updrafts and downdrafts may extend up to 70,000 feet and as far as 300 miles downstream from the mountain range. The amplitude and intensity of the waves decrease the further downstream they occur.

9.9.3. While clouds are usually present to warn aircrews of mountain wave activity, it is possible for wave action to take place when the air is too dry to form clouds. If the descending branch of wave activity immediately to the lee of the mountain range is characterized by dry air that is warming rapidly via compression, cloud free areas known as *foehn gaps* may occur downwind of the mountains. These are often evident in satellite imagery, and will appear as a clear area just to the lee of the mountain range where the phase of the mountain wave is neutral. Foehn gaps are indicators of potentially severe turbulence.

9.9.4. **Key wave** turbulence cloud types are cap clouds, rotor clouds, and altocumulus standing lenticular clouds. Characteristic cloud forms, peculiar to wave action, still provide the best means for identifying the presence of the wave. The weather forecaster can use satellite imagery to locate visible turbulence cloud signatures such as those evident in **Figure 9.11**. Clouds aligned parallel with mountain ranges signal the presence of turbulence and extend hundreds of miles downstream.

Figure 9.11. Mountain Waves.



9.9.4.1. **Cap Cloud.** The cap cloud is a low hanging cloud with its base near the mountain top and at times obscuring the mountain peak. Most of the cloud is on the windward side, while on the leeward side, the cloud looks like a wall hanging over the edge with fingers pointing down the slope.

9.9.4.2. **Rotor Cloud.** The rotor cloud gives a visible appearance of turbulence. The rotor cloud looks like a line of cumulus clouds parallel to the ridge line (Figure 9.12). The cloud is usually stationary and is constantly forming and dissipating on the lee side with updrafts and downdrafts of up to 5,000 feet per minute. The rotation of the cloud may not be apparent to the crew member. The most dangerous features of mountain waves are the turbulence in and below the rotor clouds and the downdrafts just to the lee of the mountain ridges and to the lee of the rotor clouds.

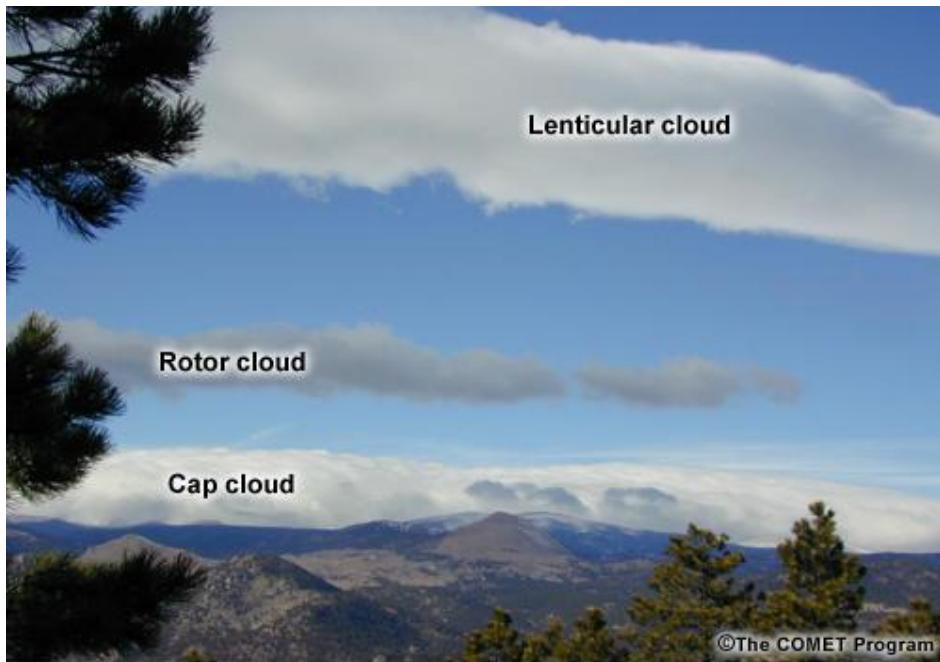
Figure 9.12. Rotor Clouds.



9.9.4.3. Altocumulus Standing Lenticular Cloud. The standing lenticular cloud is lens-shaped and is probably the most frequent cloud associated with mountain waves ([Figure 9.13](#)). It, like the rotor, is stationary, and constantly forms in bands parallel to the mountain at fairly regularly-spaced intervals on the leeward side. The standing lenticular cloud is usually found above 14,000 feet and can form multiple layers at differing heights. The area identified by lenticular clouds is usually turbulent, no matter if they are smooth or ragged in appearance.

9.9.5. Barometric pressure is considerably lowered in the mountain wave because of the Venturi effect of high winds over an obstruction. Therefore, significant pressure altimeter errors are associated with the mountain wave. The maximum error can be as much as 2,500 feet if a strong wave is in progress. Aircrews should avoid flight into areas of suspected mountain wave conditions due to this error.

Figure 9.13. Standing Lenticular Clouds Associated with a Mountain Wave.



9.9.6. Aircrew Notes.

9.9.6.1. *If flight into the area must be made, the following safeguards should be followed:*

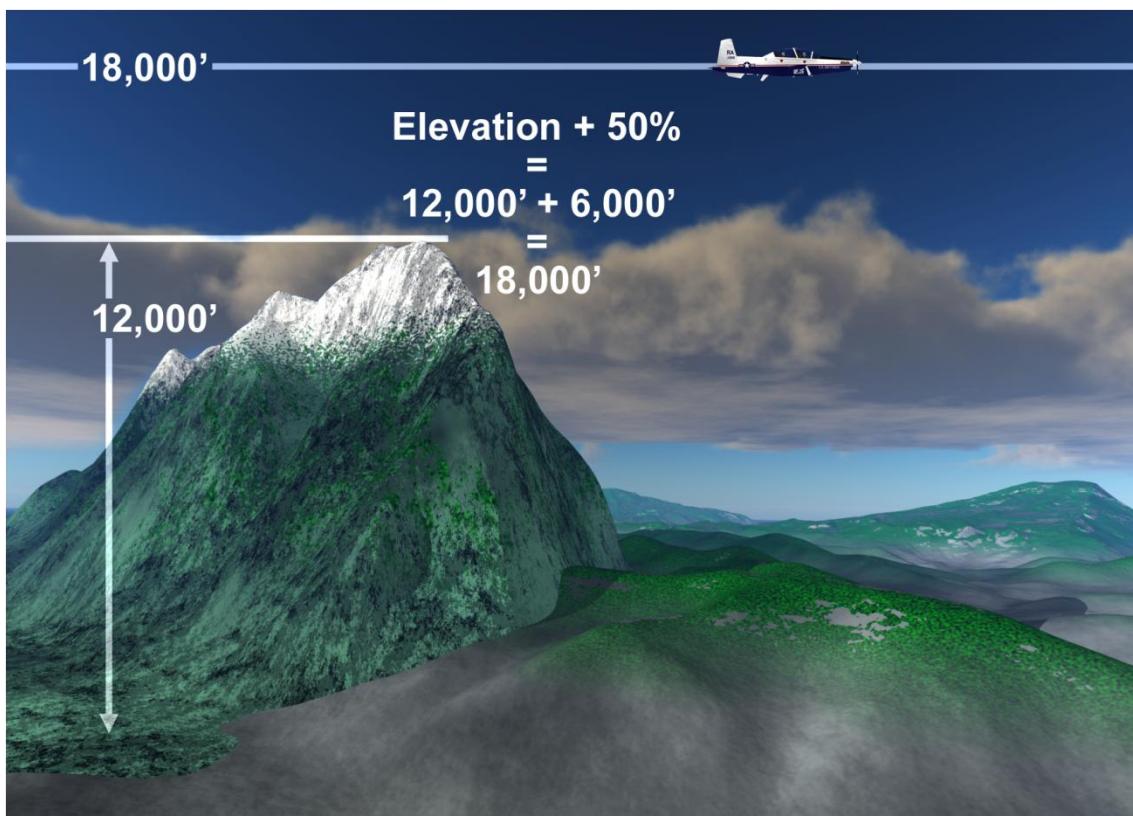
9.9.6.1.1. *Avoid the cap, rotor, and lenticular clouds since they can often contain severe to extreme turbulence.*

9.9.6.1.2. *As a minimum, fly at a level which is at least 50 percent higher than the height of the mountain range. This procedure will not keep the aircraft out of turbulence, but provides a margin of safety if a strong downdraft is encountered (Figure 9.14).*

9.9.6.1.3. *Approach the mountain range at a 45° angle, so that a quick turn can be made away from the ridge if a severe downdraft is encountered.*

9.9.6.1.4. *Expect pressure altimeter errors. Altimeters may indicate 2,500 feet higher than actual altitude.*

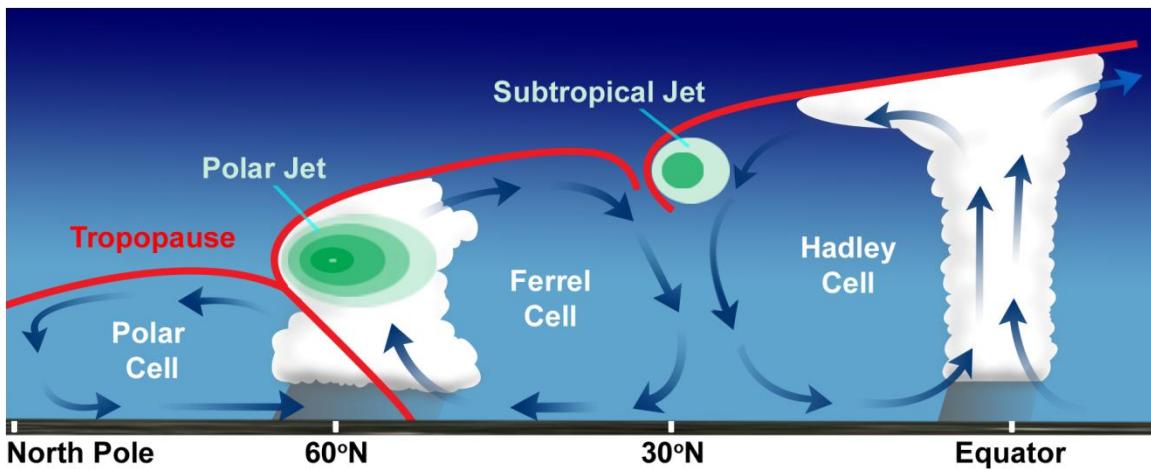
9.9.6.1.5. *Follow additional Dash 1 procedures concerning flight speeds and control settings.*

Figure 9.14. Mountain Turbulence Avoidance.

9.10. Clear Air Turbulence (CAT).

9.10.1. The tropopause is often a region of turbulence because of the marked variations in vertical motions which occur in, at, or below it. The tropopause is often devoid of clouds, so that turbulence encountered there will frequently be classified as clear air turbulence. Earlier we discussed the tropopause is higher at the equator than at the poles. However, there are generally two breaks in the tropopause--one between the arctic and polar air masses, and one between the polar and tropical air masses ([Figure 9.15](#)). It is where these breaks in the tropopause appear that a very important flight factor can be found--the jet stream.

Figure 9.15. Location of Polar/Subtropical Jet Streams in Relation to Tropopause.



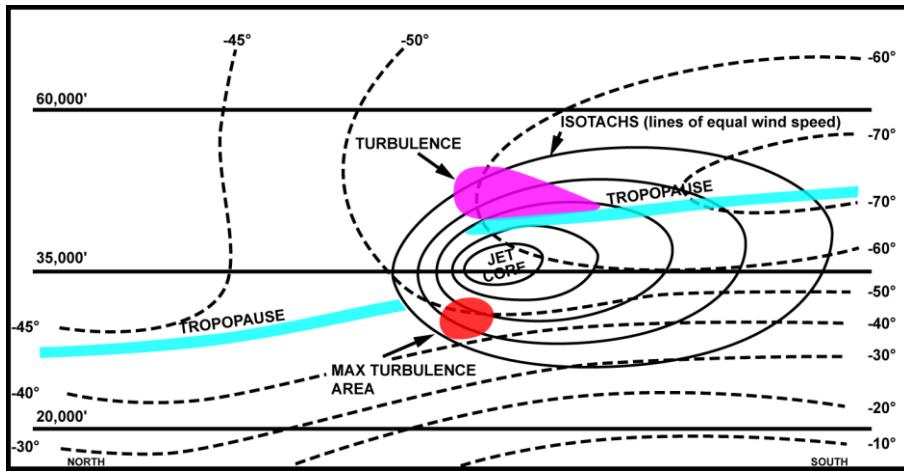
9.11. Jet Streams and CAT.

9.11.1. Jet streams were already discussed in Chapter 5, but because they often produce CAT, they are briefly mentioned here as well. In rare occasions Wind speeds within jet streams may sometimes reach 300 kts (although very rarely), but generally are between 100 and 150 knots. Such strong wind speeds, along with the potential presence of mountain barriers or instability aloft, are often conducive to moderate to severe CAT at flight level. This may force aircrews to change course or adjust altitude. The existence of jet streams at operational altitudes requires additional aircrew flight planning consideration. The greater headwind component for westbound aircraft will increase fuel consumption and may require additional alternates along the route.

9.12. Polar Front Jet (PFJ) Stream.

9.12.1. In **Figure 9.16**, notice that the highest wind speeds and probable associated turbulence in the polar front jet stream is found about 5,000 feet below the tropical tropopause and near the end of the polar tropopause. Also notice that the rate of decrease of wind speed is much greater on the polar side than on the equatorial side. Therefore, the magnitude of the wind shear is greater on the polar side than on the equatorial side. If a polar front jet becomes indistinct, another reforms in a few days or so, and more than one jet can exist at the same time. There is hardly a day in the colder months without at least one jet stream, and often two or more, meandering over the United States.

Figure 9.16. Areas of Probable Turbulence in Jet Stream.



9.12.2. The rapid change of wind speed within a short distance of the jet core is particularly significant. The vertical shear is generally close to the same intensity both above and below the core, and it may be many times stronger than the horizontal shear; the horizontal shear on the cold air side of the core is stronger than on the warm air side. You can use this information to adjust your flight to obtain an increased tail wind or a decreased head wind. The occurrence of CAT can extend to levels in excess of 60,000 feet, and can be associated with other windflow patterns which produce shears. A sharp trough aloft, especially one moving at a greater speed than 20 kts, can have clear air turbulence in or near the trough, even though wind speeds can be rather low as compared with the speeds near the jet stream. However, the winds on opposite sides of the trough can have a difference of 90° or more in direction ([Figure 9.17A](#)). CAT can occur in the circulation around a closed low aloft, particularly if the flow is merging or splitting ([Figure 9.17B](#)) and is to the northeast of a cutoff low aloft ([Figure 9.17C](#)).

9.13. AircREW Notes.

9.13.1. *If jet stream turbulence is encountered with direct tail winds or head winds, a turn to the south in the northern hemisphere will place the aircraft in a more favorable area. If a turn is not feasible because of airway restrictions, a climb or descent to the next flight level will usually result in smoother air.*

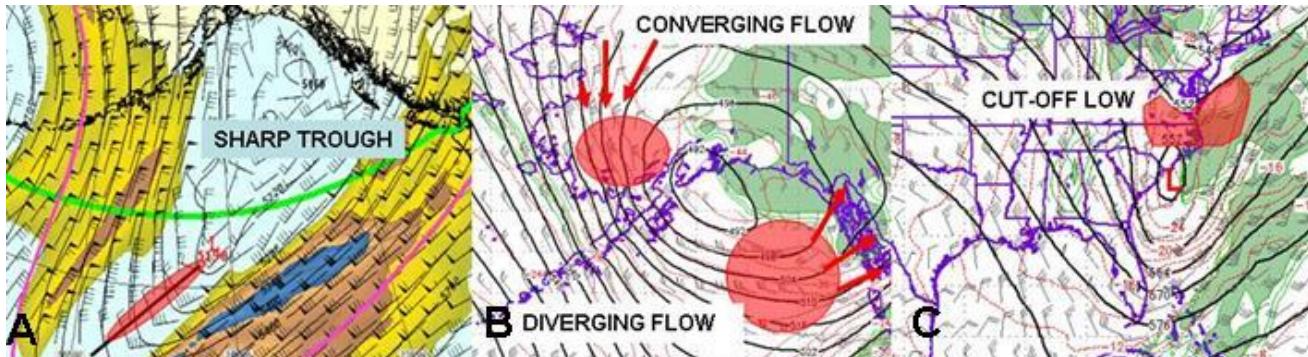
9.13.2. *Jet stream CAT often occurs in patches averaging 2,000 feet deep, 20 miles wide, and 50 miles long.*

9.13.3. *If jet stream turbulence is encountered in a crosswind, it is not so important to change course or flight level. However, if it is desired to traverse the CAT area more quickly, either climb or descend after watching the temperature gauge for a minute or two. If the temperature is rising--climb; if it is falling--descend. This maneuver will prevent following the sloping tropopause or frontal surface and thereby staying in the turbulent area. If the temperature remains the same, you can either climb or descend.*

9.13.4. *When anticipating or encountering CAT, fly the recommended turbulence-penetration airspeed for your aircraft and tighten your seat belt and shoulder harness. Ordinarily, this will reduce the effect of turbulence. However, if the intensity of the turbulence requires further action, climb, descend, and/or change course to exit the turbulent*

zone, using the information provided by the weather forecaster during the preflight weather briefing or pilot-to-metro services. Make very gradual climbs, descents, and turns to minimize additional stress on the aircraft. Finally, give PIREPs as soon as practical to alert fellow aviators of CAT and other dangerous weather.

Figure 9.17. Wind Patterns Associated with High Level CAT.



9.14. Low-Level Jet Stream.

9.14.1. A low level jet stream is a “sheet” of strong winds sometimes a thousand miles long, hundreds of miles wide and hundreds of feet thick. It generally forms over large expanses of flat terrain and develops in response to a strong east-west pressure gradient. The favored US location is in the Midwest and Great Plains when a High pressure cell is over the east coast and a Low pressure system forms on the east side of the Rocky Mountains. Winds are usually from the south to southwest with velocities up to 60 knots at only 2000 to 6000 feet AGL. Once again, it’s the difference in wind speeds above and below the inversion that causes the wind shear and turbulence. The level of maximum wind varies from about 700 feet to 2,000 feet above the ground. Wind speeds typically vary from 0-8 knots at ground level to 25-40 knots at the jet maximum, dropping to the wind speeds normally expected (15-30 knots) 1,000 feet or so above the maximum wind (see [Figures 9.18](#) and [Figure 9.19](#)). Low level jets are one of the main causes of hazardous low level wind shear. In extreme cases, the maximum winds can be in excess of 65 knots with shears of 10 knots or more per 100 feet just above and below the jet core. At times when the morning inversion breaks, the strong winds that were just above the inversion lower to the surface very quickly.

Figure 9.18. Wind Profile of Nocturnal Low level Jet.

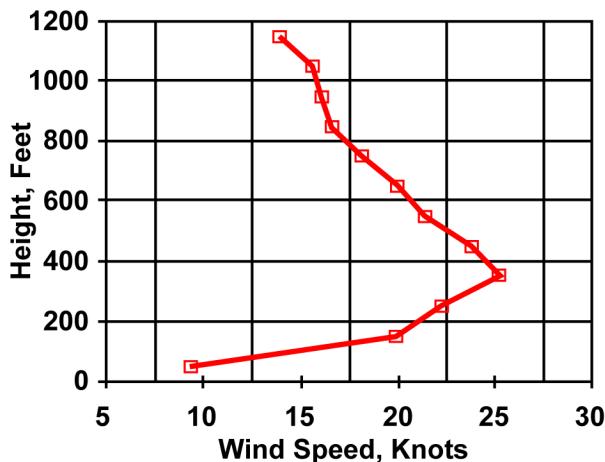
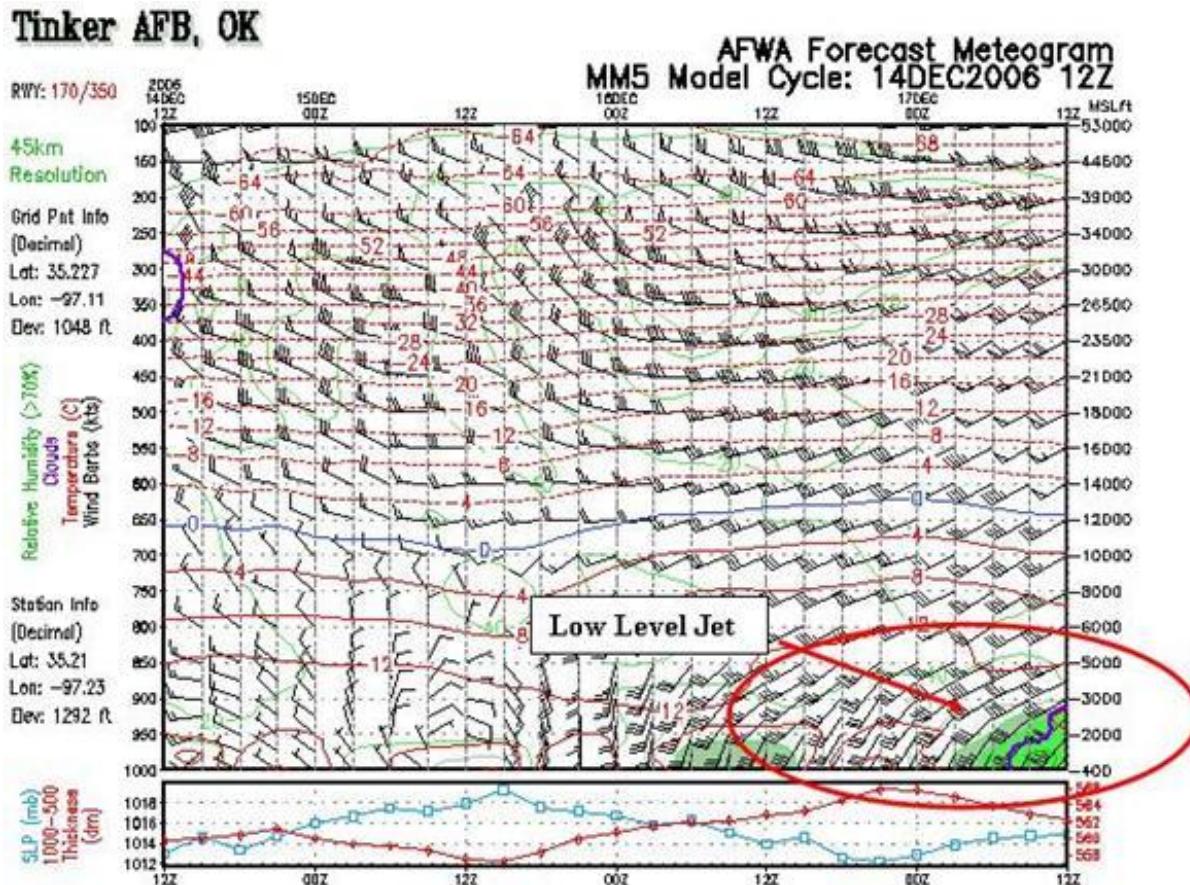


Figure 9.19. Meteogram showing Low Level Jet.



9.15. Wake Turbulence.

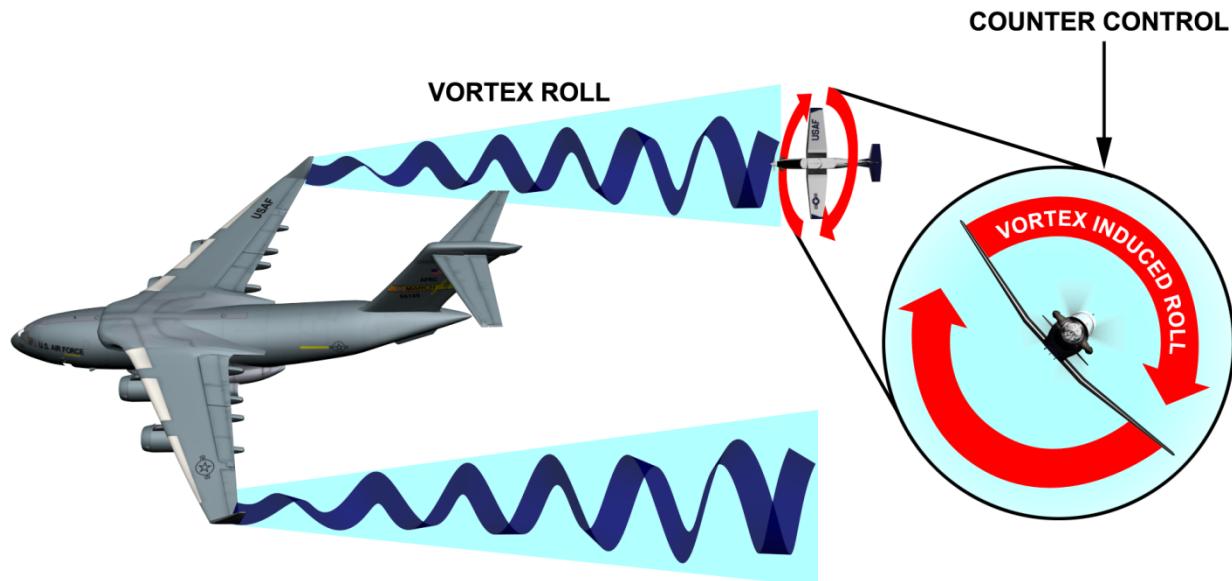
9.15.1. Every aircraft in flight generates a pair of counter-rotating vortices trailing from the wing tips (Figure 9.20). Many large jets generate vortices exceeding the roll capability of smaller aircraft. Further, turbulence generated within the vortices can damage aircraft components and equipment if encountered at close range. The strength of the vortex is

governed primarily by the weight, speed, and wing shape of the generating aircraft. The basic factor is weight, and vortex strength increases with increases in weight and span loading. The greatest vortex strength occurs when the aircraft is HEAVY, CLEAN, and SLOW. Vortex tangential velocities have been recorded up to 130 kts. A serious wake encounter could result in structural damage. The primary hazard is loss of control because of induced roll ([Figure 9.21](#)). The capability of counteracting this roll depends on the span and counter-control responsiveness of the encountering aircraft. Where the wing span and ailerons of larger aircraft extend beyond the vortex, counter-control is usually effective and the induced roll is minimal.

Figure 9.20. Counter Rotating Vortices.



Figure 9.21. Induced Roll.



9.15.2. Trailing vortex wakes have certain characteristics which the aircrew can use to visualize their location and avoid them:

9.15.2.1. Vortex generation starts with rotation when the nose-wheel lifts off and ends when the nose-wheel touches down on landing.

9.15.2.2. Vortex circulation is outward, upward, and around the wing tip. Core sizes range from 25 to 50 feet and stay close together until dissipation ([Figure 9.22](#)).

9.15.2.3. Vortices sink immediately at a rate of 400 to 500 feet/minute and level off 800 to 900 feet below the flight path. Pilots should fly at or above a preceding aircraft's flight path.

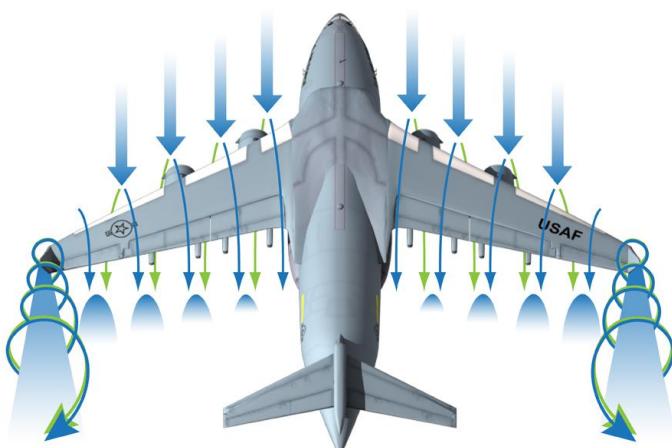
9.15.2.4. When vortices sink into ground effect, they move laterally on the ground at a speed of about 5 kts.

9.15.2.5. Cross-winds will influence the lateral movement of the upwind vortex and increase movement of the downwind vortex. Aircrews should be alert to heavy jets upwind.

9.15.2.6. Tail-wind conditions can move the vortices forward into the touchdown zone.

9.15.2.7. Vortices persist longer during inversions. When such conditions exist, aircrews should request additional aircraft separation.

Figure 9.22. Vortex Circulation.



9.15.3. Helicopter-hoovering can generate a down-wash from its main rotor(s) similar to the prop-blast of conventional aircraft. In forward flight, this energy is transformed into a pair of trailing vortices similar to wing tip vortices of fixed wing aircraft ([Figure 9.23](#)). However, the vortex circulation is outward, upward, around, and away from the main rotor(s) in all directions. Pilots of small aircraft and helicopters should avoid both the vortices and down-wash of a heavy helicopter.

9.15.4. Airfield traffic controllers will separate IFR aircraft from heavy jets or large aircraft, but VFR aircraft must provide their own separation from heavy/large aircraft. But, ultimately, it is the aircrew's responsibility to anticipate and avoid areas of possible vortex wake turbulence.

9.15.5. Aircrew Notes.

9.15.5.1. *The following vortex avoidance procedures are recommended for the various situations:*

9.15.5.1.1. *Enroute--fly at or above a large aircraft's flight path.*

9.15.5.1.2. *Ensure adequate distance exists behind landing heavies, or land beyond the heavies' touchdown point if sufficient runway remains.*

9.15.5.1.3. *Landing or departing behind a departing large aircraft--land or rotate prior to the heavy aircraft's rotation point.*

Figure 9.23. Helicopter Vortices.



Chapter 10

WINDSHEAR

10.1. Introduction. Flight crews must gather all available information to assist them in making informed decisions when flying in windshear environments. Recognizing windshear, using available cockpit instruments, and using effective crew coordination procedures are the first steps in handling this potentially lethal situation. This chapter will arm you with the basic knowledge to handle a windshear situation.

10.2. Windshear definition.

10.2.1. Windshear is any deviation in the magnitude and/or direction of adjacent winds in a vector wind field. Severe windshear causes airspeed changes greater than 15 knots or vertical speed changes greater than 500 feet per minute. Although windshear occurs at all altitudes, it is particularly hazardous when it happens within 2,000 feet of the ground (known as low-level windshear, or LLWS). On approach and departure, aircraft operate only slightly above stall speed, and a sudden change in wind velocity can lead to a loss of lift. If the loss is great enough, and the power response inadequate, a high descent rate results. The altitude at which the encounter occurs, the pilot reaction time, and the aircraft response capability determine if the descent can be stopped in time to prevent an accident.

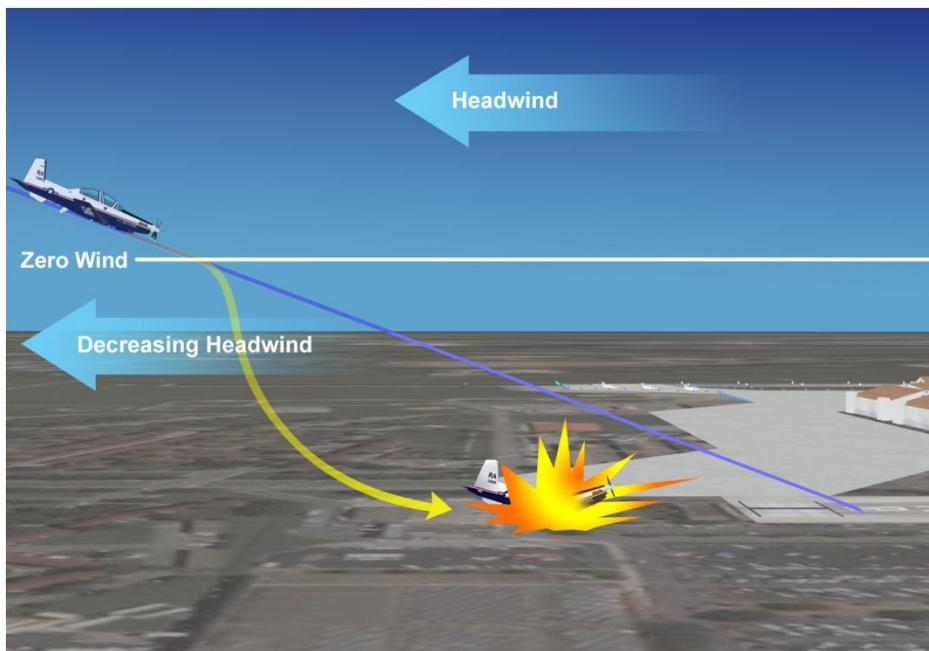
10.2.2. The time factor and low level windshear (LLWS) can be illustrated by example. Suppose an aircraft is straight and level at 180 KIAS flying into a 30 kt headwind. Over the next hour, the winds change to a 30 knot tailwind. The only effect on the aircraft was a groundspeed change from 150 to 210 knots. The aircraft effectively accelerated with the accelerating air mass without a power adjustment by the pilot. However, if the same change occurs over five to ten seconds, the air mass accelerates away from the aircraft, causing a rapid reduction below 180 KIAS. The crew would have to react quickly to accelerate and prevent a critical loss of airspeed. Unfortunately, not all aircraft respond fast enough to safely fly through sudden windshear environments. This is especially true for jet aircraft with engines that respond slowly to changes in power settings. When an aircraft enters into a decreasing headwind over a short time period, the relative velocity of air over the wings decreases and the indicated airspeed decreases, since lift is dependent upon relative velocity of air over the wings, lift decreases with an associated increase in the vertical speed indicator (VSI) readout. The decreasing headwind shear condition is therefore performance decreasing.

10.3. Performance Decreasing Shear.

10.3.1. The hazard associated with performance decreasing windshear during approaches and takeoffs is a significant loss of airspeed and therefore lift. An aircraft operating at low speeds and low altitudes in a high drag configuration cannot afford a sudden decrease in airspeed ([Figure 10.1](#)). When the shear is encountered, the aircraft experiences a drop in airspeed and a loss in altitude. The pilot must be ready to add power when indicated airspeed starts to decrease. Once speed and glide path are regained, thrust must be reduced to remain at the appropriate approach speed. It will now require less thrust and a greater rate of descent to maintain the proper profile in the decreased headwind. If the initial corrections of increased thrust and pitch are not promptly removed after regaining glide path and airspeed, a long landing at high speed may result. When an aircraft traverses from a tailwind to a

headwind over a short time span, the air's relative velocity over the wings increases, the aircraft's inertia causes an increase in lift, with an initial increase in airspeed and reduced VSI indications. This windshear condition is performance increasing. Long landings are an obvious hazard of performance increasing windshear. However, a more critical hazard exists. When an aircraft on approach experiences wind shear at approach speeds, the aircraft will experience a sudden increase in airspeed and a reduction in the descent rate. The pilot's normal reaction will be to reduce power and lower pitch to compensate. Moments later, after the aircraft's inertia dissipates, the indicated airspeed (IAS) will drop resulting in a loss of lift. The aircraft will now be below approach speed at a higher descent rate and most likely descending through the glide-path--all at a reduced power setting. If this type of shear occurs close to the ground, the tendency is for the aircraft to land short of the runway. Therefore, it is critical for the pilot to understand what is happening to the aircraft in order to successfully transit the shear. Corrections to pitch and power must be positive and aggressive. But avoid going to idle where engine spool up time could be excessive.

Figure 10.1. Performance Decreasing Shear.



10.4. Microburst.

10.4.1. A microburst is a short lived, powerful downdraft associated with convective activity. Observations show that approximately five percent of all thunderstorms produce a microburst. Downdrafts associated with a microburst are typically only a few hundred to 3,000 feet across. When a microburst contacts the ground, it fans out in a radial pattern typically producing headwind to tailwind speed differences greater than 50 kts. The outflow region is typically 6,000 to 12,000 feet across.

10.4.2. Microbursts are extremely dangerous because their small size and rapidly changing wind pattern over short distances results in extreme windshear. Characteristically, microburst winds intensify for about 5 minutes after ground contact and typically dissipate after about 10

to 20 minutes. Since the phenomenon is short lived, this makes the “If he made it, so can I” theory, or PIREPs, invalid.

10.4.3. When penetrating a microburst, an aircraft experiences a headwind followed rapidly by a strong downdraft and then a tailwind. This results in a dramatic loss of airspeed and a large decrease in angle of attack. This all adds up to very high sink rate. If the shear is large enough and the altitude low, inadvertent ground contact may occur regardless of pilot actions. Several major aircraft accidents have been attributed to microburst windshear. One type of microburst (wet) typically occurs in conjunction with thunderstorms and is often embedded in heavy precipitation. Another type (dry) frequently develops under benign-appearing clouds or virga. Both types produce extremely dangerous shears occurring with little or no warning. Most military airfields are not equipped with sensors to detect the onset of microburst windshear; therefore, timely PIREPs to tower or air traffic control agencies are essential. Due to rapidly changing conditions typical of microbursts, a PIREP from the aircraft directly ahead may not accurately describe the severity of windshear you may encounter.

10.5. Low Level Windshear (LLWS).

10.5.1. Several weather phenomena produce low level windshear. These include thunderstorms, microbursts, fronts, land/sea breezes, low level jets at the top of a radiation inversion, topographic conditions, and mountain waves. Thunderstorms are responsible for two out of every three windshear events. Thunderstorms are also often responsible for the most hazardous form of windshear, the microburst. Frontal thunderstorms are usually associated with weather systems like fronts, converging winds, and troughs aloft. The thunderstorm's downdraft is fairly large, about one to five miles in diameter. Resultant outflows may produce large changes in wind speed. Downdrafts exiting the base of a thunderstorm spread outward upon reaching the surface and form an area of gustiness near the thunderstorm. The gust-front is the outer limit of this gusty area. The gust-front frequently extends 10 to 20 miles from the thunderstorm. Across the gust front, vertical shears of 10 kts per 100 feet of altitude and horizontal shears of 40 kts per mile have been recorded. In addition to the tremendous speed shears reached, most severe thunderstorms produce directional shears of 90° to 180° . The thunderstorm downdraft may produce the most dangerous shear conditions associated with the outflow of a thunderstorm. For example, in **Figure 10.2**, an aircraft passing through the gust front and downdraft would encounter not only a rapid change in the horizontal wind field but also a downward vertical motion. The downward vertical motion can add or subtract 2,000 feet per minute or more to the descent or ascent rate of the aircraft. The resulting loss of lift could prove disastrous to the aircrew. Windshear associated with thunderstorms is by far the most hazardous due to the complexity and multiplicity of the shears produced. Prevailing low level winds are forced up over the gust front; currents feeding into the storm are present, and more than one gust front may be encountered due to multiple downdrafts. In addition, extreme downdrafts may occur beneath the central regions of the storm. Avoid approaches or departures in an environment of rapidly changing wind directions and speed since this can be disastrous (**Figure 10.3**).

Figure 10.2. Windshear Associated with Thunderstorm Downdraft.

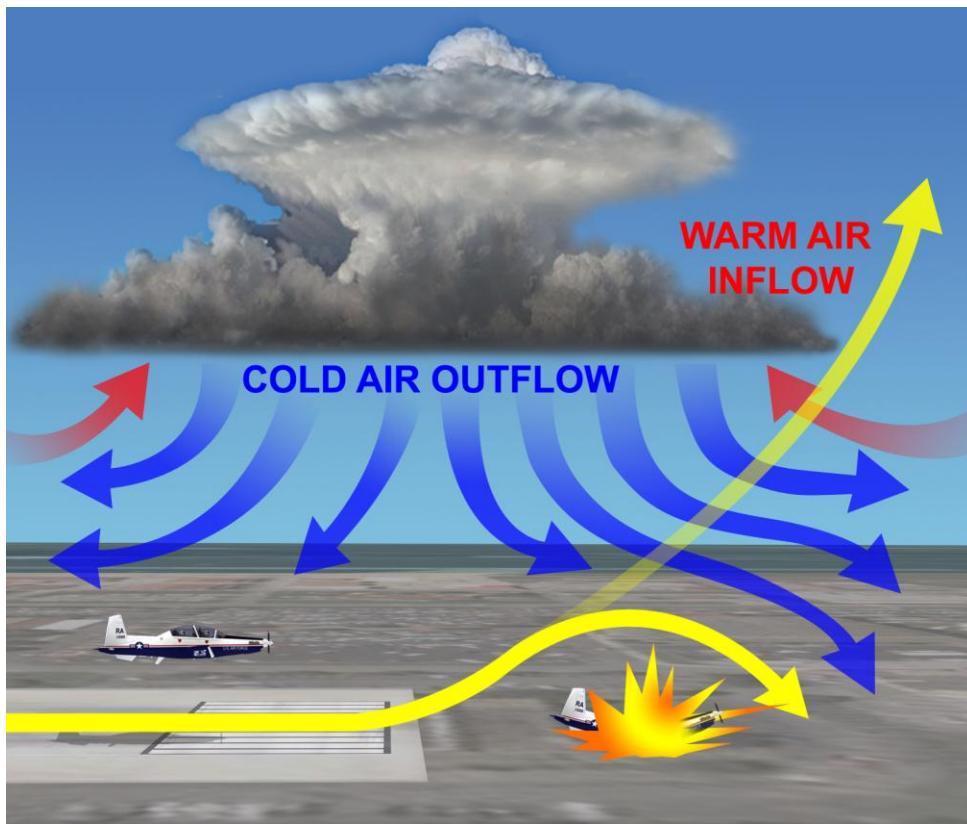
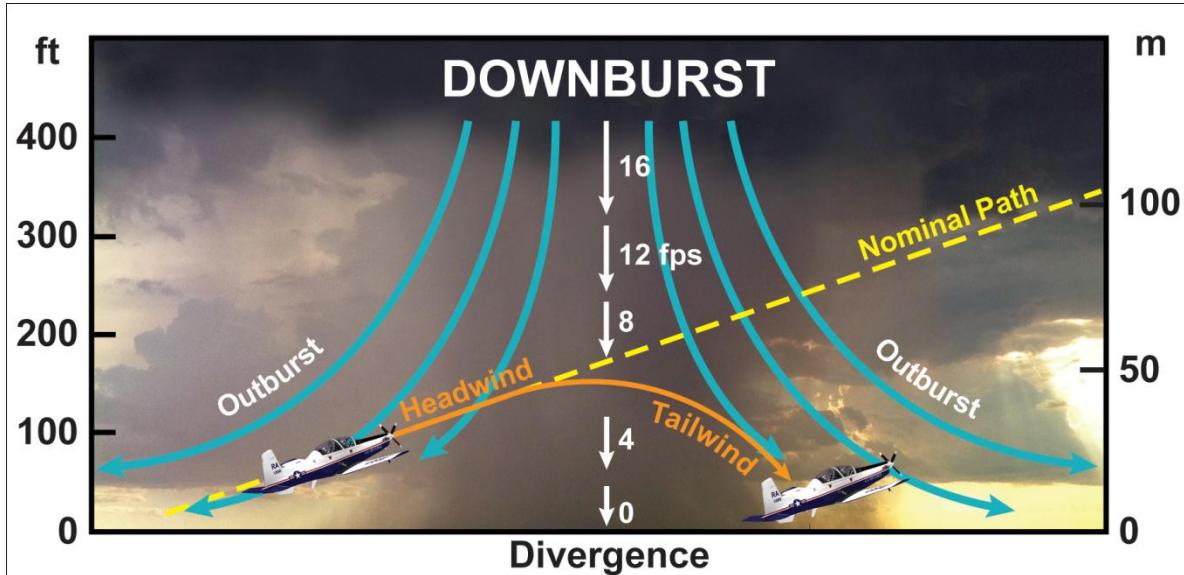


Figure 10.3. Approach and Takeoff can be Dangerous in Rapidly Changing Shear Conditions.



10.6. Frontal Shear.

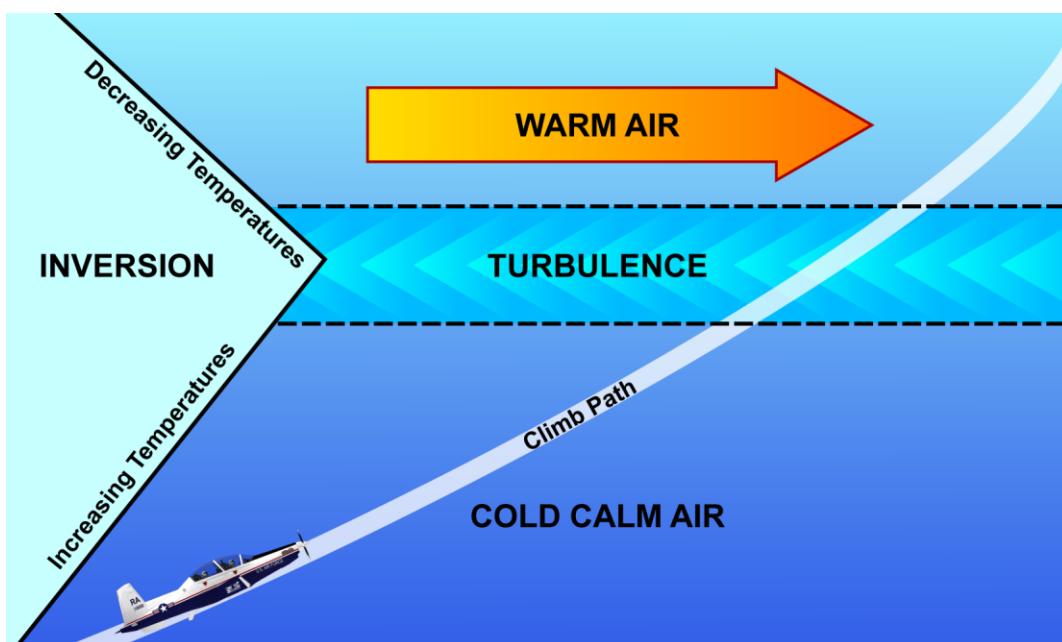
10.6.1. Winds can be significantly different in the two air masses meeting to form a front. Fronts most conducive to significant windshear are fast moving (30 kts or more) or have at

least a 5°C (9°F) temperature differential. Low level windshear occurs with a cold front after the front passes the aerodrome. Because cold fronts have a greater slope and normally move faster than warm fronts, the duration of low level windshear at a station is usually less than 2 hours. Windshear associated with a warm front is more dangerous to aerodrome operations. Strong winds aloft, associated with the warm front may cause a rapid change in wind direction and speed where warm air overrides the cold, dense air near the surface. Warm frontal windshear may persist 6 hours or more over an airfield ahead of the front because of the front's shallow slope and slow movement.

10.7. Local Winds.

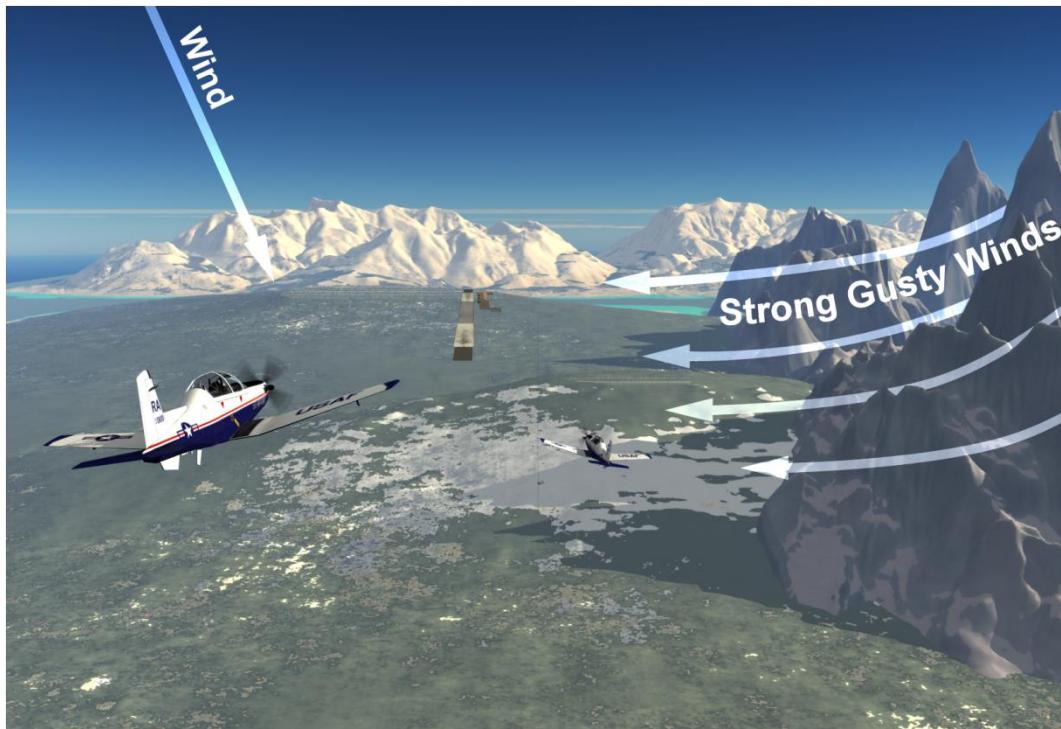
10.7.1. The low level jet often forms just above a radiation inversion. It starts to form at sundown, reaches maximum intensity just before sunrise, and is destroyed by daytime heating (usually by 10 AM local time). The low level jet can occur anywhere in the world during the entire year. In the United States it's common in the Great Plains and central states. As the Earth cools, it creates a calm, stable dome of cold air 300-1,000 feet thick, called an inversion layer (see Chapter 9). The low level jet occurs just above the top of the inversion layer, and while speeds of 30 kts are common, wind speeds in excess of 60 kts have been reported. Anytime a radiation inversion is present, low level windshear is possible ([Figure 10.4](#)).

Figure 10.4. Windshear During Radiation Inversion.



10.7.2. Some aerodromes are notorious for their frequent treacherous winds. These winds are caused by funneling, i.e., the terrain forces the prevailing winds to channel through a narrow space (such as a canyon) where it accelerates and spills out into an aircraft's flight path. These winds can sometimes reach 80 kts or more. Use caution when conducting operations near mountains or along straits and channels ([Figure 10.5](#)).

Figure 10.5. A Wind Funneling Condition.



10.7.3. Mountain waves (see Chapter 9) often create low level windshear at aerodromes lying downwind of the wave. While not a prerequisite, altocumulus standing lenticular (ACSL) clouds usually indicate the presence of mountain waves, and are clues to anticipate strong shears.

10.8. Land/Sea Breeze Shear.

10.8.1. Two less prominent sources of low level windshear deserve a brief discussion: gusty or strong surface winds and land/sea breezes. Fluctuations of 10 kts or more from the mean sustained wind speed or strong winds blowing past buildings and structures near a runway can produce localized shear. This type of shear is particularly hazardous to light aircraft. Observing the local terrain and requesting PIREPs of conditions near the runway are the best means for anticipating windshear from this source.

10.8.2. Land and sea breezes are a common occurrence near large bodies of water (see Chapter 5). Differential heating and cooling of land and water causes this air flow. There is a windshear boundary present between the lower land/sea breeze with the prevailing upper level winds present just above the land/sea breeze boundary. If the upper and lower winds are from the same direction, windshear is not much of a problem; but if the winds are from opposite directions, windshear can be as high as 40 knots! The sea breeze is primarily a daytime phenomenon. It's a small scale frontal boundary with prevailing wind speeds of 15 to 20 kts, and moves inland 10 to 20 miles. The depth of the sea breeze is approximately 2,000 feet, land breezes occur at night when the land becomes cooler than the water. Land breezes are not as strong as sea breezes and are little threat to flying safety.

10.9. Windshear Lessons Learned.

10.9.1. Analysis of past windshear accidents and incidents has taught valuable lessons regarding windshear recognition and flight path control. Engineering studies and flight simulator evaluations have been conducted to gather additional information. The primary lesson learned is that the best defense against windshear is to avoid it altogether. This is important because windshear can exist which is beyond the capability of any pilot or airplane. In most windshear accidents, several clues--Low Level Wind Shear Alerts, weather reports, visual signs--were present that would have alerted the aircrew.

10.9.2. Recognition of windshear is difficult and is usually accompanied by marginal weather. The time available for recognition and recovery is short, in some instances as little as 5 seconds. Flight crew coordination is essential for prompt windshear recognition and recovery. Pilots can control flight path with pitch attitude. Lower than normal airspeed may have to be accepted to counter loss of lift. Three main windshear situations and suggested pilot techniques are presented below.

10.9.3. In a typical accident studied, the airplane encountered an increasing tailwind shear shortly after lifting off the runway. For the first 5 seconds after liftoff, the takeoff appeared normal, but the aircraft crashed off the end of the runway about 20 seconds after liftoff.

10.9.4. In many events, early trends in airspeed, pitch attitude, vertical speed and altitude appeared normal. In this example, the aircraft encountered windshear before stabilized climb was established which caused difficulty in detecting onset of shear. As the airspeed was decreased, pitch attitude was reduced to regain airspeed. By reducing pitch attitude, available performance capability was not utilized and the airplane lost altitude. As terrain became a factor, recovery to initial pitch attitude was initiated. This required unusually high stick force. Corrective action was too late to prevent ground contact since the downward flight path was well established.

10.9.5. Reducing pitch attitude to regain lost airspeed, or allowing attitude to decrease in response to lost airspeed, is the result of past training emphasis on airspeed control. Successful recovery from an inadvertent windshear encounter requires maintaining or increasing pitch attitude and accepting lower than usual airspeed. Unusual and unexpected control inputs may be required to counter natural airplane pitching tendencies due to airspeed and lift loss. To counter the loss of airspeed and angle of attack, pitch attitude must be increased above the normal range. Only by properly controlling angle of attack (AOA) through pitch attitude and accepting a reduced airspeed can flight path degradation be prevented. Once the airplane begins to deviate from the intended flight path and high descent rates develop, it takes additional time and altitude to change flight path direction.

10.9.6. In the windshear scenario just described, available aircraft performance capability may not have been used because of two factors: lack of timely recognition and inappropriate or inadequate response. Rapidly deteriorating climb performance may not be apparent to the crew unless all appropriate vertical flight path instruments are closely monitored. Only 5 to 10 seconds may be available to recognize and respond to the shear. It's imperative that a windshear encounter be recognized as soon as possible. Timely windshear recognition requires effective crew coordination.

10.9.7. Analysis of a typical accident where an increasing tailwind shear was encountered during takeoff ground roll showed that initial indications appeared normal. Due to increasing tailwind shear, the airplane didn't reach rotational speed (V_r) until nearing the end of the

runway. As the aircraft lifted off, the tailwind continued increasing, preventing any further airspeed increase. The airplane encountered an obstacle off the departure end of the runway. An additional factor is the difficulty of recognizing deteriorating aircraft performance. Timely recognition of a windshear encounter on the runway may be difficult since the only indication may be slower than normal acceleration. The presence of gusts may mask abnormal airspeed build-up. Full thrust may be required to provide additional performance, particularly if reduced thrust takeoff procedures have been used. If there is insufficient runway left to accelerate to normal takeoff speed, and inadequate runway to stop, liftoff and safe climb may require rotation at speeds less than normal V_r . In this case, additional pitch attitude may be required to achieve sufficient lift. Rotation to higher than normal pitch attitude at lower than normal airspeed may be required to lift off the remaining runway which may result in aft body contact. To deal with an inadvertent windshear encounter, the pilot must be prepared to apply techniques which differ from those ordinarily used.

10.9.8. Analysis of typical windshear encounters on approach yields that the aircrew can expect increased downdrafts and tailwinds along the approach flight path. The aircraft will lose airspeed, drop below the target glideslope, and contact the ground short of the runway threshold. Reduced airspeed and AOA, as the aircraft encounters the windshear, results in decreased lift. This loss of lift increases the descent rate. The natural nose-down pitch response of the aircraft to low airspeed causes additional altitude loss.

10.9.9. Lack of clues and limited recognition time will delay recovery initiation. Gradual application of thrust during approach may mask the initial decreasing airspeed trend. Poor weather conditions will cause additional workload and complicate the approach. Transition from instruments to exterior visual reference may detract from instrument scan. A stabilized approach with clearly defined callouts is essential to aid in recognition of unacceptable flight path trends and the need to initiate recovery.

10.9.10. As soon as you recognize that you have flown into a microburst, you must push the power all the way up. You will be in for a scary ride and will need all the energy you can muster. Do not change your configuration. You are about to fly right on the verge of a stall and any configuration change may put you over the edge.

10.9.11. After that, it will be all finesse with the controls. Pull the nose up until you get the stall warning or reach maximum performance AOA and hold it there. Fly off the AOA or stall warning system. You must compensate for the relative wind change that will occur from the downdraft, and AOA is the only thing that matters at this point. The whole maneuver will result in an extremely nose high attitude. This will feel completely wrong, but it is critical that you maintain maximum performance AOA so that the wings can produce lift and slow your descent rate. Once you get to the other side of the microburst, you will need to lower the nose to maintain your AOA as the winds start spreading along the ground again. Eventually you should return to level flight and can get back your pre-microburst configuration and resume level flight and normal airspeed.

10.9.12. The vertical speed indicator (VSI) should not be solely relied upon to provide accurate vertical speed information. Due to instrument lags, indications may be several seconds behind actual aircraft rate of climb/descent and, in some situations, may indicate a climb after the aircraft has started descending. Vertical speed indicators driven by an Inertial Reference Unit (IRU) show significant improvement over other type instruments but still

have some lag. In addition, gust-induced pitot static pressure variations within the microburst may introduce further VSI inaccuracies. Due to such lags and errors, all vertical flight path instruments should be cross-checked to verify climb/descent trends.

10.10. Stick Shaker.

10.10.1. Stick shaker is activated by angle of attack. Consequently, rapidly changing vertical winds or maneuvering will vary the attitude and airspeed at which stick shaker occurs. With a properly functioning stall warning system and undamaged alpha vanes, stick shaker will normally activate below the stall angle of attack, thus providing a warning prior to stall.

10.10.2. Angle of attack indicators do provide useful indications of margin to stick shaker and can show variations in relative wind. However, in an actual windshear encounter where rapidly changing vertical winds cause rapid angle of attack fluctuations independent of pilot input, the lack of direct control over angle of attack limits its usefulness as a guiding parameter.

10.10.3. During callouts and instrument scan in a windshear, use of barometric altimeters must be tempered. The barometric altimeter may provide distorted indications due to pressure variations within the microburst.

10.11. Windshear Detection Systems.

10.11.1. Many civilian airfields have, or are installing windshear detection systems such as Low Level Windshear Alert Systems (LLWAS) and Terminal Doppler Weather Radars (TDWR). Currently there is no instrumentation on Air Force runways to detect and measure windshear, and there are no foolproof procedures for dealing with it. Awareness and coordination are crucial for timely windshear recognition and recovery.

10.11.2. A SIGMET, particularly a CONVECTIVE SIGMET, may provide essential clues. In the following example, the CONVECTIVE SIGMET warns of scattered embedded thunderstorms, some reaching level 5 intensity, indicating a potential for windshear. **ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT, CONVECTIVE SIGMET CHARLIE ONE FROM THE VICINITY OF ELMIRA TO PHILLIPSBURG, SCATTERED EMBEDDED THUNDERSTORMS MOVING EAST AT ONE ZERO KNOTS. A FEW INTENSE LEVEL FIVE CELLS, MAXIMUM TOPS FLIGHT LEVEL FOUR FIVE ZERO.**

10.11.3. PIREPs are extremely important indicators in microburst windshear situations. Reports of sudden airspeed changes in the airport approach or landing corridors provide indication of the presence of windshear. In international weather reports, windshear observations may be included at the end of routine and/or special aviation weather observations. **ANDREWS TOWER, PIREP, TRACK 21 ENCOUNTERED WINDSHEAR ON THREE MILE FINAL, LOSS OF 20 KNOTS AT 300 FEET.**

Chapter 11

AIRCRAFT ICING

11.1. Introduction. Aircraft icing is a major weather hazard to aviation. Many aircraft accidents and incidents have been attributed to aircraft icing. In fact, many icing-related mishaps have occurred when the aircraft was not deiced before takeoff. Most of the time, ground deicing and anti-icing procedures will adequately handle icing formation, but there are times when you may be caught unaware of dangerous ice buildup. This chapter will help you understand icing formation processes and what you can do if suddenly caught in an icing situation.

11.1.1. Icing formation on either fixed or rotary wing aircraft disrupts the flow of air over the airfoils increasing weight and stalling speed. Test data indicates that icing reduces wing lift by up to 30 percent and increases drag by 40 percent. The accumulation of ice on exterior movable surfaces also affects the control of the aircraft. If ice begins forming on a propeller's blades, the propeller's efficiency decreases and requires further power to maintain flight. Another significant hazard comes from ice accumulation on rotors and propellers resulting in disastrous vibrations. Ice can also form in an engine's intake, robbing the engine of air needed to support combustion, or ice may break off and may be ingested into the engine, causing foreign object damage (FOD). Other icing effects include loss of proper operation of control surfaces, brakes, or landing gear; reduction or loss of aircrew's outside vision, false flight instrument indications, and loss of radio communication.

11.2. Groups of Icing.

11.2.1. Aircraft icing is classified into two main groups: structural and induction. We will discuss these icing groups in detail to include conditions contributing to ice formation, icing intensities, icing types, and where icing is most likely found.

11.3. Structural Icing.

11.3.1. Two conditions must be met for structural ice to form on an aircraft. First, the air and aircraft's surface temperatures must be at or below freezing. (Instances of freezing precipitation are exempt from this rule.) Second, supercooled, visible water droplets (liquid water droplets at subfreezing temperatures) must be present or high humidity must exist.

11.3.2. Wind tunnel experiments reveal that saturated air flowing over a stationary object may form ice on the object when the air temperature is as high as 4°C. The object's temperature cools by evaporation and pressure changes in the moving air currents. Conversely, friction and water droplet impacts heat the object. When an aircraft travels at about 400 kts true airspeed, the cooling and heating effects tend to balance. Structural ice may form when the free-air temperature is 0°C or colder. Icing is seldom encountered below -40°C.

11.3.3. Clouds are the most common forms of visible liquid water. Water droplets in the free air, unlike bulk water, do not freeze at 0°C. Instead, their freezing temperature varies from -10 to -40°C. The smaller the droplets, the lower the freezing point. As a general rule, serious icing is rare in clouds with temperatures below -20°C since these clouds are almost completely composed of ice crystals. However, be aware that icing is possible in any cloud

when the temperature is 0°C or below. In addition, frost may form on an aircraft in clear, humid air if the aircraft skin temperature is below freezing.

11.3.4. Freezing rain and drizzle, sometimes found in the clear air below a cloud deck, are other forms of visible liquid moisture causing icing. Freezing precipitation is the most dangerous of all icing conditions. It can build hazardous amounts of ice in a few minutes and is extremely difficult to remove. A review of freezing rain and drizzle environments is found in Chapter 8, Fronts.

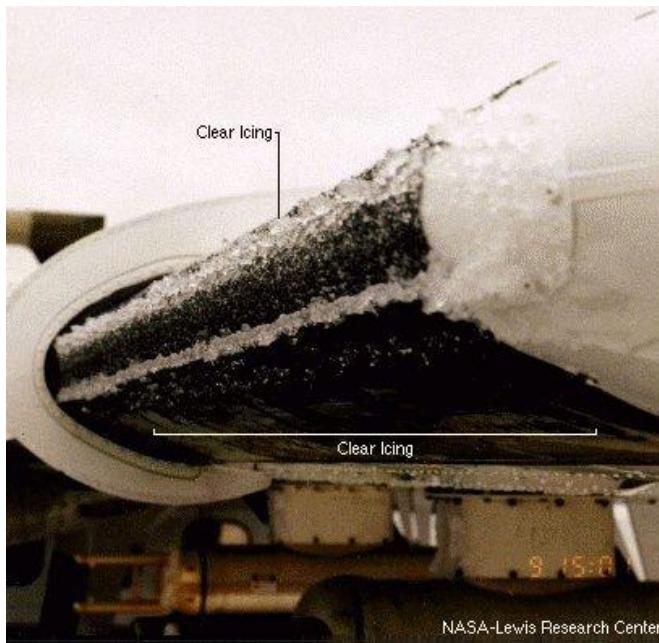
11.4. Types of Icing.

11.4.1. Aircraft structural icing consists of three basic types: clear, rime and mixed. Frost is another form of icing, but is not forecasted as a type of icing. Icing types that form will depend primarily upon the water droplet size and temperature.

11.4.1.1. Clear ice is a glossy ice identical to the glaze forming on trees and other objects as freezing rain strikes the Earth. Clear ice is the most serious of the various forms of ice because it adheres so firmly to the aircraft. Conditions most favorable for clear ice formation are high water content, large droplet size, and temperatures slightly below freezing. Clear ice normally forms when temperatures are between 0° and -16°C, and is most frequently forecasted in cumuliform clouds between 0° and -08 °C and during freezing precipitation. Clear icing can also be encountered in cumulonimbus clouds in temperatures as low as -25°C. It

11.4.1.2. Clear ice can be smooth or rough. It is smooth when deposited from large, supercooled cloud droplets or raindrops that spread, adhere to the surface of the aircraft and slowly freeze. If mixed with snow, ice pellets or small hail, it is rough, irregular, and whitish ([Figure 11.1](#)). The deposit then becomes very blunt-nosed with rough bulges building out against the airflow. Clear ice is hard, heavy, and tenacious. Its removal by deicing equipment is especially difficult.

Figure 11.1. Clear Ice can be Smooth or Rough.



11.4.1.3. Rime ice is a milky, opaque, and granular deposit with a rough surface ([Figure 11.2](#)). It forms by the instantaneous freezing of small, supercooled water droplets as they strike the aircraft. This instantaneous freezing traps a large amount of air, giving the ice its opaqueness and making it very brittle. Rime ice is most frequently encountered in stratiform clouds but also occurs in cumulus clouds. Rime ice may form in stratiform clouds from 0° to -30°C , but most frequently occurs within stratus clouds between -08° and -10°C . It may also accumulate when temperatures in cumuliform clouds are between 0° and -20°C but can be expected in thunderstorms as cold as -40°C . Rime ice is lighter in weight than clear ice and its weight is of little significance. Rime ice is brittle and more easily removed than clear ice.

Figure 11.2. Rime Ice is Milky, Opaque, and Granular.



11.4.1.4. Mixed icing forms when water drops vary in size or when liquid drops are intermingled with snow or ice particles. It can form rapidly. Ice particles become embedded in clear ice, building a very rough accumulation sometimes in a mushroom shape on leading edges. Mixed icing is generally forecasted at temperatures between -9° and -15°C , and is commonly encountered between -10° and -15°C .

11.4.1.5. Frost is deposited as a thin layer of crystalline ice ([Figure 11.3](#)). It forms on the exposed surfaces of parked aircraft when the temperature of the exposed surface is below freezing (although the air temperature may be above freezing). The deposit forms during night radiational cooling in the same way the formation of frost found on the ground. Frost may also form on aircraft in flight when a cold aircraft moves from a zone of subzero temperatures to a warmer, moist layer. Contact with the cold aircraft suddenly chills the air to below freezing temperatures and deposition (formation of ice crystals directly from water vapor) occurs. Frost can cover the windshield or canopy and completely restrict outside vision. It also affects the aircraft's lift to drag ratio and can be a hazard during takeoff. Remove all frost from the aircraft prior to departure.

Figure 11.3. Frost on Exposed Surfaces of Parked Aircraft.



11.5. Icing Amounts.

11.5.1. The amount of ice an aircraft accumulates depends considerably on the characteristics of that particular aircraft. Therefore, general intensity classifications for reporting icing are given in the "Meteorological Information" section of the Flight Information Handbook (FIH) and are described below.

11.5.1.1. Trace--Ice becomes perceptible. The rate of accumulation is slightly greater than rate of sublimation. It is not hazardous unless encountered for an extended period of time (over one hour) even though de-icing/anti-icing equipment is not used.,

11.5.1.2. Light--The rate of accumulation may create a problem if flight is prolonged in this environment (over one hour). Occasional use of de-icing/anti-icing equipment removes/prevents accumulation. It does not present a problem if the de-icing/anti-icing equipment is used.

11.5.1.3. Moderate--The rate of accumulation is such that even short encounters become potentially hazardous and use of de-icing /anti-icing equipment or diversion is necessary.

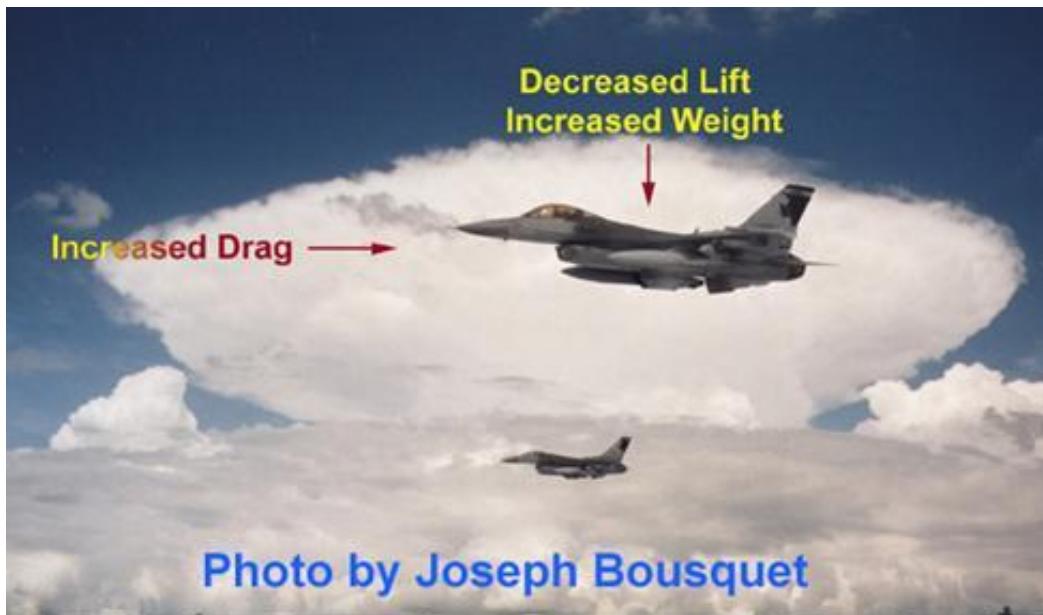
11.5.1.4. Severe--The rate of accumulation is such that de-icing/anti-icing equipment fails to reduce or control the hazard. Immediate diversion is necessary.

11.6. Icing Dangers.

11.6.1. The relatively thick wings, canopies, and other features of conventional aircraft have a smaller collection potential than those of the trimmer and faster turbojet aircraft. However, the actual hazard of icing for conventional aircraft tends to be greater than for jets because of less aerodynamic heating at lower airspeed. Conventional aircraft are subjected to icing conditions over longer periods and operate at altitudes more conducive to icing. Ice accumulations on wing and tail surfaces disrupt the air flow around these airfoils. This results in a loss of lift, an increase in drag, and causes higher than normal stall speeds ([Figure 11.4](#)). The weight of the ice deposit presents less danger, but may become important when too much lift and thrust are lost. Experiments have shown that a $\frac{1}{2}$ inch ice deposit on the leading edge of airfoils on some aircraft reduce their lift by as much as 50 percent and increases drag

on the aircraft by the same amount, which greatly increases the stall speed. The serious consequences of these effects are obvious. Remember that $\frac{1}{2}$ inch or more of ice can accumulate in a minute or two.

Figure 11.4. Effects of Icing are Cumulative Causing Stall Speed to Increase.



11.6.2. Ice accumulation on the propeller hub and blades reduces the propeller's efficiency, which reduces thrust. Increased power settings consume more fuel and may fail to produce sufficient thrust to maintain altitude. An even greater hazard is the vibration of the propeller, caused by the uneven distribution of ice on the blades. A propeller is very delicately balanced, and even a small amount of ice creates an imbalance. The resulting vibration places dangerous stress on the engine mounts as well as the propeller itself. Propellers with low RPM are more susceptible to icing than those with high RPM. Ice usually forms faster on the propeller's hub because the blade's differential velocity causes a temperature increase from the hub to the propeller tip.

11.6.3. Icing of the pitot tube (Figure 11.5) and static pressure ports is dangerous because it causes inaccurate indications on the altimeter, airspeed, and VSI. When icing is observed on the aircraft, remember that the pitot tubes accumulate ice as fast as or faster than other areas of the aircraft.

11.6.4. The principal danger of ice accumulating on the aircraft's radio antenna is the probable loss of radio communication. Antennas are usually one of the first items on an aircraft to collect ice. Other parts of the aircraft will also begin to accumulate ice if the antennas start icing up. Ultimately, aircrews lose their ability to request altitude or course changes to get out of the icing zone.

Figure 11.5. Pitot Tube Icing.



11.6.5. Ice or frost formation on an aircraft's windshield is most hazardous during takeoffs and landings. Small frost particles on the windshield prior to takeoff may act as sublimation nuclei during takeoff and reduce visibility to near zero. On approach, windshield icing may prevent visual contact with the runway. In large helicopters, windshield icing is a good indication that main rotor head and rotor blade icing is well underway. Reciprocating engines experience icing on air scoops, scoop inlets (ducts), carburetor inlet screens and other induction system protuberances. All surfaces of the engine exposed to water droplets may collect ice.

11.7. Helicopter Icing.

11.7.1. Icing on rotary wing aircraft is related to those involving wings and propellers. Rotor icing is slightly different from propeller icing due to the rotors' lower rotational speed. Ice accumulation on rotor blades differs from the fixed wings of conventional aircraft due to the smaller scale of the helicopter wing, the variation of airspeed with rotor blade span, the cyclic pitch change, and the cyclic variation of airspeed at any given point on the blade in forward flight. Ice formation on the helicopter main rotor system or anti-torque rotor system may produce serious vibration, loss of efficiency or control, and can significantly deteriorate the available RPM to a level where safe landing cannot be assured. Although the slow forward speed of the helicopter reduces ice build-up on the fuselage, the rotational speed of main and tail rotor blades produces a rapid growth rate on certain surface areas. Ice accumulation on the swash plates, push-pull rods, bell cranks, hinges, scissors assemblies, and other mechanisms of the main rotor head assembly interferes with collective and cyclic inputs.

11.7.2. Several factors tend to reduce ice accretion on the main rotor blades, such as the centrifugal force of rotation, blade flexing during rotation, the slow rotational speed of the blades near the rotor head, and the fast rotational speed near the blade tips. However, in a hover, a 3/16 inch coating of ice is sufficient to prevent some helicopters from maintaining flight. A critical icing hazard can, therefore, form rapidly on the center two-thirds of the main

rotor blades. The uneven accretion or asymmetrical shedding of ice produces severe rotor vibration. Ice accumulation on either the antitorque rotor head assembly or blades produces the same hazards as those associated with the main rotor. The centrifugal force of rotation and the blade angle of incidence relative to the clouds help to reduce ice build-up on the tail rotor blades, but the shedding of ice from the blades may result in structural damage or FOD to the fuselage, rotors or engines, and injury to ground personnel. This particular hazard appears to be more threatening to large, tandem rotor aircraft.

11.7.3. Ice accumulation on the engine and transmission air intake screens is more rapid than on the rotor systems. This results in inadequate cooling of the engine and transmission. On some helicopters, a loss of manifold pressure concurrently with air intake screen icing may force an immediate landing. Freezing water passing through the screens also coats control cables and may produce limited throttle movement and other control problems.

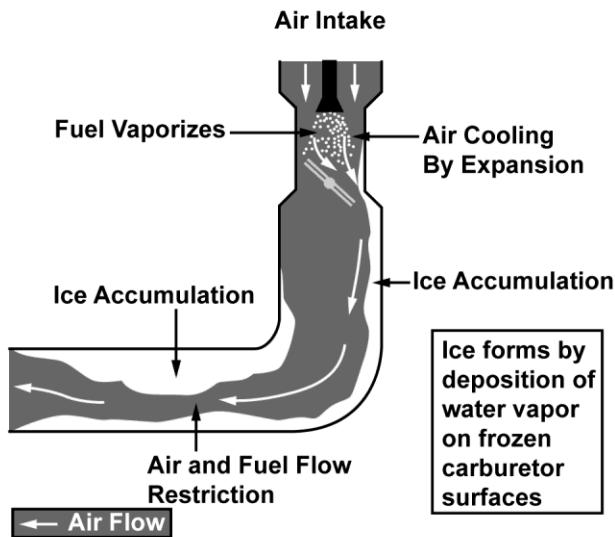
11.8. Engine Icing.

11.8.1. In addition to the hazards created by structural icing, aircraft are frequently subjected to engine icing. The affected components supply the engine with the proper fuel and air mixture for efficient combustion. Induction icing occurs under a wide range of weather conditions and is most common in the air induction system but may also be found in the fuel system. Carburetor icing in carburetor equipped piston engines is actually a combination of the two.

11.9. Carburetor Icing.

11.9.1. Carburetor icing is treacherous. It frequently causes complete engine failure. It may form under conditions in which structural ice could not possibly form. If the air drawn into the carburetor has a high relative humidity, ice can form inside the carburetor in cloudless skies with temperatures as high as 22°C (72°F). It sometimes forms with outside air temperatures as low as - 10°C (14°F). Carburetor ice forms during fuel vaporization, combined with the air expanding as it passes through the carburetor. Temperature drop in the carburetor can be as much as 40°C but is usually 20°C or less. With enough available moisture, ice will form in the carburetor passages ([Figure 11.6](#)) if the temperature inside the carburetor cools down to 0°C or below. Ice may form at the discharge nozzle, in the Venturi, on or around the butterfly valve, or in the passages from the carburetor to the engine.

Figure 11.6. Carburetor Icing.



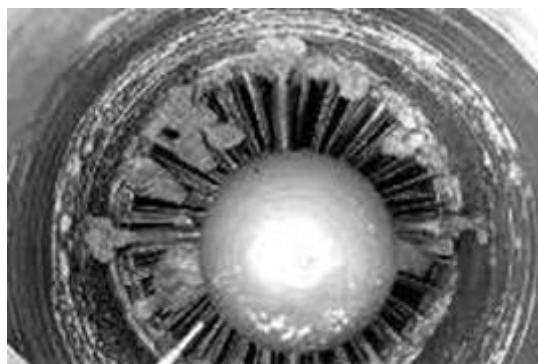
11.9.2. The carburetor heater is an anti-icing device which heats the air before it reaches the carburetor, melting any ice or snow entering the intake, and keeping the mixture above the freezing point. The heater usually prevents icing, but it cannot always clear out ice already formed. Since carburetor heating adversely affects aircraft performance, use it only as specified in your flight manual. The fuel absorbs considerable amounts of water when the humidity is high. Occasionally, enough water is absorbed to create icing in the fuel system when the fuel temperature is at or below 0°C.

11.10. Induction Icing.

11.10.1. Ice forms in the induction system when atmospheric conditions are favorable for structural icing (visible liquid moisture and freezing temperatures). Induction icing can form in clear air with a high relative humidity (small temperature/dew point spread) and temperatures anywhere from 22°C (72°F) to -10°C (14°F).

11.10.2. In flights through clouds containing supercooled water droplets, air intake duct icing is similar to wing icing. However, duct icing may occur with clear skies and above freezing temperatures. While taxiing, and on departure, reduced pressures exist in the intake system ([Figure 11.7](#)). This lowers temperatures to the point where condensation or sublimation takes place, resulting in ice formation which decreases the radius of the duct opening and limits air intake.

11.10.3. The temperature change varies considerably with different types of engines. Therefore, if the air temperature is 10°C or less (especially near the freezing point) and the relative humidity is high, the possibility of induction icing definitely exists.

Figure 11.7. Jet Engine Induction Icing.

11.11. Inlet Guide Vane Icing.

11.11.1. Icing occurs when supercooled water droplets in the atmosphere strike the guide vanes and freeze. As ice build-up increases, air flow to the engine decreases, which results in a loss of thrust and eventual engine flameout. Also, ingestion of ice shed ahead of the compressor inlet may cause severe engine damage.

11.12. Weather Conditions for Icing.

11.12.1. Potential icing zones in the atmosphere are mainly a function of temperature and cloud structure. These factors vary with altitude, location, weather pattern, season, and terrain.

11.12.2. Generally, aircraft icing is limited to the atmospheric layer lying between 0°C and -20°C. However, icing has been reported at temperatures colder than -40°C in the upper parts of cumulonimbus and other clouds. The types of icing in cumuliform clouds are associated with the following temperature ranges:

Table 11.1. Temperature Ranges.

0°C to - 10°C	clear
-10°C to - 15°C	mixed, clear, and rime
-15°C to -20°C and colder	rime.

11.12.3. Icing in middle and low level stratiform clouds is confined, on the average, to a layer between 3,000 and 4,000 feet thick. Icing intensity generally ranges from a trace to light, with the maximum values occurring in the cloud's upper portions. Both rime and mixed are found in stratiform clouds. The main hazard lies in the great horizontal extent of these cloud decks. High-level stratiform clouds are composed mostly of ice crystals and give little

icing. The icing zone in cumuliform clouds is smaller horizontally but greater vertically than in stratiform clouds. Icing is more variable in cumuliform clouds because many of the factors conducive to icing depend on the particular cloud's stage of development. Icing intensities may range from a trace in a small cumulus to severe in a large towering cumulus or cumulonimbus. Although icing occurs at all levels above the freezing level in a building cumulus, it is most intense in the upper half of the cloud. Icing in a cumuliform cloud is usually clear or mixed with rime in the upper levels. Aircraft icing rarely occurs in cirrus clouds although some do contain a small portion of water droplets. However, light icing has been reported in the dense, cirrus anvils of cumulonimbus, where updrafts maintain considerable amounts of water at rather low temperatures.

11.12.4. Of all icing conditions reported, 85 percent occur in the vicinity of fronts. This icing may be in relatively warm air above the frontal surface or in the cold air beneath (**Figures 11.8 and 11.9**). For significant icing to occur above the frontal surface, the warm air must be lifted and cooled to saturation at temperatures below freezing, making it contain supercooled water. If the warm air is unstable, icing may be sporadic; if it is stable, icing may be continuous over an extended area. Icing may form in this manner over either a warm or a shallow cold frontal surface. A line of showers or thunderstorms along a surface cold front may produce icing, but only in a comparatively narrow band along the front (**Figure 11.10**). Icing below a frontal surface outside of clouds occurs most often in freezing rain or drizzle. Precipitation forms in the relatively warm air above the frontal surface at temperatures above freezing. It falls into the subfreezing air below the front, supercools and freezes on impact with the aircraft. Freezing drizzle and rain occur with both warm and shallow cold fronts. Icing in freezing precipitation is especially hazardous since it often extends horizontally over a broad area and downward to the surface.

Figure 11.8. Cold Front Icing.

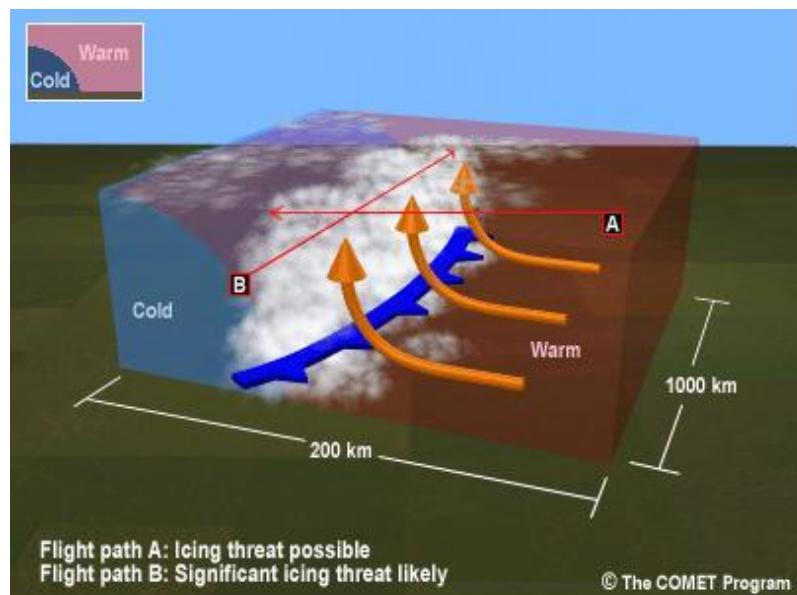
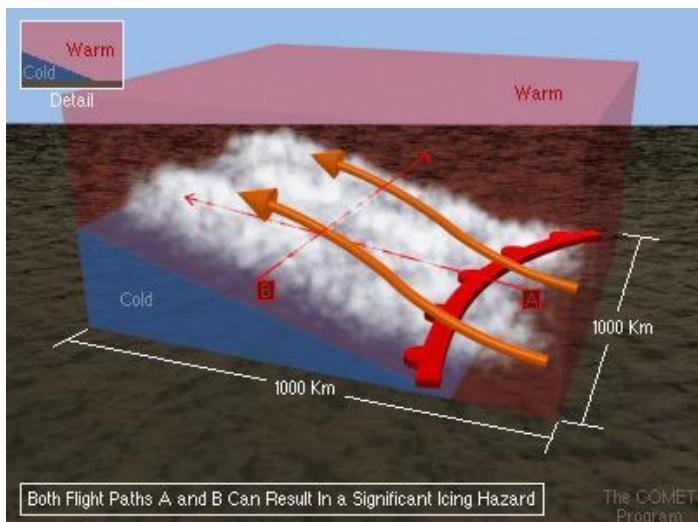
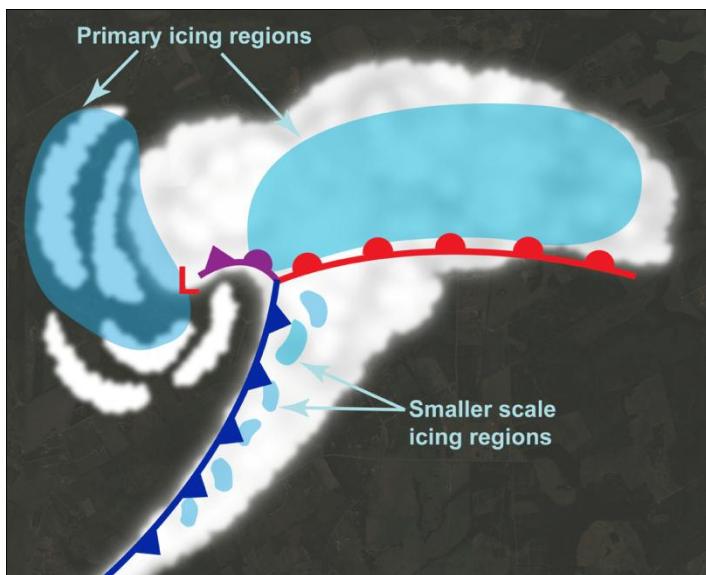


Figure 11.9. Warm Front Icing.**Figure 11.10. Primary Icing Regions.**

11.12.5. Icing may occur during any season of the year, but in temperate climates, such as in most of the United States, it is most frequent in winter. The freezing level is nearer to the ground in winter than in summer, leaving a smaller low level layer of airspace free of icing conditions. Frontal activity is also more frequent in winter and the resulting cloud systems more extensive. Regions at higher latitudes, such as Canada and Alaska, generally have the most severe icing conditions in spring and fall. In winter, the polar regions are normally too cold to contain heavy concentrations of moisture necessary for icing, and most cloud systems are stratiform and composed of ice crystals. Icing is more likely and more severe in mountainous regions than over other terrain. Mountain ranges cause upward air motions on their windward side. These vertical currents support large water droplets normally falling as rain over level terrain. The movement of a frontal system across a mountain range combines the normal frontal lift with the mountains upslope effect to create extremely hazardous icing

zones. The most severe icing occurs above the crests and on the ridges' windward side. This zone usually extends to about 5,000 feet above the mountain tops but can extend much higher if cumuliform clouds develop.

11.12.6. **Aircrew Notes.**

11.12.6.1. *Always be prepared to avoid or escape icing. The following procedures will help reduce icing effects on your aircraft:*

11.12.6.2. *Remove all ice and snow from the aircraft before takeoff.*

11.12.6.3. *Use anti-ice and de-ice equipment.*

11.12.6.4. *Avoid clouds when the temperature is between 0oC and -20oC.*

11.12.6.5. *If icing is encountered, climb or descend to an altitude where the temperature is warmer than 0oC or colder than -20oC.*

11.12.6.6. *Give PIREPs when encountering icing or if it is forecast and not encountered.*

Chapter 12

VISIBILITY AND CEILINGS

12.1. Introduction. Historically, low ceilings and poor visibilities have contributed to many aircraft accidents. Fog, heavy snow, heavy rain, blowing sand, and blowing dust all restrict visibility and can contribute to low ceilings. Adverse weather conditions causing widespread low ceilings and visibilities can restrict flying operations for days. Since ceiling and visibility is so important to operational flying, it's imperative that a pilot understand the strict meanings of the two terms. There are many different kinds of "visibility": slant, sector, and prevailing visibility. You also need to know how a ceiling is determined and what constitutes a "scattered" versus a "broken" deck of clouds. This chapter explains the concepts of ceiling and visibility and their impacts upon operational flying.

12.1.1. Visibility is the horizontal distance determined by human or instrument evaluations measuring the opacity or translucence of the atmosphere. By day, manual visibility is the greatest distance selected objects are seen and identified by unaided eyes. At night, manual visibility is the greatest distance at which unfocused lights of moderate intensity (about 2.5 candlepower) can be seen and identified.

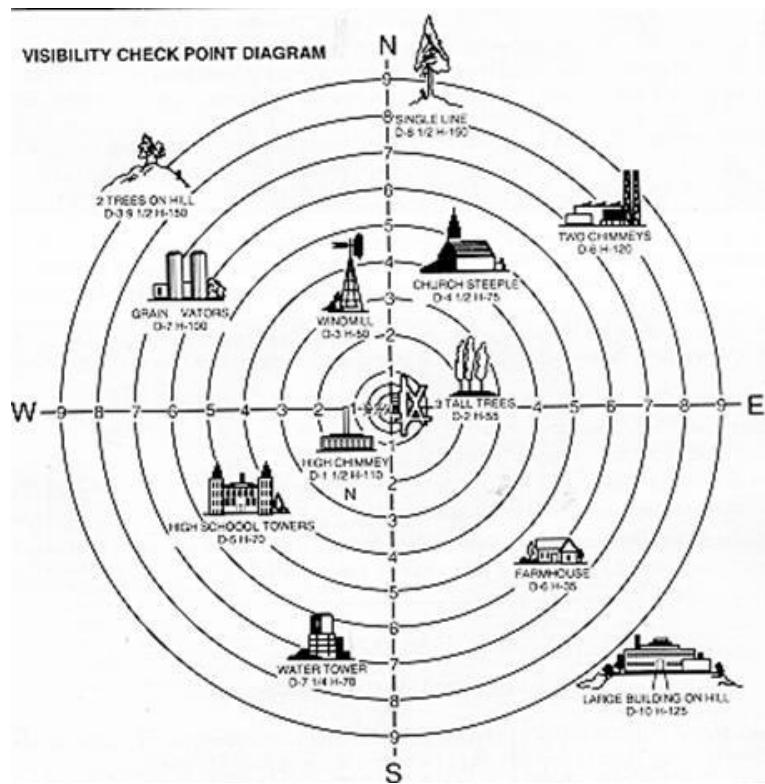
12.2. Prevailing Visibility.

12.2.1. Prevailing visibility is the greatest horizontal visibility observed throughout at least half of the horizon circle and is considered representative of conditions 6 feet above the ground at the observation point. It need not be continuous throughout 180 consecutive degrees. Prevailing visibility determines whether flights are conducted under VFR or IFR. Also, circling approaches must use prevailing visibility. Prevailing visibility is the only forecast visibility value and is observed and reported by the supporting weather organization.

Figure 12.1 is an example of a visibility check point diagram used by weather technicians to evaluate prevailing visibility manually or when backing up the automated observation. Air Traffic Controllers have a similar visibility check point diagram in the tower. At times the prevailing visibility from the tower vantage point may differ significantly from the weather observer's manual, surface-based visibility. To alert aviators to this condition, the tower controller determines the tower prevailing visibility.

12.2.2. Countries other than the US and Canada, and US overseas bases, may use different criteria in determining prevailing visibility. Some countries use the worst sector visibility value as the prevailing visibility value. If this is the practice of the host country and their weather observations are the official airfield observations, you must operate under their criteria. If US military observers are transmitting official observations at that airfield, then the US visibility definitions are used. In addition to different reporting criteria, different units of measure may also be used. Overseas observations report visibility in meters while stateside reports use statute miles. In either case, if the visibility falls halfway between two reportable values, the value is rounded down for flight safety reasons.

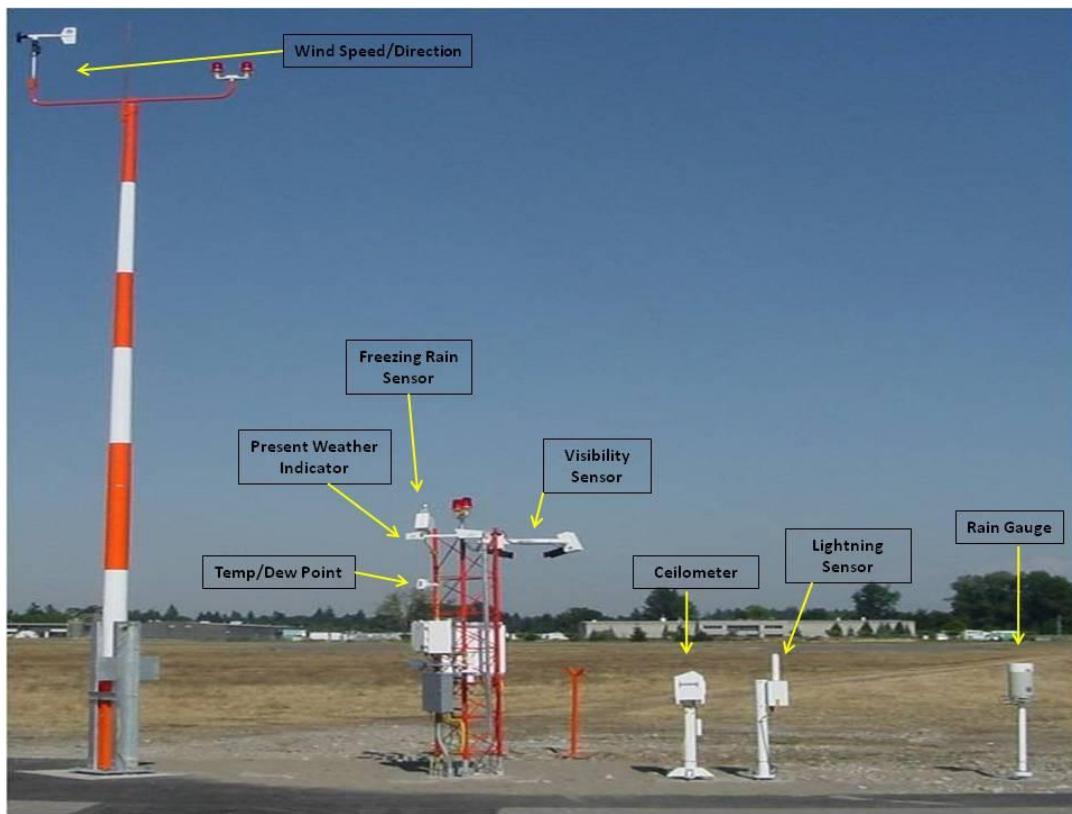
Figure 12.1. Observer Visibility Diagram.



12.3. Automated Meteorological Observing Systems (AMOS).

12.3.1. An AMOS refers to any certified Air Force owned and Air Force or Army accredited observing system (i.e., AN/FMQ-19, AN/TMQ-53, Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS) with the capability to automatically collect and disseminate observations, or other AFWA/MAJCOM-certified automated systems) that has reached initial operating capability. In an automated observation, the visibility algorithm calculates average visibility using spatial time averaging of sensor data. Visibility will be an evaluation of sensor data gathered during the 10-minute period ending at the actual time of the observation. The sensor is usually located near the touchdown zone of the primary designated runway. **Figure 12.2** displays a typical automated observing site layout.

Figure 12.2. Typical AMOS Combined Sensor Group.

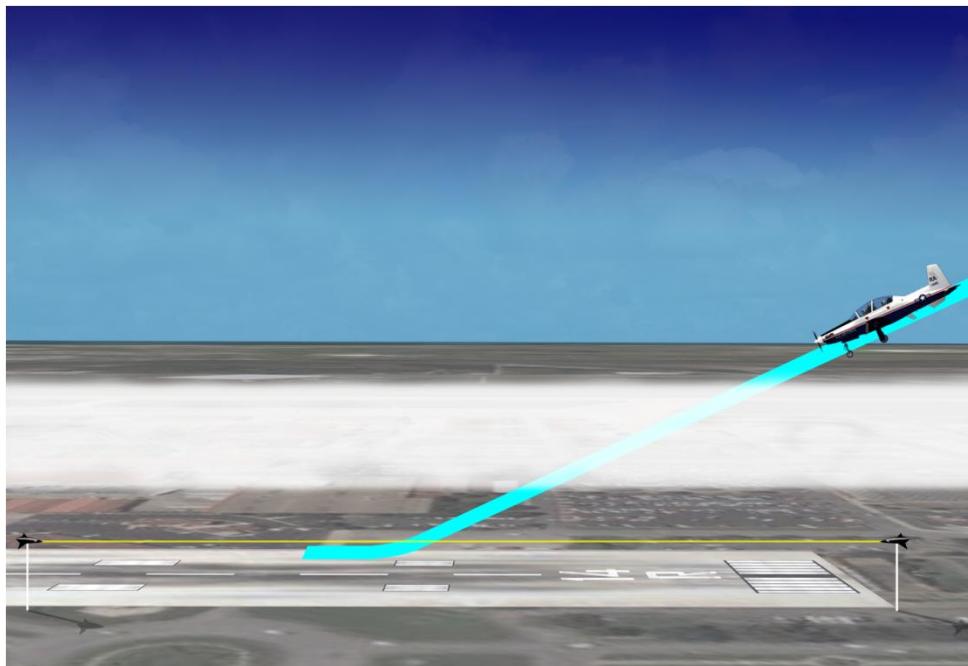


12.4. Visibilities Definitions.

12.4.1. **Sector visibility** is the visibility within a specified 45 degree arc (NE, SE, SW, NW, etc.) of the horizon circle having essentially uniform visibility. Sector visibility may be reported when manually-derived visibility is not uniform in all horizontal directions. Sector visibility is not reported at automated stations.

12.4.2. **Slant range** visibility is the angle from which you view an airfield or target from an “above ground” vantage point. Slant range visibility is often lower than the surface prevailing visibility. Weather technicians observe visibility horizontally, while airborne aircrews view the ground from their aircraft at an angle. Slant range visibility is not reported by a weather observer. See [Figure 12.3](#) for examples of flight visibility and slant range visibility.

Figure 12.3. Slant Range Visibility: Distance Seen through an Angle of the Atmosphere.



12.4.3. Runway Visual Range (RVR) is an instrumentally derived value that represents the horizontal distance that a pilot can see down the runway. The maximum distance in the direction of takeoff or landing at which the runway, or specified lights or markers delineating it, can be seen from a position above a specified point on its center line at a height corresponding to the average eye level of pilots at touch-down. RVR is reported in either feet or meters as determined by country or FLIP RVR minimums.

12.5. Visibility Differences.

12.5.1. Aircrews should keep in mind that the prevailing visibility, slant range visibility, and RVR will differ from each other on many occasions. At airfields equipped with AMOSs, visibility and RVR are measured by the same sensor but determined by separate algorithms. At manual observing stations the weather observer's ability to take representative observations is restricted at some airfields because one or both ends of the runway are not visible from the observing site or buildings or other obstructions may restrict the observer's view. The tower controller assists the weather observer by taking a visibility observation when the two observing locations significantly differ in their visibility values. Your local weather station and tower controllers keep visibility charts which they use to assess visibility values.

12.5.2. Although the day observed horizontal visibility may be unrestricted, the pilot's slant range visibility frequently is restricted to less than 7 statute miles (SM). In some cases the slant range visibility can be as little as one-half of the reported horizontal visibility. This frequently happens when looking through fog, smoke, precipitation, dust, and haze because the suspended particles scatter the sun's rays. If a purely visual approach is being attempted with no attention being given to the instruments, glare often results in disguised sink rates and other illusions. Under these conditions, instruments should be cross-checked closely to ensure that optical illusions don't occur. To improve the slant range visibility, it is advisable

to land with the sun to your back. These same problems may exist in a target region due to smoke from burning targets, blowing sand, etc. To help minimize this problem, the weather forecaster can provide sun angle and azimuth for any target location. Slant range visibility is also a problem at night. Generally, a night flier will not see as far as a surface based observer because ground based nighttime visibility markers are easier to see than daytime markers. This is especially true in fog and light rain. Situations vary so you will have to depend on the weather observer, the tower controller, or your own experience.

12.5.3. Vertical visibility is the distance (in hundreds of feet) a weather forecaster can see in an upward direction when the sky is totally obscured. This distance is usually determined by weather instruments, but may be estimated by the observer if the equipment is inoperative. If the sky is partially obscured, no vertical visibility value is reported. If the sky is totally obscured, the vertical visibility is reported with a numerical value in hundreds of feet.

12.6. NVG's and Visibility.

12.6.1. Air-crews using night vision goggles (NVG) are heavily dependent on the percent of moon illumination. Each weather station has the capability of running light programs that calculate the beginning and end of nautical and civil twilight, sunrise and sunset data, and the percent of moon illumination. This information can be calculated for any geographic location and for any length of time (number of days). This information is available for targets and destinations anywhere in the world. Restrictions to normal vision may be detrimental to NVGs as well. Certainly, rain, snow, fog, clouds, smoke, haze, etc., will have some effect. Follow manufacturer's guidance in anticipating the magnitude of reduction in night vision.

12.7. Electro -Optical Data.

12.7.1. Weather forecasters are frequently tasked to provide acquisition or lock-on ranges for state-of-the-art weapons systems. Infrared and TV guided systems are affected by the same weather conditions that affect NVG's and normal vision. Weather effects on electro-optic sensors are based on atmospheric effects on the propagation of electromagnetic energy. Accurate information is based upon the actual contrast between targets and backgrounds both in the visible and infrared spectrums.

12.7.2. When the aircrew desires E-O information, it's necessary for the aircrew to provide the forecaster with as much information about the target as possible. This information includes, but may not be limited to: time over target (TOT), run-in heading, flight level, target size (height, width, and length), target composition (concrete, steel, glass, etc.), heated/not, type of weapon being used, and method of launching and steering the weapon. With this information, the weather forecaster should be able to provide the acquisition and lock-on range, sun elevation and azimuth at time over target, length of shadows around target, "what's hot, what's not" in the target picture, percent moon illumination, probability of line-of-sight, and target area weather forecast.

12.8. Cloud Ceilings.

12.8.1. The ceiling is lowest layer above the Earth's surface reported as broken or overcast, or the vertical visibility into a surface-based total obscuration. A ceiling can be composed of interconnected layers or composed of a layer with numerous detached elements.

12.9. Summation Principle.

12.9.1. In the US and Canada, the ceiling is determined by using the summation principle. The summation principle states that the sky cover at any level is equal to the summation of the sky cover of the lowest layer plus the additional sky cover present at all successively higher layers up to and including the layer being considered. A layer is clouds or obscuring phenomena whose bases are approximately at the same level. If there is $\frac{1}{2}$ of the sky covered at 12,000 ft, and another $\frac{1}{4}$ of the sky covered at 5,000 ft, the sky above the 5,000 ft layer is assumed to also have clouds at 12,000 ft. This would then result in $\frac{3}{4}$ of the sky covered with cloud and a BKN ceiling at 12,000 ft. The AMOS derives sky condition instrumentally by detecting the frequency and height of clouds passing over the sensor (ceilometer) over a period of 30 minutes. An algorithm then processes the data from the sensor into data on layers, amounts, and heights of clouds.

12.10. METAR Cloud Cover.

12.10.1. In METAR code, the following terms are used to reflect the degree of cloudiness in sky condition evaluations.

12.10.1.1. CLR--Means "Clear" or the absence of layers of clouds or other obscuring phenomena. Transmitted as "CLR" at manual weather stations when there are no clouds, and at automated stations when no clouds are at or below 12,000 feet or 25,000 feet when the 25K algorithm is used. **NOTE:** At civilian locations, SKC shall be used at manual locations when no layers are reported.

12.10.1.2. FEW--Means "Few" or greater than 0/8 up to 2/8 cloud coverage.

12.10.1.3. SCT--Means "Scattered" or 3/8 to 4/8 cloud coverage.

12.10.1.4. BKN--Means "Broken" or 5/8 to 7/8 cloud coverage.

12.10.1.5. OVC--Means "Overcast" or the sky is totally covered with clouds (8/8).

12.10.2. In METAR code the lowest cloud layer prefixed with the contraction "BKN" or "OVC" designates the ceiling. "VV" will be encoded when there is a ground based obstruction completely blocking the sky.

12.10.3. In METAR a partial surface obscuration is reported as "FEW000, SCT000, or BKN000." At manual observing airfields the partial obscuration may be clarified in remarks such as "FG FEW000," "FU SCT000," or "DU BKN000." Automated sensors are limited in their ability to detect partial obscurations.

12.11. Foreign Ceilings.

12.11.1. As with visibility, some countries have established different criteria regarding the amount of sky cover required to constitute a ceiling. When flying in a foreign country using their weather conditions, aircrews must ask the local weather office to determine exactly what ceiling criteria is used.

12.12. Surface Obscuration.

12.12.1. To be classified as obscuring phenomena, precipitation, smoke, haze, fog, or other visibility restricting conditions must extend upward from the surface. An obscured sky occurs when the sky is totally hidden from an observer on the ground. The ceiling will be reported as the vertical visibility from the ground upward into the obstruction. For example,

when the sky is totally hidden by fog and the ground observer can see upward for 600 feet, the ceiling will be reported as "VV006".

12.12.2. It is important to note the difference between the obstruction ceiling of 600 feet and a cloud ceiling of 600 feet. With a low cloud ceiling, the aircrew normally will see the ground and the runway after descending to a level below the cloud base. However, with an obscured ceiling, the obscuring phenomenon restricts visibility between the reported altitude and the ground, and the slant range visibility is greatly reduced. Aircrews will not normally be able to see the runway or approach lights clearly, even after penetrating the level of the reported obstruction ceiling.

12.12.3. With a partially obscured sky, clouds or part of the sky can be seen above the obscuring phenomenon. A partial obstruction does not define a ceiling. However, a cloud layer above a partial obstruction may constitute a ceiling. Partially obscured skies also present a slant range visibility problem for aircrews on approach, but usually to a lesser degree than a total obstruction. From directly overhead, the aircrew may be able to see the runway clearly, whereas the slant range visibility on final approach could be poor.

12.13. Fog.

12.13.1. Fog is one of the most common and persistent weather hazards encountered in aviation, and the most frequent cause of prevailing visibility less than three miles. Since fog occurs at the surface, it is primarily a hazard during takeoff and landing. Above fog, flight visibility is generally good.

12.13.2. Fog is a surface-based cloud composed of either water droplets or ice crystals. Since fog normally forms in very stable air, there are few collisions between the droplets or ice crystals. The droplets remain extremely small, so before significantly reducing visibility, a large number of suspended droplets must be present.

12.13.2.1. Ideal atmospheric conditions for fog formation are:

12.13.2.2. Small temperature dew point spread (5°F or less)

12.13.2.3. Abundant condensation nuclei

12.13.2.4. Light surface wind

12.13.2.5. Cooling land surfaces, warmer air above (i.e, air is cooled from below)

12.14. Radiation Fog.

12.14.1. Radiation fog is a relatively shallow fog resulting from radiational cooling of the ground on clear, calm nights. The ground cools the air in contact with it to the dew point temperature producing fog. Ground fog ([Figure 12.4](#)) is a form of radiation fog. It forms almost exclusively at night or in the early morning and usually disappears a few hours after sunrise. Radiation fog is very shallow when there is no wind. Light wind, usually less than 5 kts, produces a slight mixing of the air. This tends to deepen the fog by spreading the cooled air through a deeper layer. Stronger winds disperse the fog or mix the air through a still deeper layer with stratus forming at the top of the mixing layer.

Figure 12.4. Ground Fog.

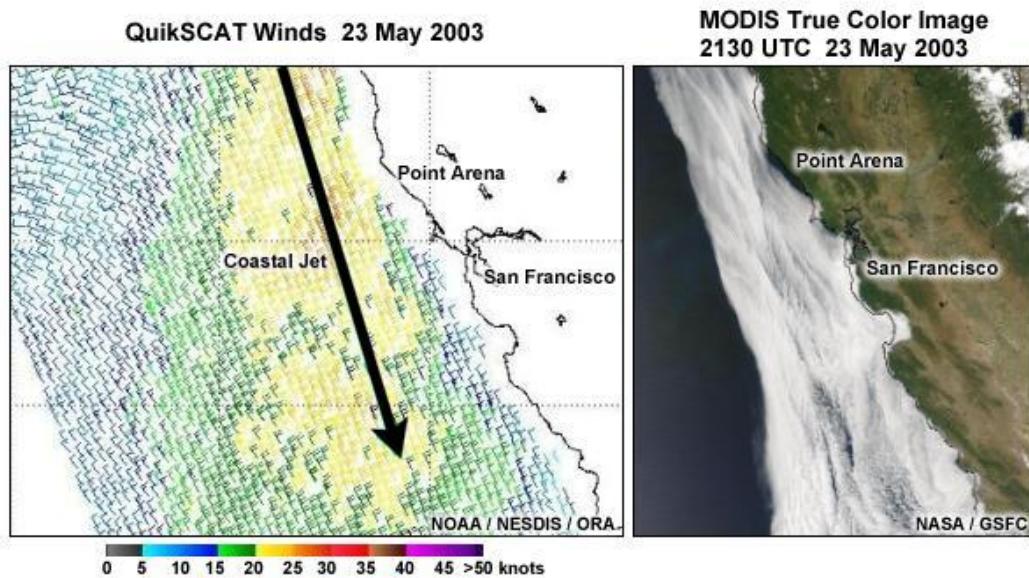


12.15. Advection Fog.

12.15.1. Common along coastal areas, advection fog forms when moist air moves over colder ground or water. When it forms over a large body of water, it is called sea fog. Advection fog deepens with increasing wind speed (ideally between 3-9kts). Winds stronger than 10 kts usually lift the fog into a layer of low stratus or stratocumulus. Advection fog can stay over water for weeks moving over land late in the day and moving over the water the next morning.

12.15.2. The west coast of the United States is quite vulnerable to advection fog and stratus. This common fog forms offshore, largely as a result of upwelling--very cold water rising from the ocean depths to the surface ([Figure 12.5](#)). The resulting cold air is carried inland by the wind as stratus or fog. Advection fog over the southeastern United States and along the Gulf Coast results from moist tropical air moving over cold ground, for this reason, it is more frequent in winter than summer. Airfields located downwind from cold, freshwater lakes can experience frequent bouts with advection fog during the summer months.

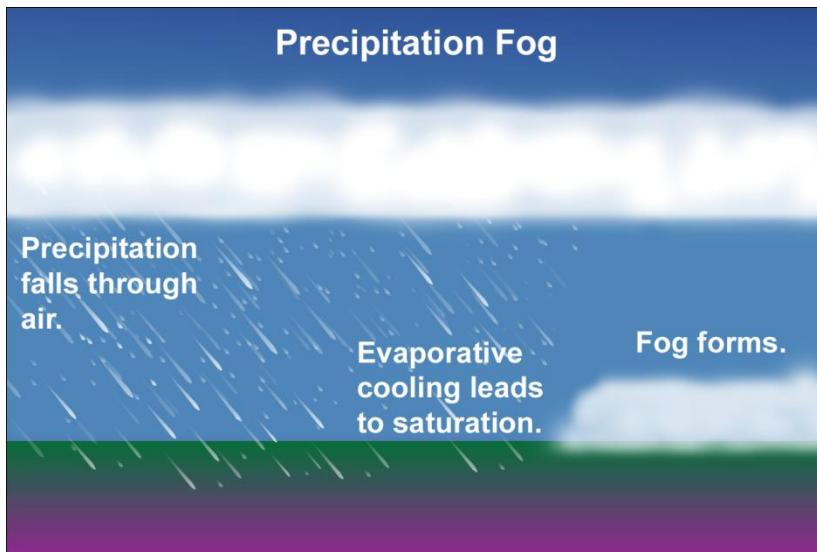
Figure 12.5. Stratus and Fog off the West Coast of the United States.



12.16. Precipitation Induced Fog.

12.16.1. When relatively warm rain or drizzle falls through cool, unsaturated air, evaporation from the precipitation cools the air further and saturates it, often resulting in fog formation ([Figure 12.6](#)). Precipitation induced fog can become quite dense and extend over large areas. It may form rapidly and continue for an extended period of time. This is often associated with approaching frontal systems and may be referred to as frontal fog. Frontal fog forms from the evaporation of warm precipitation as it falls into drier, colder air in a frontal system. Pre-frontal, or warm-frontal, fog is the most common and often occurs over widespread areas ahead of warm fronts. Whenever the rain temperature exceeds the wet-bulb temperature of the cold air, fog or stratus form. Fog usually dissipates after frontal passage due to increasing temperatures and surface winds. Post-frontal, or cold-frontal, fog occurs less frequently than warm-frontal fog. Slow-moving, shallow-sloped cold fronts, characterized by vertically decreasing winds through the frontal surface, produce persistent, widespread areas of fog and stratus clouds 150 to 250 miles behind the surface frontal position.

Figure 12.6. Precipitation-Induced Fog.



12.17. Upslope Fog.

12.17.1. Moist, stable air that cools as it moves up sloping terrain forms upslope fog ([Figure 12.7](#)). It is often quite dense and extends to high elevations. This type occurs when sloping terrain lifts air, cooling it adiabatically to its dew point and saturation. Upslope fog may be viewed as either a stratus cloud or fog, depending on the point of reference of the observer. Upslope fog generally forms at the higher elevations and builds downward into valleys. This fog can maintain itself at higher wind speeds because of increased lift and adiabatic cooling. Upslope winds more than 10 to 12 knots usually result in stratus rather than fog. The east slope of the Rocky Mountains is a prime location for this type of fog.

Figure 12.7. Upslope Fog.



12.18. Freezing Fog.

12.18.1. Freezing fog occurs when the water droplets that the fog is composed of are "supercooled". Supercooled water droplets remain in the liquid state until they come into contact with a surface upon which they can freeze. As a result, any object the freezing fog comes into contact with will become coated with ice. The same thing happens with freezing rain or drizzle.. Conditions favorable for formation are the same as for radiation fog except that the temperature is usually much colder than 32°F. Freezing fog frequently forms very rapidly in the exhaust gasses of aircraft engines. If there is little or no wind, it is possible for an aircraft to generate enough freezing fog during takeoff or landing to cover the runway, halting further aircraft operations. Ice fog may persist for periods which vary from a few minutes to several days.

12.19. Ice Fog.

12.19.1. Ice fog occurs when the temperature is below -30°C (-22°F) and water vapor deposits as ice crystals. This type of fog forms when the air temperature is well below freezing and is composed entirely of tiny ice crystals that are suspended in the air. Ice fog will only be witnessed in cold Arctic / Polar air.

12.20. Stratus.

12.20.1. Like fog, stratus clouds are composed of extremely small water droplets or ice crystals suspended in the air. Stratus differs from fog due to its location above the ground and not reducing the horizontal visibility at the surface. As a portion of the sun's energy warms the Earth's surface, the fog lifts into an elevated low stratus layer. Because of the reduction in upward visibility, the observer on the ground recognizes the condition as stratus. Both slant range visibility and flight visibility may approach zero in stratus, depending on the cloud's density and depth.

12.21. Haze.

12.21.1. Haze is a concentration of suspended salt,dust or pollutant particles. It occurs in stable air and is usually only a few thousand feet thick, but may sometimes extend as high as 15,000 feet. A haze layer often has a well defined top and good horizontal visibility above. However, downward visibility from above a haze layer is poor, especially on a slant. Visibility in haze varies greatly, depending upon whether the aircrew is facing into or away from the sun. Landing or taking off into the sun is often hazardous if haze is present.

12.22. Smoke and Smog.

12.22.1. Smoke concentrations form primarily in industrial areas in stable air. Smog is when smoke and fog occur together. Smog also causes very poor visibility ([Figure 12.8](#)). Large scale air stagnation is required for smog formation. Some geographic areas chronically suffer from reduced visibilities due to smog and smoke. The aerosols cannot disperse through the atmosphere because an inversion prevents smog dissipation. Severe smog conditions can reduce prevailing visibilities to less than one mile.

Figure 12.8. Haze and Smog.



12.23. Blowing Dust and Sand.

12.23.1. In areas with loose, dry soil, blowing dust occurs in strong winds and unstable air ([Figure 12.9](#)). The wind and vertical currents may spread the dust over a wide area and often lift it to great heights. Very small dust particles may remain suspended for several days once airborne. Both blowing dust and suspended dust reduce surface, flight, and slant visibility ranges to very low values. Blowing sand is more local than blowing dust. It occurs in deserts where the wind lifts loose sand and blows it in clouds or sheets. In its extreme form, blowing sand may become a sandstorm and restrict visibility to near zero ([Figure 12.10](#)).

Figure 12.9. Satellite shot of Blowing Dust.

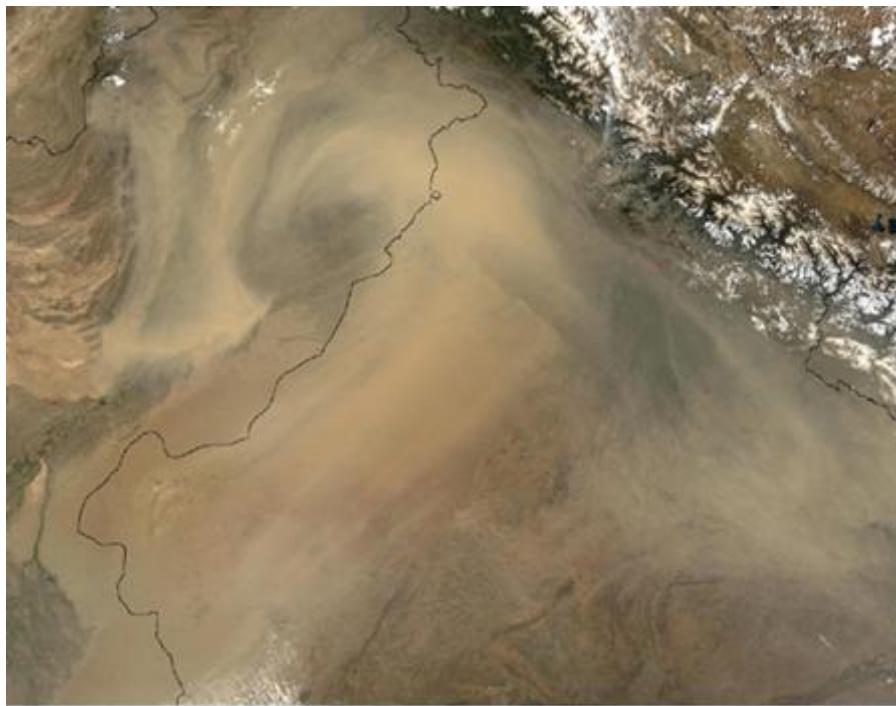


Figure 12.10. Blowing Sand.



12.23.2. Helicopter induced “brownout” is a dangerous phenomena experienced by many helicopters when making landing approaches or takeoffs in dusty environments, whereby sand or dust particles become swept up in the rotor outwash and obscure the pilot’s vision of the terrain. This is particularly dangerous because the pilot needs visual cues from their surroundings in order to make a safe landing or takeoff. Flying is not recommended when the environment is conducive to brownout conditions

12.24. Snow/Blowing Snow.

12.24.1. Falling snow can reduce visibilities dependent upon the intensity. The extend of the degradation depends on if there are any other restrictors occurring at the same time. General estimations are that light snow showers will reduce visibilities to greater than $\frac{1}{2}$ statute mile. It is common that visibilities will reduced to greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ statute miles but less than $\frac{1}{2}$ statute miles, while heavy snowfall can reduce visibilities below $\frac{1}{4}$ statute mile. Visibilities may be reduced further if other obscurations such as fog occur with the snowfall.

12.24.2. Loose snow becomes blowing snow at wind speeds of 10 to 15 knots or greater. Although any blowing snow restricts visibility, the amount of the visibility restriction depends on such factors as terrain, wind speed, snow depth, and composition. Blowing snow is also troublesome. Strong winds keep the snow suspended up to 50 feet and/or reduce visibility at ground level to near zero. When the snow is blowing to great heights, the sky can become partially obscured. Blowing snow, falling snow, and strong winds make for a tricky combination and can reduce visibilities for hours in a heavy snow or lake effect snowshower situation. Ceilings and visibilities can vary quite rapidly in snow situations. Visibility of less than $\frac{1}{4}$ mile is not unusual in light or moderate snow when the winds exceed 25 knots. The composition of the snow and the effects of local terrain are as important as meteorological factors in forecasting visibility reductions caused by blowing snow. Blowing snow is a greater hazard to flying operations in polar regions than in mid-latitudes because the colder snow is dry, fine, and easily lifted. Winds may raise the snow 1,000 feet above the ground and lower visibility. A frequent and sudden increase in surface winds in polar regions may cause the visibility to drop from unlimited to near zero within a few minutes.

12.24.3. Helicopter induced “whiteout” is a dangerous phenomena experienced by many helicopters when making landing approaches or takeoffs in snow or ice covered areas, whereby snow or ice crystals particles become swept up in the rotor outwash and obscure the pilot’s vision of the terrain. There are no shadows, no horizon or clouds and all depth-of-field and orientation are lost. A whiteout situation is severe in that there aren’t any visual references. Flying is not recommended when the environment is conducive to whiteout conditions.

12.25. Drizzle.

12.25.1. Drizzle usually restricts visibility to a greater degree than rain. Drizzle falls in stable air and is usually accompanied by fog. When drizzle changes to light rain, visibility usually improves and the droplet size increases. The droplet size increase means there are fewer droplets per unit area thus improving the visibility.

12.26. Rain.

12.26.1. Visibilities are limited based on precipitation types and intensities. Light rain showers will show a degradation of visibility to 5 statute miles and moderate rain showers to $2\frac{1}{2}$ statute miles. Heavy rain showers can limit visibilities to less than $\frac{1}{2}$ statute mile. Rain will also limit cockpit visibility. When rain streams over the aircraft windshield, freezes on it, or fogs over the inside surface, it greatly reduces the aircrew’s visibility.

Chapter 13

THUNDERSTORMS AND ASSOCIATED HAZARDS

13.1. Introduction. Thunderstorms contain the most severe weather hazards to flight. Many are accompanied by strong winds, severe icing and turbulence, frequent lightning, heavy rain, and hazardous windshear. If all of these are not enough, consider the possibility of large hail, microbursts, and even tornadoes. The latent heat released by a moderate thunderstorm is equivalent to the energy of a 400 kiloton nuclear explosion! This chapter presents hazards a pilot must consider when flying in the vicinity of, or actually entering, a thunderstorm. Being familiar with these factors will help you better understand what is going on both inside and outside the cockpit.

13.1.1. The best advice if thunderstorms are forecast or have already formed is: DON'T FLY IN OR NEAR THEM! Unfortunately, with about 44,000 thunderstorms occurring daily over the surface of the Earth, almost every aircrew can expect to encounter one occasionally. There are flights when you simply cannot avoid flying in the vicinity of thunderstorms, especially when widespread thunderstorms form over large areas. Knowledge of thunderstorm characteristics and the application of tested procedures will help aircrews fly more safely when thunderstorms are present.

13.2. Thunderstorm Information.

13.2.1. The weather forecaster is the best source for obtaining thunderstorm information during the preflight weather briefing. During flight, en-route thunderstorm avoidance can sometimes be provided by the Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC). Many en-route information sources are periodically updated to reflect the latest thunderstorm advisories and warnings in effect. The Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS), Transcribed Weather Broadcast (TWEB), and Hazardous In-flight Advisory Service (HIWAS) are a few such weather sources. Aircraft weather radar can be used to avoid thunderstorms but should not be used to determine thunderstorm intensity. Therefore, it is advisable to obtain weather information from a weather station that has a pilot-to-metro service (PMSV) capability.

13.3. Thunderstorm Formation.

13.3.1. Thunderstorms can form in any weather environment if the right "ingredients" are present. In some tropical regions, thunderstorms occur year round. In the mid-latitudes, they develop most frequently in spring, summer, and fall. Thunderstorms can even form in the Arctic regions during their summer months. **Figure 13.1** shows the average annual number of days with thunderstorms in the United States. Note they are most frequent in the south-central and southeastern states with Florida having the greatest number of thunderstorms. The number of days a thunderstorm occurs varies with the season as shown in **Figure 13.2**.

Figure 13.1. Average Number of Days with Thunderstorms Each Year.

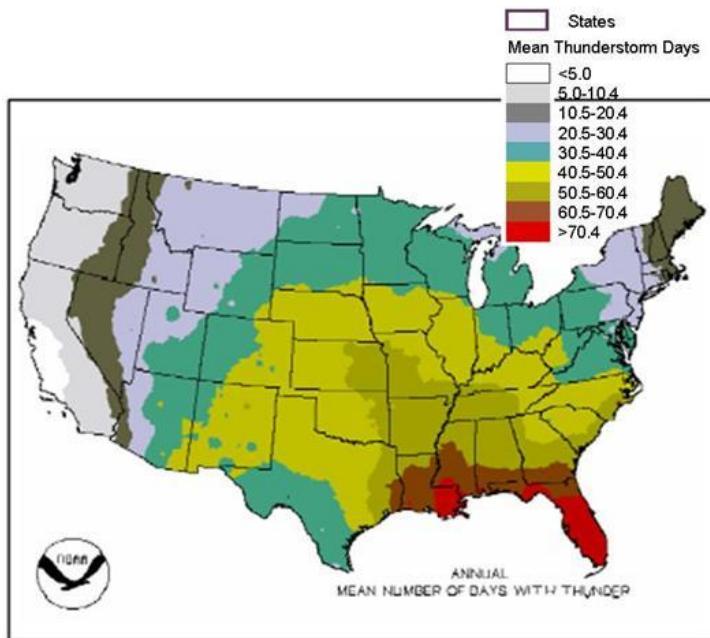
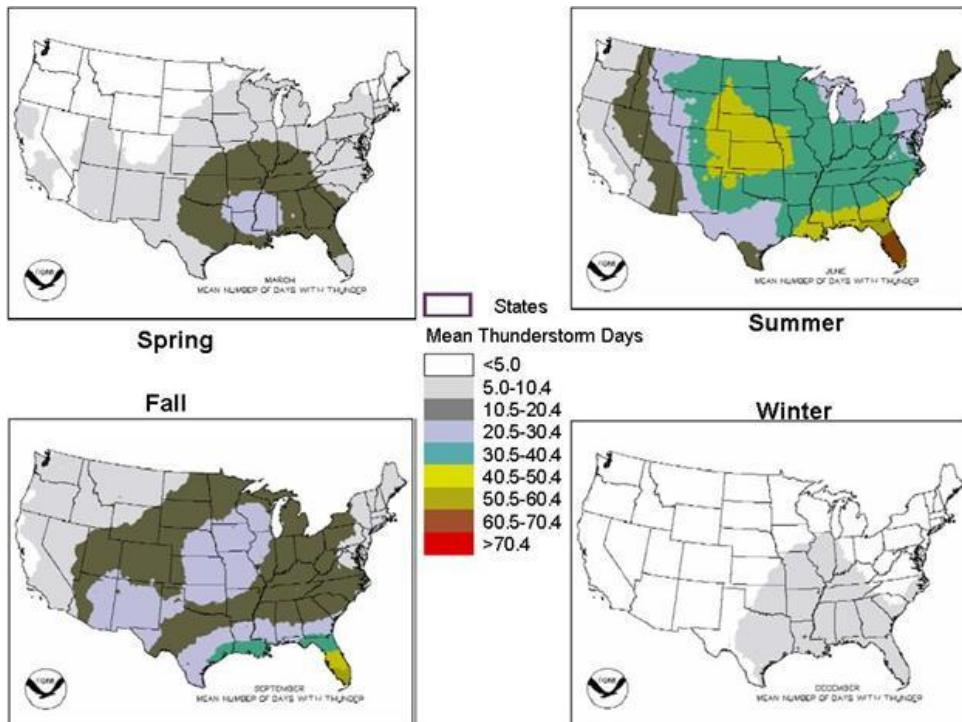


Figure 13.2. Average Number of Days with Thunderstorms Seasonal.



13.3.2. The basic requirements for thunderstorm (cumulonimbus) formation are: moisture, unstable air, and some type of lifting action. Lifted warm air does not always result in thunderstorm activity. Air may be lifted to a point where the moisture condenses and clouds form, but these clouds may not grow significantly unless the air parcel reaches a point where it will continue to rise freely (the level of free convection or LFC). This happens when the

condensing air produces a locally warmer air pocket than its surrounding area. When the warmer air rises on its own, the air has become unstable. The higher the moisture content, the easier the LFC is reached. Once a cloud forms, the released heat caused by the changing state from vapor to liquid tends to make the cloud area warmer than its surrounding air environment. This destabilizes the air. When the rising air is much warmer than its surrounding environment, it quickly forms towering cumulus and eventually cumulonimbus clouds. The degree of vertical cloud growth often indicates the potential severity of the thunderstorm. Rapidly growing towering cumulus clouds indicates very unstable conditions and can develop into severe thunderstorms. As it rises, the warmed unstable air cools but at a slower rate than its surrounding environment. Eventually the air parcel reaches an altitude where it becomes the same temperature as its surroundings. The air parcel slows vertical development reaching an equilibrium level where the air parcel temperature and its surrounding environment temperature are the same. Some type of lifting action is necessary to force warmer air from its lower level to a level where the warmed air will continue to rise freely. Normally, mountainous terrain, fronts, heating from below, or convergence (upward vertical motions associated with air coming together from different directions) provides the necessary lifting action. Once the necessary lifting action allows towering cumulus to form, they'll form repeatedly throughout the thunderstorm life cycle.

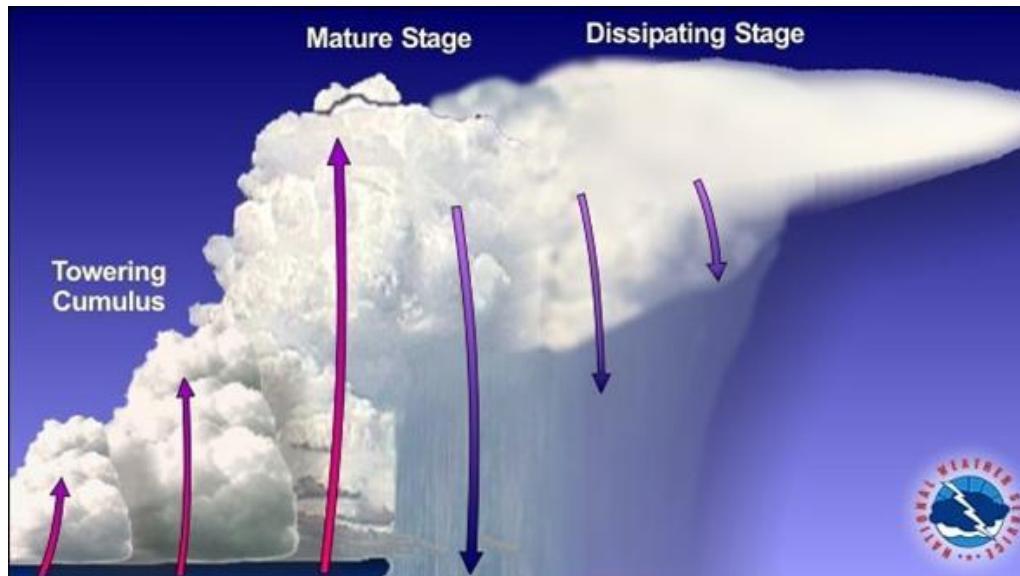
13.4. Thunderstorm Life Cycle.

13.4.1. During its life cycle, a thunderstorm progresses through three stages: cumulus (growth), mature, and dissipating. All thunderstorms go through this life cycle with some progressing through all three stages in an hour or less while other storms can last several hours. Furthermore, a thunderstorm may consist of a cluster of cells each in different stages of the life cycle giving the appearance of a continuous, long-lasting single storm. All thunderstorms start out in the cumulus cloud stage. The main feature of the cumulus stage ([Figure 13.3](#)) is the updraft which may extend from near the surface to several thousand feet above the visible cloud top. In the latter part of this stage, the greatest updraft occurs at higher altitudes and may reach 3,000 feet or more per minute. As the cloud forms, water vapor changes to liquid and/or frozen cloud particles. This releases heat providing energy to the developing cloud. After other forces form the cloud, this continuous heat release process helps the cumulus cloud to rise and grow. During this early period, cloud droplets are very small but grow into raindrops as the cloud builds. In the upper levels, snow and ice particles exist, although in the updraft, raindrops remain liquid to heights far above the freezing level, sometimes reaching 40,000 feet. Since ascending air currents carry or suspend raindrops and ice particles, there is usually no precipitation during this stage.

13.4.2. A cumulus cloud forming into a towering cumulus (TCU) and eventual cumulonimbus (CB) marks the mature stage. The mature stage is characterized by updraft and downdraft development. When updrafts can no longer support the raindrops and ice particles in the cloud, a downdraft develops and precipitation and/or hail begin falling from the cloud base. By this time, the average cell has grown to 25,000 feet, has crossed the freezing level, and has developed lightning. Empirical studies have shown that when a thunderstorm vertically develops above the -20°C isotherm and contains large amounts of graupel in that layer, lightning formation is likely. As rain starts falling, evaporation cools the surrounding air and the air parcel begins to sink. Since it is unstable, the cold, dense air accelerates, forming a downdraft which may reach 2,500 feet per minute ([Figure 13.3](#)). The

downdraft spreads outward near the surface, producing a sharp temperature drop and strong, gusty, surface winds. The leading edge of this wind is called the gust front and often pushes ahead of the thunderstorm by several miles. The gust front is characterized by gusty winds, sharp temperature drops, low level windshear, and turbulence. In the early mature stage, remaining updrafts continue increasing in speed and may exceed 4,500 feet per minute. Updrafts and downdrafts occur near each other creating strong, vertical shear and turbulence. The mature stage marks the maximum intensity of the thunderstorms. If severe weather develops, it will most likely form during this stage.

Figure 13.3. Stages of a Thunderstorm.



13.4.3. Occasionally, severe thunderstorms do not dissipate through the classic mature stage. Instead, strong upper level winds prolong the mature stage and a considerable tilt develops in the updraft/downdraft couplet within the cloud. In this situation, much stronger updrafts and downdrafts may enable the storm to become a supercell. Supercell thunderstorms cause severe weather and should be avoided. Sometimes the optimal combination and orientation of lower atmosphere vertical wind shear, low-level moisture, and high instability allows large Mesoscale Convective Systems (MCSs) to develop. These systems may last 6 to 8 hours or more and typically form at night as the nocturnal low-level jet stream strengthens. They may last into the following morning and trigger flash flooding events.

13.4.4. Throughout the mature stage, downdrafts strengthen while updrafts weaken. The storm's cooled air rushes downward resulting in the entire thunderstorm cell becoming an area of downdrafts (Figure 13.3). The cooled, stable air advances into formerly warm, moist air environments effectively cutting off the storm's supply of energy. Since updrafts are necessary to produce condensation and latent heat energy, the thunderstorm begins to dissipate. If severe weather has formed, it will also dissipate during this stage. Maximum tornado intensity, the strongest surface winds and largest hail are experienced during the first part of the dissipation stage. Strong winds aloft may develop the upper levels of the CB into the familiar anvil shape.

13.5. The Tropopause and Thunderstorms.

13.5.1. The height of the tropopause is important when analyzing potential severity of a thunderstorm. The tropopause height will vary with latitude and the season of the year. The tropopause height is higher in summer and lower in winter. The height is also higher at the equator and lower at higher latitudes. The tropopause acts as a barrier to resist the exchange of air between the troposphere and the stratosphere.

13.5.2. The tropopause will prevent a thunderstorm from continuing to build, acting as a lid on further vertical development. Only the most severe thunderstorms with rapidly rising updrafts have enough kinetic energy to penetrate the tropopause before cooling and slowing down. Remember that the tropopause height does change seasonally and regionally. A springtime 30,000-foot thunderstorm in Germany is potentially as deadly as a 50,000-foot mid-west US thunderstorm in summertime. There is a rough correlation between the degree of tropopause penetration and thunderstorm severity: the greater the tropopause penetration, the more severe the storm.

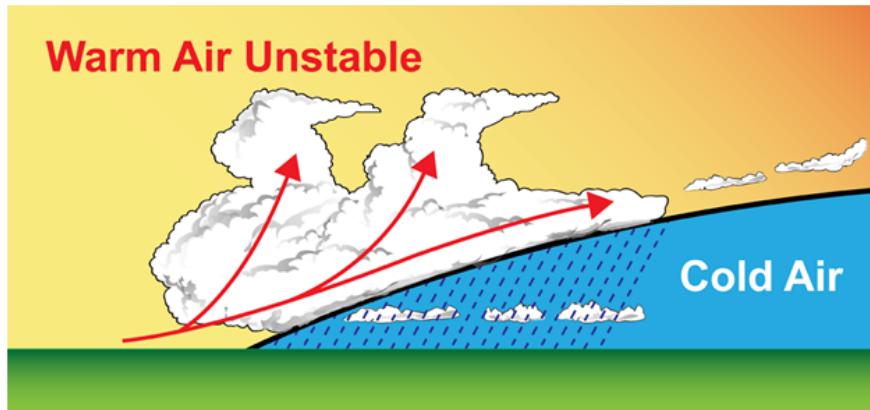
13.6. Frontal Thunderstorms.

13.6.1. Thunderstorms can occur with any type of front: warm, cold, stationary, or occluded. Frontal surfaces provide the lifting mechanism to force air upward. Warm, moist, unstable air lifted over a frontal surface causes frontal thunderstorms. Thunderstorms may also occur many miles ahead of rapidly moving cold fronts with squall lines.

13.6.2. Stratiform clouds usually accompany warm fronts due the shallowness of the frontal slope. Thunderstorms caused by moist unstable air riding over the warm front may be obscured unless aircrews fly above the stratiform layer. If flying at low levels, aircrews may be forewarned of such conditions by loud crashes of static in their headsets. Because of the front's shallow slope, warm frontal thunderstorms are usually the least severe of all frontal thunderstorms ([Figure 13.4](#)).

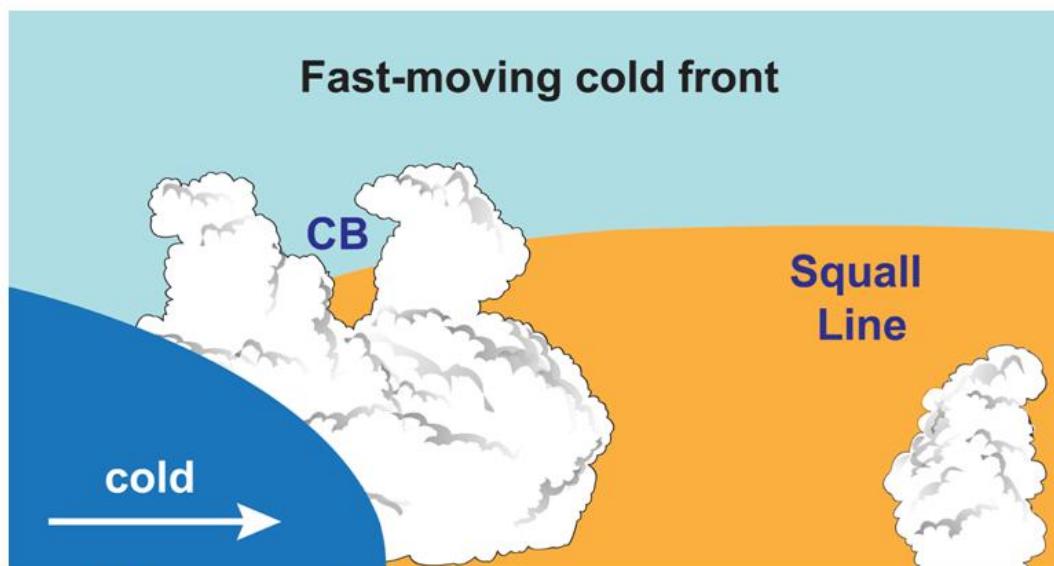
13.6.3. Thunderstorms associated with cold fronts are the most severe, except for those found in squall lines. The cold frontal surface wedges the warm unstable air upward until the forced air rises on its own. Often cold frontal thunderstorms form into a continuous line and are easy to recognize ([Figure 13.5](#)).

Figure 13.4. Warm Front Thunderstorm.



- Clouds and weather are located *at and ahead* of the advancing warm front.
- Precipitation consists of steady rain or snow and *usually* no thunderstorm activity, although thunderstorms may be embedded within the frontal area and hard to discern on satellite pictures.
- Fog is frequently found in the cooler air ahead of the warm front.

Figure 13.5. Cold Front Thunderstorm.



Fast moving cold fronts (steeper slope):

- Most clouds and weather are *near and ahead* of the advancing cold front
- Rain/show showers (sometimes heavy), more thunderstorm activity
- Thunderstorms often form ahead of front

13.6.4. Occasionally, thunderstorms develop along a stationary front, where they are usually scattered. These thunderstorms can form in the same areas for days dumping heavy rains and causing flooding. Stationary frontal storms usually move slowly and can plague an airfield for hours with inclement weather.

13.6.5. Thunderstorms associated with occluded fronts are particularly dangerous to aircrews since they are often embedded in stratiform clouds and difficult to see. Occluded frontal

thunderstorms form along the mixed frontal surfaces with the overlapping frontal surfaces forcing the unstable air aloft. The forced air eventually reaches the height where the air rises on its own and goes through the thunderstorm development cycle. Occluded frontal thunderstorms can achieve the same severity as their cold front cousins.

13.6.6. A squall line is a non-frontal, narrow band of active, occasionally violent, thunderstorms. Squall lines often develop 50 to 300 miles ahead of rapidly moving cold fronts in moist, unstable air (**Figure 13.6**), but the existence of a front is not a prerequisite. A squall line may be too long to easily detour around or too wide or severe to penetrate. Remember from Chapter 8 that squall lines have moderate to extreme turbulence, strong windshear, frequent lightning, possible hail, and tornadoes. They can achieve forward speeds of 50 knots or more. **Figure 13.7** provides an aerial view of an advancing squall line.

Figure 13.6. Squall Line.

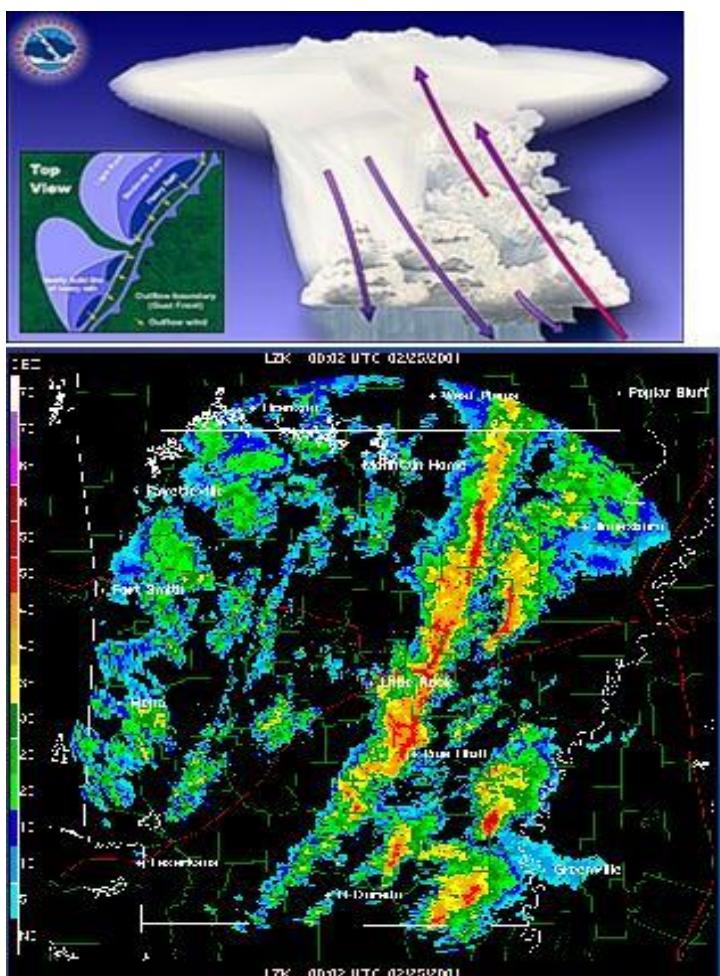


Figure 13.7. Squall Line Thunderstorms.



13.7. Air Mass Thunderstorms.

13.7.1. Air mass thunderstorms form within a warm, moist, unstable air mass not associated with a front. They are generally isolated or widely scattered over a large area with no apparent organized activity. These thunderstorms receive their necessary lift by surface heating (convection), convergence of low level winds, or winds forcing the moist, unstable air up mountain slopes. Since they are caused by surface heating and convergence, they reach maximum intensity and frequency over land during middle and late afternoon. Along coastal regions they reach a maximum during the night and early morning when the warmer water heats the cool air flowing off the land, causing thunderstorms to form a short distance offshore.

13.8. Orographic Thunderstorms.

13.8.1. Orographic thunderstorms will form on the windward side of a mountain when the prevailing wind forces moist, unstable air up the slope. The storm activity is usually scattered along the individual mountain peaks, but occasionally there will be a long, unbroken line of thunderstorms. The storms frequently enshroud the mountain peaks and adjacent lower terrain. Orographic stationary thunderstorms can have dangerous flash flooding as evidenced by the Big Thompson Canyon Flood, Colorado, in July 1976. These orographically stationary storms topped 60,000 feet and dumped an estimated 10 inches of rain in a 2 hour period.

13.9. Thunderstorm Turbulence.

13.9.1. Severe turbulence and icing, heavy precipitation, lightning, windshear, and gusty surface winds may accompany thunderstorms. These hazards are so common they appear on the front of every DD Form 175-1, Flight Weather Briefing. Severe thunderstorms may produce large hail, damaging winds, and sometimes tornadoes.

13.9.2. Hazardous turbulence is present in all thunderstorms, and in a severe thunderstorm it can damage the airframe and cause serious injury to passengers and crew. The most violent turbulence occurs in the shear between updrafts and downdrafts. Outside the cloud, shear turbulence has been encountered several thousand feet above and as much as 20 miles from a severe storm. Severe turbulence can occur in the anvil 15 to 30 miles downwind. Remember, the storm cloud is only the visible portion of a turbulent system. Updrafts and downdrafts often extend outside the storm proper.

13.9.3. The shear zone between the cold air downdraft and surrounding air forms a low level turbulent area. When the shear zone reaches the surface and spreads out laterally ahead of the storm, it's called a gust-front. It often occurs 20 or more miles ahead of a mature storm. Thunderstorms with multiple downdrafts may form second or third gust fronts between the first and the cloud base. On average, horizontal wind direction changes 40 percent across the gust front, and wind speed may increase 50 percent between the surface and 1,500 feet. Thus, surface observations may not give a true estimate of the actual wind just above the surface.

13.9.4. A roll cloud on the leading edge of a storm often indicates eddies associated with this shear. The roll cloud is most prevalent with cold front or squall line thunderstorms and indicates an extremely turbulent zone. The first gust causes a rapid and sometimes drastic change in surface wind ahead of an approaching storm.

13.10. Thunderstorm Icing.

13.10.1. Where the free air temperatures are at or below freezing, icing should be expected. In general, icing is associated with temperatures from 0°C to -20°C . The most severe icing occurs from 0°C to -10°C , with the worst icing conditions usually found just above the freezing level between 0°C and -5°C . Since the freezing level is also the zone where heavy rainfall and turbulence most frequently occur, this particular altitude appears to be the most hazardous.

13.10.2. Hailstones are solid spheres of ice or irregular frozen conglomerates originating in the updraft/downdraft couplet of thunderstorms. Supercell thunderstorms contain enormous updrafts and downdrafts that permit large hailstones to grow by accretion over periods of many minutes. Hailstones can be spherical, conical, or quite irregular in shape (**Figure 13.8**). Hailstones are often tossed out of the chimney-effect updraft into downdrafts where the ice commences its descent as a potentially damaging missile. Baseball and softball sized hail is often reported with severe thunderstorms. Hailstorms have been known to precipitate hail measured over a foot deep. As a general rule, the larger the storm, the more likely it is to have hail. Hail has been encountered as high as 45,000 feet in completely clear air and may be carried up to 20 miles downwind from the storm core.

Figure 13.8. 7 1/2 inch Diameter Hail.



13.11. Thunderstorm Hail.

13.11.1. The largest hailstone measured in the United States weighed nearly two pounds and was 18½ inches in circumference. Imagine the devastation to your aircraft if you were to fly through even softball-sized hail! Hailstones larger than ½ to ¾ of an inch cause significant aircraft damage in a few seconds. [Figure 13.9](#) shows photographs of aircraft damaged after flights through hail.

Figure 13.9. Hail Damage to Aircraft.



13.12. Thunderstorm Lightning.

13.12.1. Lightning occurs at all levels in a thunderstorm. The majority of lightning discharges never strike the ground but occur between clouds or within a cloud (**Figure 13.10**). Lightning also occurs in the clear air around the top, sides and bottoms of storms. The proverbial “bolt out of the blue” (**Figure 13.11**) can still strike aircrews flying miles from a thunderstorm.

Figure 13.10. Lightning Variations.

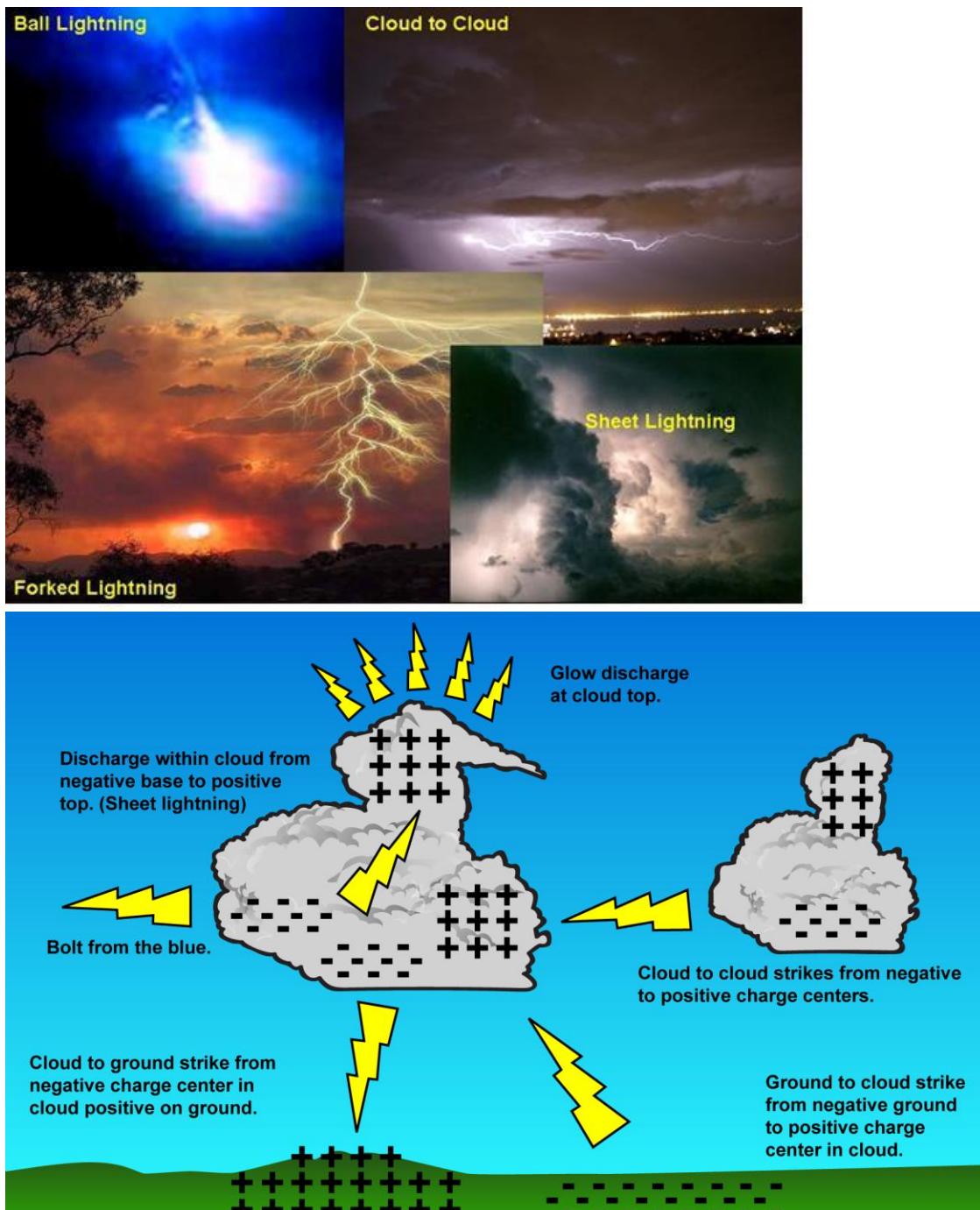


Figure 13.11. Lightning Bolt “Out of the Blue”.



13.12.2. Electrostatic discharges are very similar to natural lightning but are triggered by the aircraft itself. Electrical charges build up on aircraft when they fly through clouds or precipitation (liquid or frozen) or even solid particles such as dust, haze, and ice. The aircraft's electrical field may then interact with charged areas of the atmosphere resulting in an electrostatic discharge. This discharge does not have to occur in a thunderstorm. Aircraft have reported damage from electrostatic discharges occurring in cirrus downwind of previous thunderstorm activity, in cumulus around a thunderstorm's periphery, and even in stratiform clouds and light rain showers. Electrostatic discharges usually cause minor physical damage and indirect effects such as electrical circuit upsets.

13.12.3. Lightning strikes and electrostatic discharges are the leading causes of reportable weather related aircraft accidents and incidents in the Air Force. They are encountered at nearly all temperatures and altitudes and affect all types of aircraft. Aircraft are struck or can trigger strikes in two types of weather conditions: electrically active clouds (thunderstorms) and electrically inactive (non-thunderstorm) clouds.

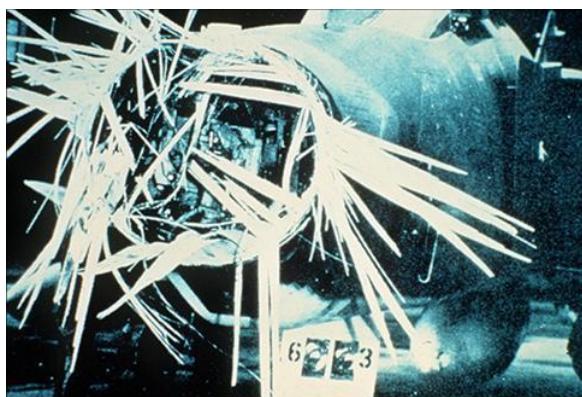
13.12.4. Research aircraft have shown that penetration of the upper reaches of a thunderstorm (35-40,000 feet with temperatures less than -40°C) provides one of the greatest potentials for strikes and discharges. The majority of Air Force and commercial airline incidents, however, occur at lower altitudes in non-thunderstorm clouds and in areas outside of active thunderstorm cells. Aircraft probably trigger strikes and discharges of this type since they would not occur naturally without the aircraft. In most of these cases the aircraft operates in one or more of the following conditions:

- 13.12.4.1. Within 8°C of the freezing level.
- 13.12.4.2. Within 5,000 feet of the freezing level.
- 13.12.4.3. In light precipitation (including snow).
- 13.12.4.4. In clouds (including debris clouds).

13.12.4.5. In light or negligible turbulence.

13.12.5. Lightning strikes and electrostatic discharges have varied effects on aircraft and aircrews. Usually, structural damage is minor but sometimes severe structural damage can occur ([Figure 13.12](#)). Damage to aircraft electrical systems, instruments, avionics, and radar is also possible. Transient voltages and currents induced in the aircraft electrical systems, as well as direct lightning strikes, have caused bomb doors to open, activated wing folding motors, and made the accuracy of electronic flight control navigational systems questionable. After an electrostatic discharge or a lightning strike, consider all instruments invalid until proper operation is verified.

Figure 13.12. Major Structural Damage Resulting from Lightning Strike.



13.12.6. Aircrews are not immune to the effects of lightning strikes. Flash blindness can last up to 30 seconds, and the shock wave can cause some temporary hearing loss, if headphones or hearing loss protection gear are not worn. Some aircrews report electric shock and minor burns.

13.13. Tornadoes.

13.13.1. Tornadoes are violent, rotating columns of air that descend from cumulonimbus clouds ([Figure 13.13](#)) in funnel-like or tube-like shapes. If the circulation does not reach the surface, it is called a funnel cloud ([Figure 13.14](#)); if it touches water, it is called a waterspout ([Figure 13.15](#)). A tornado vortex is normally several hundred yards wide but can be up to 1 ½ miles wide. Within the tornado's funnel-shaped circulation, winds can reach 300 miles per hour, while the forward speed of the tornado can average 30-40 kts.

Figure 13.13. Tornado.



Figure 13.14. Funnel Cloud.



NCAR / UCAR / NSF

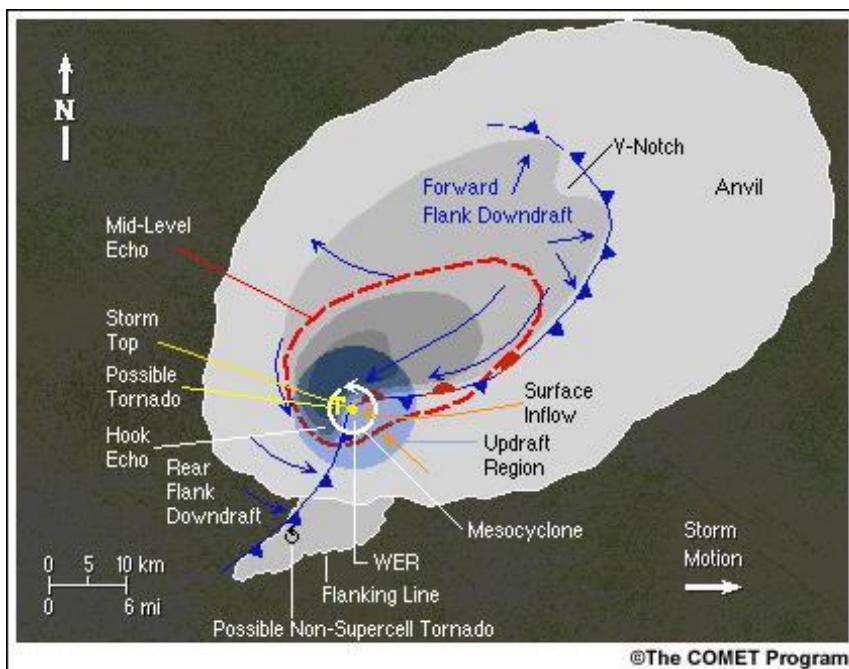
Figure 13.15. Waterspout.



13.13.2. Observed as appendages of the main cloud, families of tornadoes or tornadic vortices may extend 20 miles from the lightning and precipitation areas ([Figure 13.16](#)). They may last from a few minutes to hours. These vortices usually occur on the storm's southern

or south western flank. Innocent looking cumulus trailing the thunderstorm may mask tornadic vortices and the vortex may not be visible to unwary aircrews. The invisible vortices may be revealed only by swirls in the cloud base or dust whirls boiling along the ground, but may be strong enough to cause severe structural damage to the aircraft.

Figure 13.16. Anatomy of a Funnel Cloud.



13.13.3. Airborne radar isn't much help in spotting tornadoes. It returns echoes of significant precipitation but doesn't display a spinning column of air for your guidance while flying around the thunderstorms. It must be emphasized that just plain eyeballing and radar scanning a line of CBs won't tell you which thunderstorm is hiding a tornado. Be cautious on approach and departure, under or through lines of thunderstorms. The hazards tend to increase with altitude in the clouds because of the convergence of the vortices upward in the cloud line. The effect upon the aircraft may range from a thump to catastrophic airframe failure in major encounters.

13.13.4. Pressure usually falls rapidly with approaching thunderstorms, rises sharply with the onset of the gust front and rain showers, and returns to normal as the storm moves on. This pressure change cycle can occur in 15 minutes. If the altimeter setting is not corrected, the indicated altitude may be in error by hundreds of feet.

13.14. Identifying a Thunderstorm.

13.14.1. Precipitation static is a steady, high level of noise in radio receivers caused by intense, continual electrical discharges from sharp metallic points and edges of flying aircraft. It is often encountered in the vicinity of thunderstorms. When an aircraft flies through an area containing clouds, precipitation, or a concentration of solid particles (ice, sand, dust, and such), it accumulates a charge of static electricity. The electricity discharges onto a nearby surface, or into the air, causing a noisy disturbance at lower radio frequencies.

13.14.2. Mammatus clouds (**Figure 13.17**) often precede severe activity, generally as a part of the underside of the thunderstorm anvil in front of the storm. The lower-based roll cloud is in advance of the thunderstorm and appears as a dark, ominous, boiling, cloud mass. The roll cloud area often contains severe turbulence and signals the leading edge of the thunderstorm gust front boundary.

Figure 13.17. Mammatus Clouds.



13.15. Avoiding a Thunderstorm.

13.15.1. If conditions will not permit you to circumnavigate a thunderstorm, you have only two alternatives; divert to the closest unaffected airfield (and wait until the storm passes) or go through the thunderstorm, but only as a last resort if required by your mission. Ask yourself, “Is going through the thunderstorm worth losing the aircraft; or my life?”

13.15.2. The method you use to get past a thunderstorm depends on the following considerations. Therefore, as you approach a thunderstorm, take your time and size up the situation to ensure the method you attempt (based on the rules of thumb and the techniques found below) will be the proper one and you won’t have to do any second-guessing once you are on your way.

13.15.3. In estimating the situation, you must analyze the nature of the terrain, altitude of the base of the storm, altitude of the top, number of storms in the area and their location in relation to each other, size and intensity of these storms, direction and velocity of the movement of the storm, location of your destination and an alternate airport, and type of aircraft you are flying. (Including its service ceiling and range). **WARNING:** The following

guidance is not to be construed as a recommendation to fly through, under, over, or near a thunderstorm. It is given to provide information only in case your mission is so critical to national defense that it warrants the very real risk of losing the aircraft and personnel on board, or, as happens in some cases, you encounter a thunderstorm that is embedded in other clouds.

13.15.4. When you expect to fly over a storm, obtain your altitude before approaching it, so you are on top of the cloud shelf around the storm and can inspect the storm line before selecting your course. A rule of thumb is to fly an additional 1,000 feet higher for every 10 knots of wind speed at cloud top level. This rule doesn't, however, guarantee your safety. Remember, if the storm is in its growth stage, your altitude may not be sufficient to clear the storm as it continues its rapid growth.

13.15.5. The altitude necessary to fly around the tops or over the saddlebacks between thunderstorms will vary with the season and the latitude in which you encounter the storm. In higher latitudes (north of 60°), 25,000 feet may be sufficient, but remember the 25,000-foot storm in higher latitudes can be as violent as the 50,000-foot storm close to the equator. In the tropics, the height of the saddlebacks may be above the service ceiling of your aircraft.

13.15.6. If you inadvertently enter a thunderstorm, don't turn around. If you do, you'll fly through the same hazards again. Hold your original course. Use your airborne radar to determine the shallowest or weakest part of the storm. Heavy precipitation may attenuate (absorb) your radar energy, making you believe you are safe when you are actually headed into the most violent part of the storm.

13.15.7. **Aircrew Notes.**

13.15.7.1. *Maintain turbulence-penetration airspeed before entering a thunderstorm.*

13.15.7.2. *If lightning threatens to blind you temporarily, turn your cockpit or thunderstorm lights to full power. Keep your eyes on the instrument panel and consider lowering your seat.*

13.15.7.3. *If St. Elmo's fire (static electricity) forms on the windshield, the wings and the periphery of the engines, reduce your airspeed and the fire will usually go away. Always follow flight manual procedures to maintain your flight safety margin.*

13.15.7.4. *St. Elmo's fire may appear in various colors such as reddish and bluish (reddish for a positive charge and bluish for a negative charge). It may appear outside or even inside the aircraft as a small dot of static electricity or large areas of "electrical arcing." Some pilots have even reported it as large peacock feathers arcing off the nose of the aircraft. (St. Elmo's fire is not a hazard to flight, but may interfere with radio communication in the form of static.) St. Elmo's fire is also a warning sign of a potential static discharge or lightning strike.*

13.15.8. Isolated air mass thunderstorms and orographic thunderstorms (those created by updrafts around rough terrain) are usually local and should be flown around. The added mileage and time are usually of little consequence. Thunderstorms can be circumnavigated at low, high, or intermediate levels, depending upon the set of circumstances they present. In any case, it is vital to determine the direction in which a line of storms is moving and to fly between the storm centers, heading in at a right angle. For individual cells, you should fly

with the rotation of the storm. Since most storms rotate counterclockwise in the Northern Hemisphere, if you are traveling eastward, fly on the south side of the storm; if you are flying westward, fly on the north side of the storm. Remember, storms generally move from southwest to northeast in the Northern Hemisphere. Therefore, if you are flying on the north side of the storm, be sure to give it a wide berth to compensate for its movement.

13.15.9. At intermediate levels, keep either blue sky or light spots in the clouds in sight ahead of you. This may cause you to alter course a little from time to time to miss the storm centers, but don't wander around. In circumnavigating at intermediate levels, it is a good plan to stay on top of intermediate clouds where you can keep the structure of the main cloud in view. Once you have entered the storm area, if the hole closes up ahead of you and you have to go on instruments, don't change course. Stick to your original right angle course and go through. Don't alter your course on account of turbulence, rain, or hail because you may find yourself flying through the same hazards again.

13.15.10. If the terrain is flat or you are over the open sea, flying underneath the storm may seem to be one of the easiest ways to negotiate a thunderstorm, but it's one of the most dangerous methods because of violent downdrafts, microbursts, wind shear, icing, and hail. Familiarity with thunderstorm dynamics is essential, especially where you will encounter updrafts and downdrafts (refer back to **Figure 13.6**). If your fuel range is short and/or your service ceiling is low, this may be the only method open to you if your divert base is on the other side of the storm. The "Underneath" method should not be attempted in mountainous country.

13.15.11. If your equipment permits, fly over the top of the main body of a thunderstorm or between the saddlebacks. To elect this method, you must be sure of your aircraft, sure of your knowledge of the storm, and sure of yourself. Remember, you should clear the top by at least 1,000 feet of altitude for each 10 knots of wind speed at the cloud top. Flying over the top is preferable to flying underneath; however, this may exceed the service ceiling of your aircraft. You must know the intensity of the storm, its extent, and the direction in which it is moving. You must also know that your fuel supply is adequate, and the service ceiling of your aircraft is sufficient to get you as high as you need to go. Some storms develop higher than 60,000 feet in the mid-latitudes and tropics. **NOTE:** Most thunderstorms build faster than an aircraft can climb. Attempting to out-climb one can be deadly, especially since you won't know the growth capability of the thunderstorm until you try to "race" it. Obviously this has a good possibility of putting you into a dangerous position with potentially few escape options. By flying close to the thunderstorm you are also increasing your chances of a lightning strike or damage from hail thrown out the top of the thunderstorm.

13.15.12. In flying over the saddlebacks or around the anvils, remember that the higher you go, the less turbulence you will encounter. The thunderstorm anvil is created as the jet stream shears off the top of the thunderstorm. Winds are generally strong there, and hailstones can be carried as much as 20 miles downstream--in the clear air! Do not fly in, under, or downwind of the anvil top; this is a favorite place for hailstones.

13.15.13. If you have no alternative but to fly through a thunderstorm, try to avoid the center of the storm or area where the most violent turbulence is apparent. Select a course where the thunderstorm is visibly least turbulent and where there will be the least possibility of hail; slow the aircraft to turbulence penetration airspeed (hopefully, you are already at this speed);

don't change course! When entering the front of a thunderstorm, you will encounter updrafts and downdrafts. Prepare yourself by going in with enough altitude to keep from being forced into the ground during a downdraft. Your minimum penetration altitude should be 4,000 to 6,000 feet AGL above the highest terrain in the area. The flight manual for each type of aircraft gives the correct turbulence penetration speed. In the absence of this information, a good rule of thumb is to fly about 50 percent above stall speed. Once inside the storm, let the plane ride out the updrafts and downdrafts and concentrate on maintaining a level attitude. The attitude gyro is the primary attitude instrument because rapidly changing pressure conditions within the storm will result in erratic variations in altitude, airspeed, and rate of climb, which cause unreliable readings. Since the attitude gyro is independent of the pitot static system, its indications should be considered valid. If using autopilot, disengage the altitude hold mode and speed hold mode. (If used, they will increase aircraft maneuvers and structural stress.) **WARNING:** When you fly through a thunderstorm, the hazards that you face are extreme. You will be betting the aircraft, your life, and the lives of your crew members on the forces of nature. This must be the only remaining alternative!

13.15.14. If you must penetrate a storm area, comply with thunderstorm avoidance rules and follow the general flight procedures listed below:

13.15.14.1. Don't try and circumnavigate thunderstorms covering 6/10 or more of an area.

13.15.14.2. Don't fly into or under the cirrus anvil. Severe hail damage can result.

13.15.14.3. Don't turn around. Attempting to do so will keep you in the storm longer, increase stress on the aircraft, increase the possibility of stall and may result in spatial disorientation and/or an unusual attitude.

13.15.14.4. Don't penetrate in close formation.

13.15.14.5. Avoid by at least 20 miles, any thunderstorm identified as severe or giving an intense radar echo. This is especially true under the anvil of a large cumulonimbus.

13.15.14.6. Get your aircraft ready for thunderstorm penetration prior to entry by setting instrument and cockpit lights full bright, pitot heat on, and safety belts and shoulder harnesses tightened and locked.

13.15.14.7. Change power settings to establish turbulence penetration airspeed. This airspeed reduces the hazard of exceeding stress limitations.

13.15.14.8. Choose a heading minimizing travel time in the storm.

13.15.14.9. Try to maintain a constant attitude, but ride out the updrafts and downdrafts. Trying to maintain an exact altitude during strong updrafts and downdrafts will increase stress on your aircraft.

13.15.14.10. Penetrate the storm below the freezing level or above -15°C to avoid severe icing hazards.

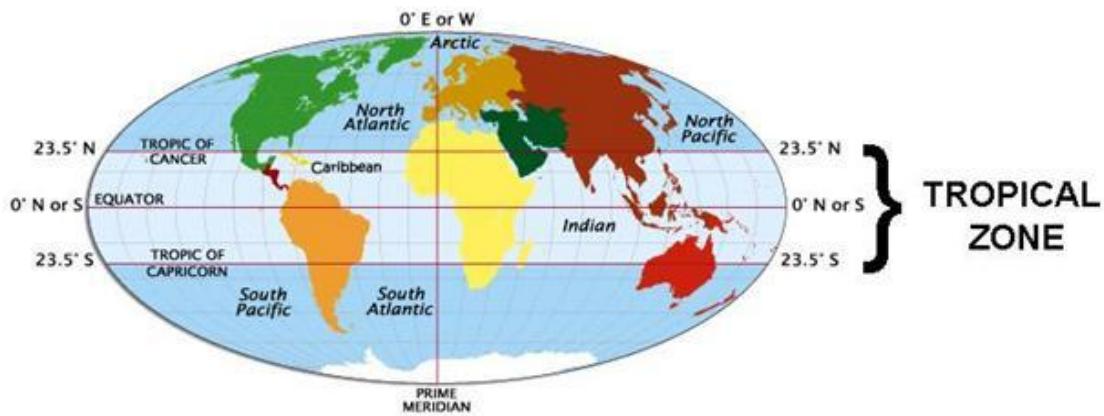
Chapter 14

TROPICAL WEATHER

14.1. The Tropics.

14.1.1. The tropics include a vast region of the Earth situated between the Tropic of Cancer (23.5°N latitude) and the Tropic of Capricorn (23.5°S latitude) as shown in [Figure 14.1](#). However, tropical weather may occur more than 45° of latitude on both sides of the Equator. This is especially true for the east coasts of continents during the summer. The tropics contain both the wettest and driest regions of the world.

Figure 14.1. The Tropical Zone.



14.2. Pressure Systems in the Tropics.

14.2.1. Low pressure systems predominate in the tropics, and pressure gradients are weak except in tropical cyclones. Since there are no well defined surface pressure systems in this region, except in cyclones, local pressure variations are frequently due only to daily heating and cooling. One of the main differences between tropical weather and weather in the middle and high latitudes is the relative absence of fronts. Rarely are fronts strong enough to move into the tropics. Almost all fronts which do reach the tropics produce rain showers, some wind shift, and a small temperature reduction. Most active tropical weather results from interaction between the lower and upper level wind flows. When low level convergent flow combines with upper level divergent flow, upward vertical motion results. This combination in the tropics almost always results in towering cumulus and heavy rain.

14.3. Weather in the Tropics.

14.3.1. Weather occurring over the tropical oceans differs from weather over the continental areas. Along coastal regions and over islands, a combination of these two types (land and ocean) usually results. Over oceans, cloud cover varies from clear to scattered outside the equatorial trough region. Cloud bases are usually about 2,000 feet. Cloud top heights vary greatly, with maximum tops generally around 8,000 feet. Often, cumulus will parallel the windflow, forming "cloud streets." Scattered rainshowers are common from these cumulus clouds with ceilings periodically lowering to 1,000 to 1,500 feet in precipitation. Visibility is usually good. The chief restriction outside of showers is haze caused by suspended sea salt

concentrations in the lower levels. The salt particles cannot penetrate the inversion, so visibility is good above the inversion level. The temperature inversion is more pronounced over the eastern parts of oceans due to cooling from below from colder ocean currents. Sometimes a stratus layer will develop beneath the inversion and last for several days with little vertical variation in layer depth or ceiling height. Temperatures closely approximate adjacent sea-surface temperatures, averaging about 80°F with a daily variation of only about 5-8 degrees or so. Dew points remain almost constant in the oceanic tropics. There are some seasonal changes based on whether the monsoon season is in progress. But the temperature variation is small from month to month. The freezing level is usually between 15,000 and 18,000 feet throughout the year.

14.4. Continental Tropical Weather.

14.4.1. The weather over interior continental areas is subject to extreme climatic variation. The chief climatic controlling factor is terrain differences. Prevailing pressure patterns, wind flow, orientation and height of coastal mountain ranges and altitude of the continental area produce localized weather effects. Various combinations of these factors produce tropical weather ranging from the hot, humid climate of the Amazon and Congo River basins, to the arid Sahara Desert, and to the snow-capped mountains of South America and Africa.

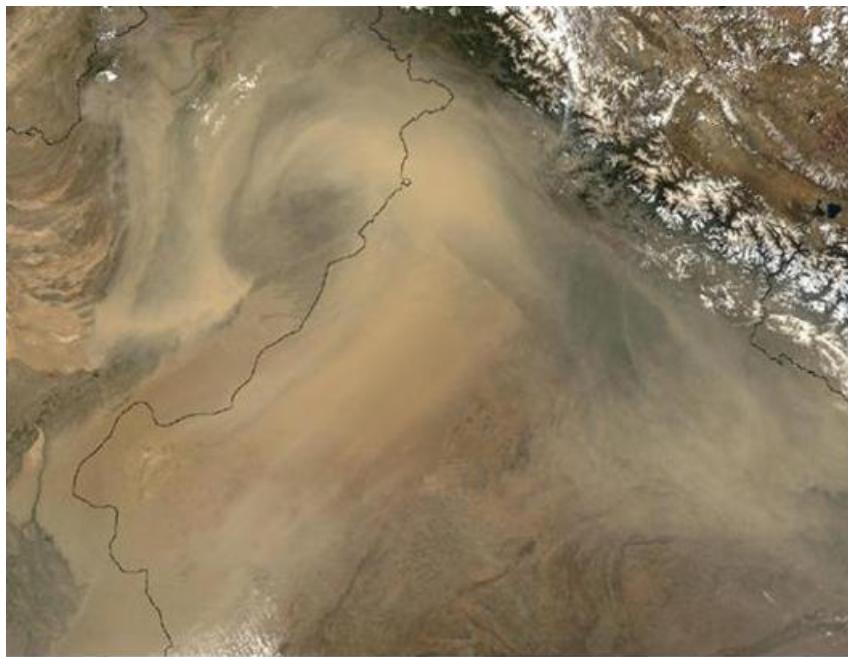
14.5. Arid Tropical Weather.

14.5.1. The climate of land areas to the lee of mountain ranges or on high plateaus is hot and dry. Examples of this climate regime are found in the rain shadow of the Andes Mountains, South America and the Sahara Desert in Africa. In the flat desert areas, afternoon temperatures may exceed 100°F while night temperatures can drop into the 50's and 60's. There is strong convection during the day, but low surface humidity keeps the cumuliform cloud bases above 10,000 feet. Occasional high-based thunderstorms will produce precipitation that often evaporates before reaching the ground. These "dry" thunderstorms produce gusty winds and may cause severe dust or sandstorms. Severe turbulence aloft and restricted ceiling and visibility accompanied by gusts and squalls near the ground present hazards to aircrews.

14.6. Dust and Sandstorms.

14.6.1. When strong high and low pressure areas interact, strong pressure gradients form which can trigger dust and sandstorms that cover large areas and last for days. These areas can be seen on satellite, and look like "rivers" of dust streaming from their source regions ([Figure 14.2](#)). These storms do reduce visibility, sometimes thousands of miles from their origin; some storms can create complete surface obscurations. There is little relief from the prolonged dust and sandstorms that obviously challenge aircrews to minimize damage to their aircraft. Aircraft engine damage often is caused by sand or dust ingestion.

Figure 14.2. Sandstorm in Pakistan.



14.7. Maritime Tropical Air.

14.7.1. Where high terrain or mountains are not present to obstruct the onshore flow of maritime air, the warm, moist air influences large continental areas. Cloudiness and precipitation are at a maximum over the jungles and tropical rain forests. In humid tropical climates, the wind's daily variation in direction and speed determines the daily variations in cloudiness, temperature, and precipitation. Clouds are mostly cumuliform with afternoon cumulonimbus. The average daytime cloud coverage is approximately 60% throughout the year, with maximum cloud coverage during the day. The annual range in temperatures for jungle stations may be less than 2°F, but the daily range is often 30°F or more. When afternoon showers occur, the descending cold air may produce night-time temperatures in the 60's. These rains are very heavy and produce low clouds that may reduce ceilings and visibilities to near zero.

14.8. Subtropical Jet Stream.

14.8.1. Subtropical jet streams are a persistent feature of the tropical general circulation. A detailed study of the Northern Hemisphere subtropical jet stream during winter shows it to be a simple broadscale current with wind speeds of 150 to 200 knots. Maximum wind speeds are generally located over the east coasts of Asia, North America, and in the Middle East. The mean latitude ranges from 20 to 35 degrees North with the average core speed of 140 knots located around 40,000 feet. The tropical easterly jet stream is a persistent feature over extreme southern Asia and northern Africa during the northern hemispheric summer. The tropical easterly jet extends over the layer from 35,000 to 50,000 feet in the latitude belt 5 to 20 degrees north. It is remarkably persistent in its position, direction, and intensity.

14.9. Equatorial Trough.

14.9.1. The equatorial trough is known by a variety of names. You may have heard meteorologists refer to the Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ) or a zone of Intertropical Confluence (ITC). The equatorial trough is a broad area of relatively low pressure and light winds which separates the northeast trade winds of the Northern Hemisphere and the southeast trade winds of the Southern Hemisphere. This zone of confluence can have active weather along the zone extending thousands of miles or have a series of short disturbances. The equatorial trough migrates northward during the Northern Hemisphere's summer season and southward during the Southern Hemisphere's summer. Due to the light wind flow, land and sea breezes become the predominant wind for extended periods along coastal areas and near islands in this belt. Convergence of the northeast and southeast winds is always present to some degree and in the trough, some unsettled convective weather is found at all times ([Figure 14.3](#)). When the zone of convergence intensifies, thunderstorms are very likely to develop. Severe turbulence and icing is likely in these thunderstorms, especially above 15,000 feet (average freezing level). Precipitation reaches its maximum just before dawn with the minimum occurring late in the morning through the early afternoon hours. Disturbances move from east to west and can move poleward and develop into tropical storms. Low-level cyclonic wind shear is present over large areas. [Figure 14.4](#) illustrates the vertical structure of this convergence zone.

Figure 14.3. Satellite Picture of Clouds Associated with the Equatorial Trough.

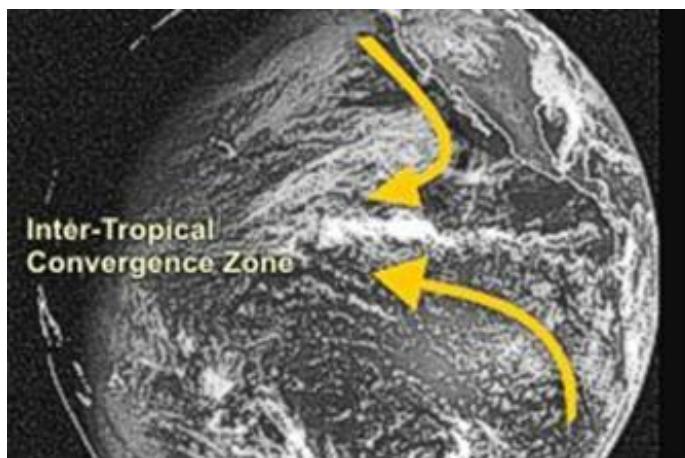
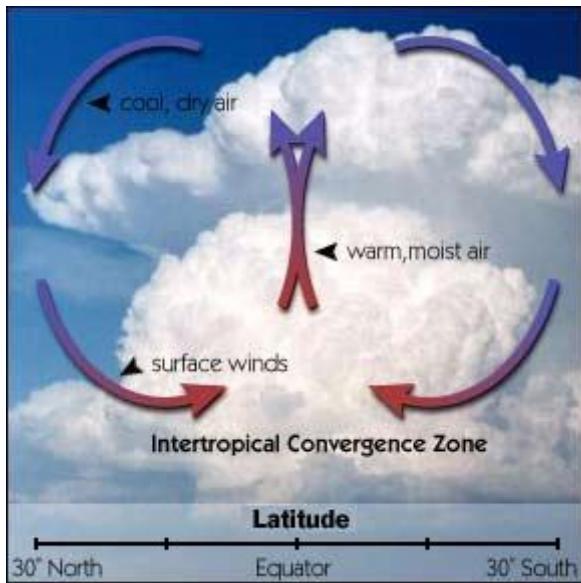


Figure 14.4. Vertical Structure of Convergence Zone.



14.10. Tropical Waves.

14.10.1. There are numerous tropical waves found in the lower levels in the tropics. Many times these are reflections of an upper level trough which may be the remnants of a former mid-latitude frontal system. Extensive weather may be associated with these waves, with the level of intensity dependent on the upper level flow. The most common of these tropical waves is the easterly wave. The easterly wave is a low level, tropical weather disturbance occurring in the trade wind belt. Easterly waves occurring in the Northern Hemisphere have advance winds somewhat more northerly (NE or NNE) than the usual trade wind direction as shown in **Figure 14.5**. The wind shifts to the east as the line passes. Contrary to weather-producing waves in the mid-latitudes (in which poor weather precedes the wave), very good weather precedes a tropical wave, but is followed by extensive cloudiness, low ceilings, rain, and thunderstorms. The weather activity is found in roughly a north-south line. Easterly waves are more numerous and stronger during summer and early fall. Their effects occasionally reach as far north as the Gulf Coast and Florida. They are commonly observed in the Greater and Lesser Antilles of the Caribbean Sea.

Figure 14.5. Easterly Waves.



14.11. Shear Lines.

14.11.1. A line of wind shear, simply called a “shear line,” is found in the tropics at the southern edge of a strong polar front which has moved unusually far south. The front gradually weakens leaving only a wind shift and a small temperature discontinuity across the former front. Strong areas of convection develop and are oriented parallel to the shear line. The average height of the shear lines is 10,000 to 15,000 feet. The associated low ceilings and rainfall along the line can cause poor terminal weather conditions. Strong winds due to convergence along the shearline or funneling effects caused by local terrain as shearlines pass can exceed 90 knots such as in the Gulf of Tehuantepec.

14.12. Monsoons.

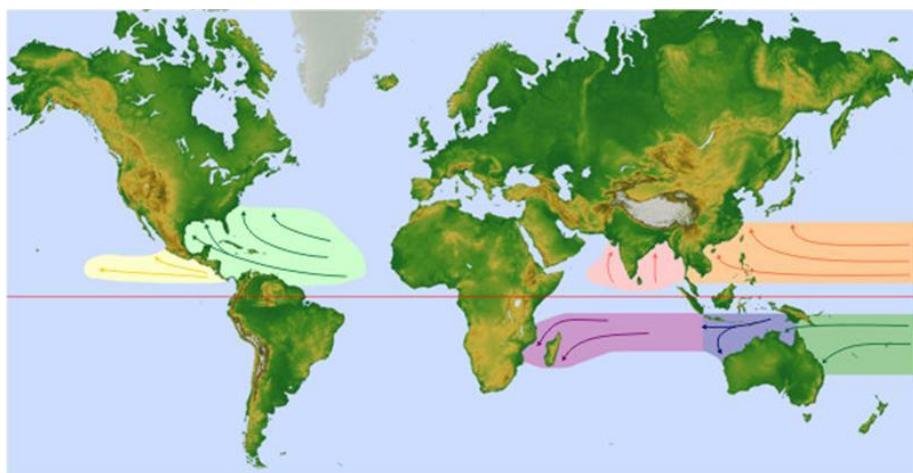
14.12.1. A monsoon is a seasonal shift in the surface wind. More technically, this wind shift is the result of a wind reversal from one persistent circulation system to another. This type of regime is found from Central Africa across South Asia and the Indian Ocean to Southeast Asia. There is no simple correlation between the wind direction and rainfall. For instance, in Southeast Asia during the southwest monsoon, some sectors are wet and others are very dry. Generally, the classic heavy rains result from landward moving, moisture-laden ocean air coming in contact with the summer-heated land. Intense, persistent convection develops and lasts for literally weeks as the monsoon circulation moves northward or southward. In India, the heaviest rains are enhanced by a low level convergent wind flow between the monsoon circulation and another wind system. The monsoon circulations affect weather as far north as Korea, China, and Japan.

14.12.2. You may also hear the term monsoon used to describe thunderstorm season in the deserts of the southwestern United States. Here, by early July the upper wind pattern typically changes from a familiar westerly direction (prevailing westerlies) to a more easterly or southeasterly flow which can often extend from near surface upward through 30,000 to 40,000 feet. This flow reversal is due to the northward migration of the Bermuda High-- a subtropical semi-permanent high pressure system which affects a large portion of the southern United States during the summer months. Over a period of several weeks, this easterly flow transports moisture from the Gulf of Mexico region into New Mexico, Arizona, and sometimes as far west as the deserts of southern California. This moisture influx, combined with intense surface heating, results in high-based thunderstorms which can produce very strong winds and impressive, often dangerous lightning events. This monsoonal setup typically persists through the middle of September.

14.13. Tropical Cyclone.

14.13.1. Tropical cyclone is a general term for any low originating over tropical oceans. In the North Atlantic, the central and eastern North Pacific, and the Caribbean they are known as hurricanes; the northwestern Pacific Ocean as typhoons; and in the Indian Ocean, Australia and South Pacific they are called tropical cyclones. Although the exact formation process is not known, we do know they form in certain areas characterized by high temperatures, high moisture content, and instability. They form in low pressure troughs where there are large areas of warm, rising air. Many times they form from easterly waves or other tropical wave disturbances. Hurricanes affecting the United States originate over the warm tropical waters of the Atlantic Ocean, the Caribbean Sea, the Gulf of Mexico, the coasts of Central America and Mexico, and the eastern part of the North Pacific Ocean. **Figure 14.6** indicates the principal regions of the world where tropical cyclones form and their usual direction of movement. Note that most tropical systems form between 5° and 15° latitude.

Figure 14.6. Principal Regions of Tropical Cyclone Formation and Favored Direction of Movement.



14.14. Tropical Cyclone Stages.

14.14.1. In the formative stage, the system is called a tropical depression. By definition, a depression has sustained wind speeds of 33 kts or less. Tropical depressions are numbered

and when sustained winds reach 34 knots, they become tropical storms. When the tropical storm winds exceed 63 knots, the storm becomes a hurricane, typhoon, or tropical cyclone. Sustained winds associated with hurricanes frequently exceed 100 kts near the center. In August 1992, Hurricane Andrew, a “category 5” storm, struck Homestead AFB, FL with sustained winds in excess of 130 knots with gusts to 155 knots. In super-typhoons, found in the western Pacific Ocean, sustained winds exceed 150 kts, with gusts approaching 200 knots. The North Atlantic tropical cyclone season is from June through November. Forecasters often use the “Saffir-Simpson Hurricane Wind Scale” to assess and forecast tropical storm strength ([Figure 14.7](#)). This scale changed from previous versions in 2010 in which central pressure and storm surge potential were removed from the intensity category designation.

Figure 14.7. Saffir-Simpson Hurricane Wind Scale.

Category	Winds (1 min sustained winds in mph, kt, and km/hr)	Summary
1	74-95 mph 64-82 kt 119-153 km/hr	<i>Very dangerous winds will produce some damage</i>
2	96-110 mph 83-95 kt 154-177 km/hr	<i>Extremely dangerous winds will cause extensive damage</i>
3	111-130 mph 96-113 kt 178-209 km/hr	<i>Devastating damage will occur</i>
4	131-155 mph 114-135 kt 210-249 km/hr	<i>Catastrophic damage will occur</i>
5	>155 mph >135 kt >249 km/hr	<i>Catastrophic damage will occur</i>

14.15. Cyclone Movement.

14.15.1. The forward movement of hurricanes while in the tropics averages only 10 to 12 kts. In the Northern Hemisphere, the direction of movement is usually westward or northwestward until they reach 25° to 30° N latitude. At roughly this point, they often begin to recurve and move in a north to east direction. Following recurvature, they usually move with rapidly increasing speed, sometimes exceeding 50 kts. After recurving, the cyclone usually starts to weaken as it travels over cooler water.

14.16. The Eye:

14.16.1. Intense hurricanes have an “eye” or relatively clear area in the center, often 12 to 25 miles across ([Figures 14.8, 14.9 and 14.10](#)) although eye diameters of over 80 miles have

been observed. Subsiding winds in the eye result in clear sky and the wind is comparatively calm. Around this eye is an encircling wall of violent hurricane-force winds. When the eye passes over any location, winds of great violence from one direction precede the calm center followed by violent winds from the opposite direction. Central barometric pressure is lowest in the eye of the storm. The Florida Keys' 1935 Labor Day Hurricane measured a central pressure of 892mb and Hurricane Andrew measured 922mb, Hurricane Wilma in 2005 was the most intense hurricane in the Atlantic with a central pressure falling to 882 mb.

14.17. Rainfall.

14.17.1. The rainfall pattern revealed in the radar photograph shown in [Figure 14.8](#) is typical of a mature hurricane. The characteristic spiral band of rainfall distributed about a hurricane is evident in the white areas of the photograph. Individual convective showers and thunderstorms align in this pattern about the center of the storm. The heaviest rainfall is ordinarily found in a semi-circle to the right of the hurricane's direction of movement, where accumulations have exceeded 40 inches in a 24-hour period. Torrential rainfall, high winds, and occasional tornadoes associated with hurricanes cause tremendous destruction. The raised water level, called a storm surge, is superimposed on normal tides, and in turn, wind-driven waves are superimposed on the surge. The build-up of water levels can cause severe flooding on islands and coastal areas, particularly when the storm surge is superimposed upon high tide. Hurricanes (including typhoons and cyclones) cause the most widespread destruction of all storms. Some of the larger hurricanes have diameters up to about 1,000 miles, with destructive winds over an area 500 miles in diameter. The worst storms have claimed thousands of lives. In September 1900, Galveston, Texas, lost over 6,000 people due to a storm surge associated with a hurricane.

Figure 14.8. Radar Image of Hurricane Katrina.



Figure 14.9. Cross Hurricane Eye and Spiral Bands.

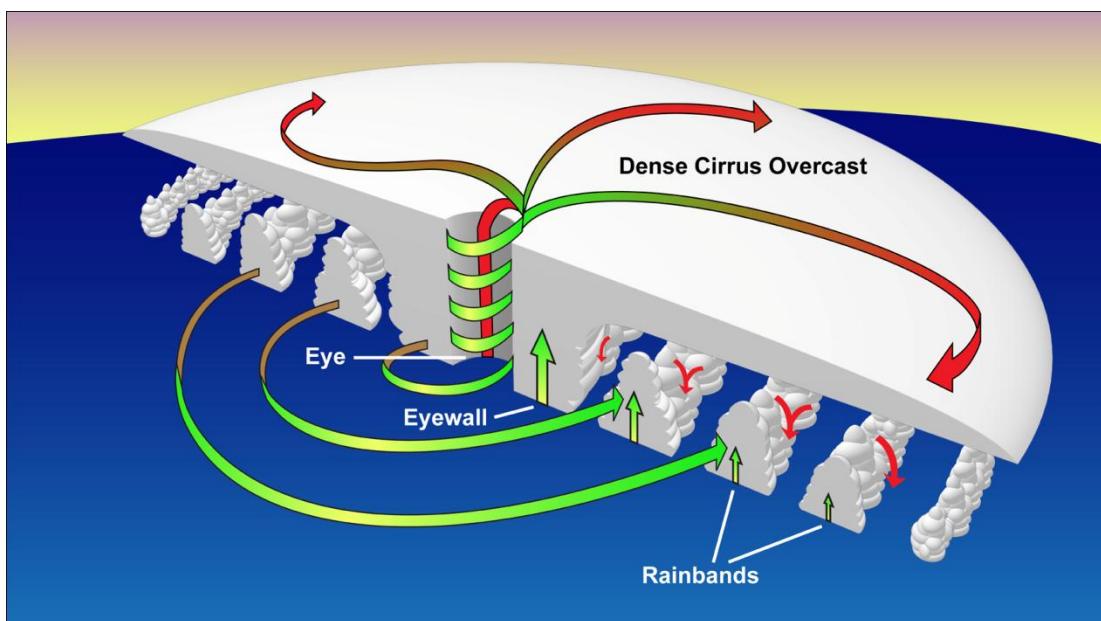


Figure 14.10. Satellite Picture of a Hurricane.



14.18. Extratropical Storms.

14.18.1. Cooler surface temperatures, loss of moisture, interaction with the polar jet stream, and increased surface friction associated with land surfaces cause tropical storms and hurricanes to decay. When the storm curves toward the north or east in the Northern Hemisphere, it usually begins to lose its tropical characteristics and acquires the characteristics of low pressure systems normally found in middle and high latitudes. The latter type of low pressure system is called extratropical, meaning "outside the tropics." Weather reconnaissance crews have found the roughest flying weather in storms during the transition between tropical and extratropical due to cold air entrained into the low, middle, and upper altitudes.

14.19. Tracking Agencies.

14.19.1. The National Weather Service maintains a constant watch for the formation and development of tropical cyclones in the North Atlantic Ocean, Caribbean Sea, Gulf of Mexico, and the North Pacific Ocean eastward of 180°. From 180° westward to the African coast, the Joint Typhoon Warning Center (JTWC) located in Hawaii, is responsible for the detection and warning of developing cyclones.

14.19.2. Initial detection is made by analyzing cloud patterns from weather satellite imagery and by analyzing wind reports from ships at sea. Specially equipped weather reconnaissance aircraft are dispatched on demand to some areas where forecasters suspect a tropical cyclone exists or may be forming. When tropical cyclones approach foreign nations, we advise the countries of the storm's existence and location.

14.20. Aircrew Actions.

14.20.1. All aircrews, except those specially trained to explore tropical storms and hurricanes, should avoid these dangerous cyclones. The data gathered by weather research aircraft, flying at 35,000 to 43,000 feet in the tops of hurricanes, shows that in well developed hurricanes, you should expect severe to occasionally extreme turbulence. For low-flying aircraft, circumnavigation may be accomplished by keeping the storm center to the left of the flight path (in the Northern Hemisphere). In this way, the aircraft experiences a tailwind component around the storm.

14.20.2. Typically, hurricane winds are strongest at low levels and decrease with altitude. Research aircraft frequently find winds in excess of 100 kts at 18,000 feet. Winds become significantly lighter above 30,000 feet. Some of the most severe turbulence encountered is in the edge of the surrounding eyewall. Other turbulent areas are found within the spiral rain bands. Flight at low levels, 500 to 3,000 feet AGL, results in exposure to sustained pounding turbulence due to the surface friction of the fast moving air. Critical icing conditions may be encountered in the mid levels of the storm. Between 15,000 and 25,000 feet, severe clear icing may render aircraft de-ice and anti-ice equipment ineffective while dramatically decreasing the aircraft's performance.

Chapter 15

ARCTIC WEATHER

15.1. Introduction. Flights in polar regions present special problems for aircrews. Most weather phenomena occur at low altitudes or at the surface. Challenging terminal weather conditions such as extreme cold temperatures and persistent icy and snow packed runways are serious hazards in polar flight operations. Obstructions to visibility and depth perception make takeoffs and landings difficult. Mechanical turbulence becomes a problem with strong low level winds. These and other flight problems will be examined after a discussion of some general polar features.

15.2. Arctic Areas.

15.2.1. The polar regions are the areas north of the Arctic Circle (66.56°N latitude) and south of the Antarctic Circle (66.56°S latitude). Since both polar regions have similar weather hazards, we will confine our discussion to Arctic weather ([Figure 15I](#)). We will also include information on Alaskan weather, even though much of the state lies south of the Arctic Circle.

15.2.2. The amount of energy received from the sun largely determines an area's climate. The heat an area obtains from the sun depends upon (1) the duration of sunlight, (2) the angle of the sun's rays and (3) the average cloud cover. [Figure 15.2](#) shows that much of the Arctic receives little or no direct heat from the sun during the winter. During the prolonged night, there is a continual heat loss by radiation. The climate is not completely determined by the sun. Other weather variations are attributed to land and water distribution, the land's physical features, and ocean currents. Combined, these features influence the characteristics of the air masses affecting this region. Some Arctic locations such as the eastern shores of Greenland have the fiercest weather in the Northern Hemisphere with steady wind velocities averaging 40 knots for days.

Figure 15.1. Arctic Circle.

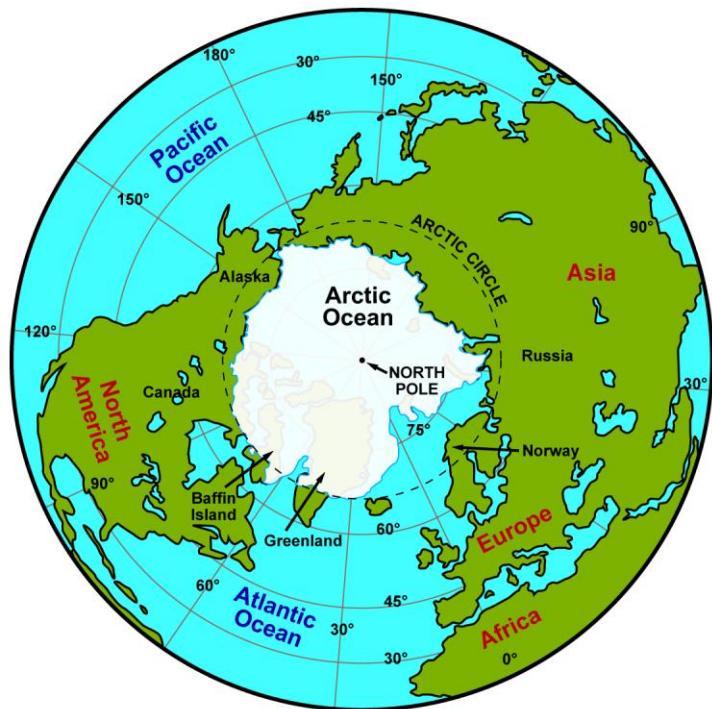
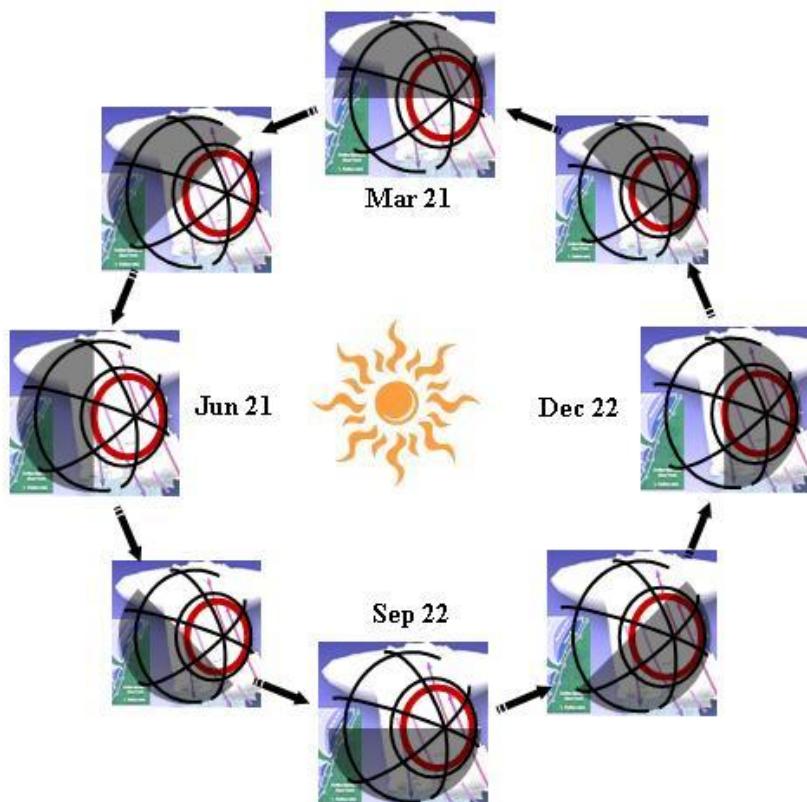


Figure 15.2. Duration and Angle of Incidence of Sun's Rays upon Arctic.



15.3. Water Areas.

15.3.1. The Arctic Ocean and parts of the North Atlantic and North Pacific Oceans comprise the principal water areas of the Arctic. A large portion of the water area encircling the North Pole is covered throughout the year by a deep layer of ice known as the permanent ice pack. This ice cover becomes larger during the winter months. In summer, the ice pack is crisscrossed by cracks and open areas. Even when ice covered, the water bodies act as temperature moderators since the ice and water below retain more heat than the surrounding cold land. Since the water moderates the temperatures, the Arctic summertime temperatures are still quite cool. Oceanic and coastal areas have a milder climate during winter than would be expected and a cool climate in summer.

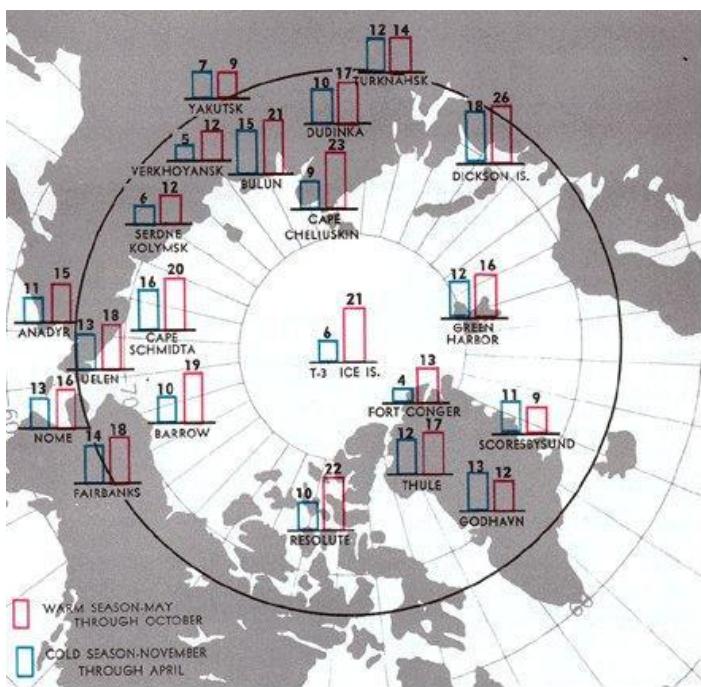
15.4. Land Areas.

15.4.1. Land areas in the Arctic include the northern portions of Europe and Asia (Eurasia), the Canadian Archipelago, parts of Alaska, most of Greenland, and the Svalbard Archipelago of Norway. The Arctic mountain ranges of Siberia, North America, and Greenland significantly contribute to the climatic and air mass characteristics of the region since these ranges are effective barriers to air movement. During periods of weak pressure gradient, air blocked by the mountains becomes stagnant. The stagnant air acquires the temperature and moisture characteristics of the underlying surface and becomes an air mass source region. But when the pressure gradient becomes quite strong during the winter, the winds blow strong in certain Arctic regions. The strongest winds are found on the eastern shores of Greenland and other lower lying areas downwind from frozen, higher terrain areas. Strong pressure gradients enable strong winds to blow from high pressure found in the interior land areas to low pressure found over the large water areas.

15.5. Weather.

15.5.1. The Arctic is usually very cold in winter with maritime locations warmer than the inland areas. Temperatures are usually well below zero in the northern part of the continental interior. During the long hours of darkness, temperatures range from -20°F to -40°F or colder. Verkhoyansk in north central Siberia has the record for the lowest officially recorded temperature in the Northern Hemisphere of -90°F. Snag, in the Yukon Territory of Canada, holds the North American record of -81°F. Arctic coastal areas in the winter usually average about 20°F warmer than the interior due to the modifying effect of water and ice. During summer, some areas are surprisingly warm. The interior areas have pleasantly warm summers with many hours of sunshine each day. [Figure 15.3](#) shows the average number of days each year with above freezing temperatures. Continental interior temperatures sometimes rise to the high 70s or 80s and occasionally into the 90s. Fort Yukon, located just north of the Arctic Circle, has recorded 100°F; Verkhoyansk has recorded 94°F. Arctic coastal areas have cool, short summers tempered by the persistent onshore winds and abundant cloudiness. Summer high temperatures occasionally reach the 60s with low temperatures consistently dipping below freezing. For example, during July, Barrow Point in northern Alaska has an average temperature of 40°F.

Figure 15.3. Average Number of Days with Temperatures above Freezing.



15.5.2. Cloudiness over the Arctic is at a minimum in winter and at a maximum in summer and fall. Coastal locations are particularly affected by prolonged periods of stratocumulus ceilings during the summer and early fall because of onshore flow from the Arctic Ocean. Scattered cumulus clouds form over interior regions during warm summer afternoons. Occasionally the interior experiences low-topped thunderstorms with the typical associated thunderstorm aviation hazards. Even a tornado or two has been observed in the vicinity of the Arctic Circle although they are extremely rare.

15.5.3. Precipitation (usually snow) in the Arctic is generally light. Annual amounts over the ice pack and along the coastal area are only 3 to 7 inches. Coastal areas with sharp, rising terrain and the interior areas are somewhat wetter, with annual amounts of 5 to 15 inches, mostly consisting of summer rain.

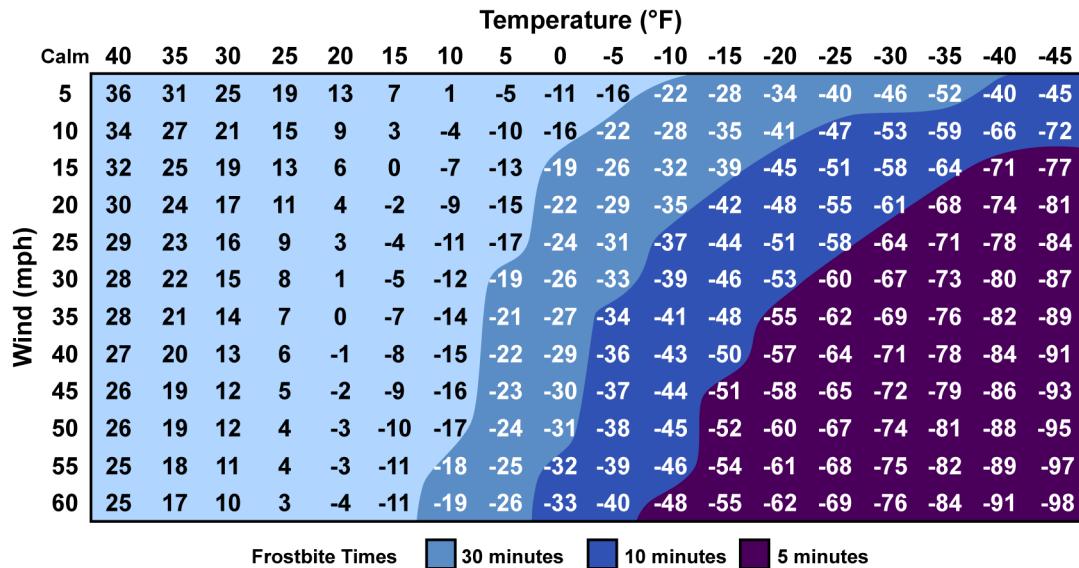
15.6. Winds.

15.6.1. Strong winds are more frequent during the fall and winter, especially along the coastal areas. A number of coastal stations have recorded wind speeds greater than 70 kts. Along the coast of Greenland, winds in excess of 90 kts are not uncommon in winter. Strong down-slope (fall) winds are very hazardous to aircrews. As these cold winds drain from high plateau or mountain areas down to lower elevations, their speed increases abruptly and may exceed 100 kts. With the lack of vegetation, the winds blow constantly at many locations with the speed averaging between 10 and 20 knots.

15.6.2. Strong winds combined with low temperatures make the Arctic very uncomfortable for human activity. The combination produces wind chill temperatures of -100°F or colder. This is computed according to the average wind speed without gusts with the free air temperature. The wind chill temperature is the sensed temperature on the human body taking into account the additional cooling effect of wind on the human body. It is the temperature

that equates the same rate of cooling under calm wind conditions. [Figure 15.4](#) is a chart used in computing wind chill factors.

Figure 15.4. Wind Chill Index.



15.7. Temperature.

15.7.1. The rapid increase in temperature with height at low levels over the Polar Regions during much of the winter causes interesting phenomena. Sound tends to carry great distances under these inversions. Light rays are bent as they pass through the inversion at low angles. This may cause the appearance of objects that are actually below the horizon. This effect, known as looming, is a mirage. Mirages that distort the apparent shape of the sun, moon, and other objects are common with these inversions.

15.8. Aurora.

15.8.1. Disturbances on the sun spew out bursts of energetic particles, a portion of which eventually reach the Earth. The high-energy particles strike the Earth's magnetic field and are carried along the magnetic field lines of the Earth where they tend to lower and converge near the geomagnetic poles. The electrons pass through rarefied gases of the outer atmosphere, illuminating similarly as a fluorescent lamp. The illuminated gases, more commonly known as the northern lights or the aurora borealis ([Figure 15.5](#)), have their counterpart in the Antarctic, where they are termed the aurora australis or southern lights. While the northern lights are frequently observed in the Arctic region, they have been seen as far south as Florida. Displays of aurora vary from a faint glow to that of a full moon. The lights frequently change shape and form. The most predominant color is pale green, but yellow, white, red, blue, and violet are sometimes observed. When auroras are active, high frequency (HF) radio communications may experience increased noise levels. At times, the noise levels are severe enough to totally degrade HF radio reception. The interference, which sounds like continuous static, lasts from 30 minutes to a few hours.

Figure 15.5. Aurora Borealis.



15.9. Visual Complications in Arctic Environment.

15.9.1. Snow-covered surfaces reflect much more light than darker surfaces. Snow often reflects Arctic sunlight sufficiently to blot out shadows. This markedly decreases the contrast between objects, and it becomes very difficult to distinguish between them. The landscape may merge into a featureless grayish-white field. Dark mountains in the distance may be easily recognized, but a crevasse normally directly in view may be undetected due to lack of contrast.

15.9.2. Illumination from the stars creates visibility far beyond that found elsewhere. Only during heavy overcasts does the Arctic night begin to approach the degree of darkness in lower latitudes. There are often long periods of moonlight, with the moon staying above the horizon for several days at a time.

15.9.3. For the most part, fewer severe weather hazards exist in the polar regions for aircraft at flight altitudes than in other regions. But parts of Greenland compete with the Aleutian Islands for the world's worst weather. During winter, many coastal and adjacent inland locations are frequently affected by synoptic storms which originate from the Gulf of Alaska and other similar semi-permanent low pressure areas. The interior is not quite as affected because of the dryness of the air and more stable dominant air masses. Expect turbulence especially in mountainous areas and flat areas adjacent to mountainous areas subject to strong pressure gradients. Strong channeled winds can cause moderate to severe low level turbulence below 5,000 feet.

15.9.4. Most Arctic air masses exhibit a pronounced dryness in all but the lowest layers. Occasionally, moisture works its way into the upper levels in maritime polar air masses. This, in turn, sets the stage for icing conditions. Icing can be encountered when passing through seemingly safe clouds of thin consistency. Rime icing is the dominant form of icing with some mixed icing forming along coastal mountain areas.

15.10. Arctic Whiteout.

15.10.1. Whiteout is a visibility-restricting phenomenon occurring in the polar regions when a uniformly overcast layer of clouds overlies a snow or ice covered surface. Most whiteouts occur when the cloud deck is relatively low and the sun is about 20° above the horizon.

15.10.2. The parallel rays from the sun are broken up and diffused when passing through the cloud layer so that they strike the snow surface from many angles ([Figure 15.6](#)). This diffused light reflects back and forth countless times between the snow and clouds until all shadows are eliminated. The result is a loss of depth perception. Low level flight and landings on snow surfaces become dangerous. Several disastrous aircraft crashes have occurred where whiteout conditions may have been a factor.

Figure 15.6. Whiteout Condition.



15.11. Restrictions to Flying.

15.11.1. There are several causes of reduced visibility in arctic regions. Aircrews flying over polar regions sometimes experience reduced horizontal and slant visibilities without any visible clouds or precipitation. This phenomenon is caused by extremely small ice particles in the atmosphere. It is also called Arctic mist when near the ground. Fog limits takeoff and landing in the polar regions more than any other visibility restriction. Water droplet fog is the main hazard to aircraft operators in coastal areas during the summer. It is a potential source of aircraft icing when temperatures are below freezing. Ice fog, a major operational hazard, is common in polar areas in winter. It forms in moist air during extremely cold weather. Combustion of aircraft fuel in air -20°F (-29°C) and colder produces the ice fog most frequently affecting aircraft operations. In supersaturated conditions, routine aircraft engine running or movement can supply enough exhaust impurities and moisture to cause deposition. The resulting ice fog may restrict visibilities enough to halt aircraft operations at the airfield for hours. Blowing snow is a greater hazard to flying operations in polar regions than in mid-latitudes because the snow is dry and fine and is easily picked up by light winds ([Figure 15.7](#)). Winds may raise the snow 1,000 feet AGL and produce drifts more than 30 feet deep, obscuring objects such as runway markers. Under certain conditions, a frequent and sudden increase in surface winds may cause visibility to drop from unlimited to near zero within a few minutes ([Figure 15.8](#)). Blowing snow is deceptive to inexperienced aircrews since the shallowness of the snow layer may permit good vertical visibility at the same time that the horizontal visibility within the layer is very poor.

Figure 15.7. Blowing Snow.**Figure 15.8. Visibility Reduced in Blowing Snow.**

15.11.2. In winter, temperatures may increase from -60°F at the surface to 0°F only 1,500 feet above the ground. Such a strong temperature inversion will dramatically decrease the climb performance of an aircraft. Anticipate them and be alert when the weather forecaster briefs the magnitude of the inversion. Then follow procedures listed in your flight manual for cold weather operation. When the mean actual temperature is much colder than a standard column of air, the distance between two flight levels will be less than the indicated altitude difference. Since the colder air shrinks the distance between two pressure levels, the actual vertical difference can be 80% of the distance when compared to a standard air column. For

example, when the vertical separation distance is expected to be 2,000 feet in a standard atmosphere, in extremely cold temperatures, the vertical distance can shrink to 1,600 feet.

15.11.3. Strong winds over rough terrain and very low temperatures are sometimes responsible for large errors in altimetry. Chapter 4 and the following section discuss the cause and effect of these errors. Aircrews should allow for an ample safety margin in selecting flight altitudes over mountainous terrain. Be alert when flying over extremely cold areas where the total air column is dramatically colder than a standard column of air. The actual temperature deviation will be dramatically different than the standard temperature. Safe terrain clearance is adversely affected by cold temperatures. The magnitude of this difference can become quite large during cold, winter conditions when flight is undertaken over mountains in cases where the altimeter setting is obtained from a station whose elevation is well below that of the highest peak to be crossed by an aircraft. The altimeter setting reported by a station at the base of the mountain will be higher than the actual altimeter setting on top of the mountain. If flying in the vicinity of a mountain top and you have your altimeter setting adjusted to a station setting at the base of the mountain, and the actual mean temperature is below the standard mean temperature, the indicated altitude shown by the aircraft instrument will be higher than the true altitude. This is a dangerous situation. The indicated altimeter setting can read as much as 1,500 feet too high. When the actual mean temperature exceeds that of a standard air column, then the altimeter setting at the mountain top will be higher than that of the station altimeter setting at the base of the mountain. The indicated altitude shown by the aircraft instrument will be lower than the true altitude.

15.11.4. In some parts of the United States such as the western plateau areas of Colorado, Montana, Idaho, Utah, and Wyoming, minimum temperatures of -30°F have been observed while in Alaska surface temperatures can be -50°F . It is not uncommon for weather stations to be located along the side of mountain peaks or ridges whose tops rise from 5,000 to 9,000 feet above the elevation of the stations. In some regions such as Greenland, the air traffic controller will issue a temperature corrected altitude for aircraft flying in the region during extreme cold temperature situations.

Chapter 16

VOLCANIC ASH

16.1. Introduction. Volcanic activity was not generally considered a severe threat to aircraft until the beginning of the 1980's. However, the first recorded volcanic eruption which had any appreciable impact on aviation occurred 22 March 1944 when Mount Vesuvius in Italy did more damage on an Allied airfield than would have likely happened from an enemy raid. The American 340th Bombardment Group's entire fleet of 88 North American B-25 Mitchells had their fabric control surfaces burned off and all Plexiglas pitted. The weight of ash which fell on the aircraft at their field near Naples, tipped them onto their tails. All 88 were severely damaged. It would be 36 years until another volcano would have so significant an impact on aviation. Why such a long time? Simply because we entered a period of about three decades in which there were very few explosive eruptions of the world's volcanoes. According to Decker and Decker in their book *Volcanoes*, there are about 40 subduction volcanoes (the type most often explosive) erupting each year. But during this period the Earth's volcanoes were uncharacteristically quiet.

16.2. History.

16.2.1. Since the early 1980's there have been several major volcanic eruptions around the world. These eruptions have given aircraft manufacturers and aviators more than they bargained for. Beginning in 1980 with the eruption of Mount Saint Helens in Washington state ([Figure 16l](#)), a new chapter began in the story of "aviation versus volcanoes." The decade held at least two major aviation encounters with volcanic ash which almost resulted in loss of life near Indonesia and adversely affected numerous flying operations in Alaska. Take a moment to re-live the following aircraft encounter with a dangerous volcanic ash cloud. Unfortunately this is but one incident; there have been many others. After reading the next few paragraphs, your concern and respect for volcanic phenomenon should be greatly enhanced.

Figure 16.1. Mount St Helens, May 1980.



16.3. Case Study.

16.3.1. In early summer of 1982, a British Airways B-747 with 247 passengers and 16 crew members was enroute from Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia to Perth, Australia. It was cruising at 37,000 feet. The onboard radar was painting nothing unusual. The captain had left the flight deck. The eerie blue glow of St. Elmo's Fire on windscreens and engine nacelles (coverings) was the first sign of trouble. The crew turned on anti-ice and igniters on all engines and switched on the seat belt lights in the passenger compartment as a precaution. Turning on the landing lights, the first officer peered out into the darkness. It seemed to him the plane was passing through a continuous, thin cloud.

16.3.2. The captain was called to return to the cockpit. Soon the crew noticed what seemed to be a bluish smoke on the flight deck and the acrid smell of ozone. A thin shaft of light projecting forward of the plane's four Rolls-Royce RB.211 engines appeared, somewhat similar to a flashlight's beam. Passengers began noticing the blue smoke in their cabin and became uneasy. Back in the cockpit, a light glowed on the flight engineer's panel indicating the number four engine's air supply was down. Within a short time the engine's rpm and pressure ratio began to drop and it wound to a halt. The crew began the engine fire checklist for number four but as it was completed, the number two engine also began to run down. The remaining two engines did the same. Now, all four engines were out! The plane was 80 nautical miles from land, 180 miles from a suitable runway.

16.3.3. To attempt to restart the engines would require the crew to maintain an indicated airspeed of 250 to 270 knots. At the same time, the aircraft was descending at a rate of 2,000 feet per minute. That meant a water landing in 18 minutes, time to glide perhaps halfway to Jakarta, Indonesia. Naturally the flight engineer worked continuously to restart the engines. By this time the plane was vibrating vigorously and flames were issuing from the tailpipes due to the restart attempts. In the cabin, passengers were listening to emergency ditching instructions.

16.3.4. Eight minutes after the first engine failure, as the plane descended through 13,000 feet, the number four engine relit. That helped save the day, because if just one engine stayed operational, the plane could slow its descent rate or maybe even maintain altitude. Over the next 5 minutes, the crew was able to get the remaining three engines relit and start a climb. At 15,000 feet however, the St. Elmo's fire was again observed and the crew began another descent. The number two engine stopped again and was shut down. The plane proceeded on to Jakarta on three engines and made an uneventful landing. The front windshields were so badly scratched and the landing lights rendered so useless that the crew requested the plane be towed off the runway after landing.

16.3.5. This incident was the result of a cloud of volcanic ash from Java's Galunggung volcano which had erupted about an hour before the B-747 left Kuala Lumpur. Analyzing the flight data recorders, engineers learned that the four engines had begun to lose power imperceptibly about 5 minutes before the shutdowns began. The plane gradually lost speed and the autopilot increased the pitch angle to maintain the assigned altitude until the first engine failure and long descent began. Inspection of the engines revealed light erosion of the cowl leading edges and pieces of fused volcanic ash debris in the tailpipes. After being torn down, the engines were found to have various degrees of erosion. In the hot sections, fused volcanic dust had built up on the walls and blades. Outside the plane, sandblasting (ash-blasting) had eroded the central portions of the windshields and frosted over the landing lights. This harrowing experience is a good example of hazards faced by aircrews resulting from unreported volcanic events and from resulting ash clouds which often cannot be detected.

16.4. Avoiding Volcanic Ash.

16.4.1. The ash plume may not be visible, especially in instrument conditions or at night, and even if visible it is difficult to distinguish between an ash cloud and an ordinary weather cloud. Volcanic ash clouds are not displayed on airborne or Air Traffic Control (ATC) radar. In fact, radar reflectivity of volcanic ash is roughly a million times less than that of a cumuliform cloud. Pilots must rely on reports from controllers and other pilots to determine the location of the ash cloud and use that information to remain well clear of the area. If you see a volcanic eruption and have not been previously notified of it, you may be the first person to observe it--especially in remote locations. In this case, immediately contact ATC personnel and alert them to the hazard. Remember, you are the most important link in volcano observation and warning programs for aviators.

16.4.2. When landing at airports where volcanic ash has been deposited on the runway, be aware that even a thin layer of dry ash can be detrimental to braking action. Wet ash can also impair your braking action. It is recommended that reverse thrust be limited to minimum practical to lessen the possibility of reduced visibility and engine ingestion of airborne ash. When departing from affected airfields, you should avoid operating in visible airborne ash. It is also recommended that flap extension be delayed until initiating the before takeoff checklist and that a rolling takeoff be executed to avoid blowing ash back into the air.

16.4.3. What happens to a turbo jet engine which causes such severe and costly damage? After all, these engines have a long history of operating in desert areas such as the American Southwest where a high level of dust in the atmosphere is commonplace. In Kuwait, fine-grained dust is said to exist suspended in the atmosphere up to 15,000 feet. The usual

experience is that such dust causes slow erosion of the engine's compressor blades but no case of major engine failure is known to have resulted from these conditions. Volcanic dust can cause rapid erosion and damage to the internal components of engines. As it builds up, blockage of the high pressure turbine nozzle guide vanes and high pressure turbine cooling holes can cause surge, loss of thrust and/or high exhaust gas temperature. Because the greatest constituent of volcanic ash is silicon, it forms a glazing on the hot turbine components. The ash is also highly abrasive and may cause serious damage not only to the engines, but to leading wing edges, windshields, and landing lights as well. The ash may also block the pitot static system causing unreliable airspeed indications.

16.5. Volcano Reporting.

16.5.1. Since 1982, the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) has worked to address the volcanic threat to aviation safety worldwide. In the United States, the US Geological Survey is the principle federal agency with responsibility for assessing volcanic hazards and monitoring active volcanoes. This work is carried out primarily from observatories in Hawaii, Alaska, California, Washington and the nine regional Volcanic Ash Advisory Centers (VAACs) around the world. Volcanic Ash Advisory Centers (VAAC) are a group of experts responsible for coordinating and disseminating information on atmospheric volcanic ash clouds that may endanger aviation. As of 2010, there are nine Volcanic Ash Advisory Centers located around the world, each one focusing on a particular geographical region. Their analyses are made public in the form of Volcanic Ash Advisories (VAA) and often incorporate the results of computer simulation models called Volcanic Ash Transport and Dispersion (VATD). The worldwide network of Volcanic Ash Advisory Centers was set up by the ICAO, an agency of the United Nations. The individual VAACs are run as part of national weather forecasting organizations of the country where they are based, e.g. the US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) or the British Met Office. NOAA and the FAA have responsibilities for dealing with the hazard of volcanic ash clouds that affect aviation operations in the United States. Methods used for assessing volcanic activity include analysis of data from satellites, upper-air wind sensors, lightning detection systems, pilot reports, and even specialized radars. Computer models have been developed to help forecast the trajectory of volcanic ash clouds so that Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMETs) and other timely products may be issued to warn aviators of this potentially lethal hazard. **Figure 16.2** is an advisory product showing the transport and dispersion of an ash plume from the December 2010 eruption of Fuego in Guatemala. The figure shows the flight levels at which the ash plume may have been encountered along flight routes over the area. **Figure 16.3** is a dispersion visualization chart produced by the Air Force Weather Agency (AFWA) showing the dispersion forecast for Sakura-Jima near Kyushu, Japan in August 2011.

Figure 16.2. Volcanic Ash Advisory Product.

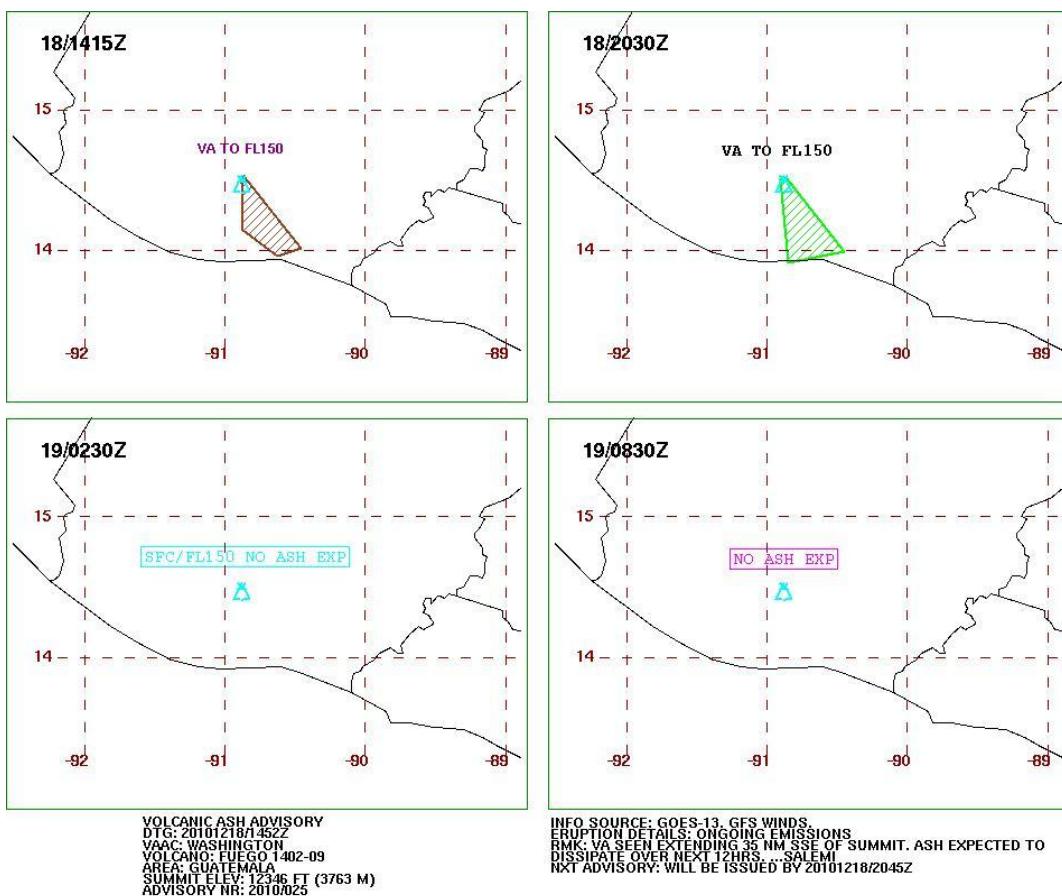
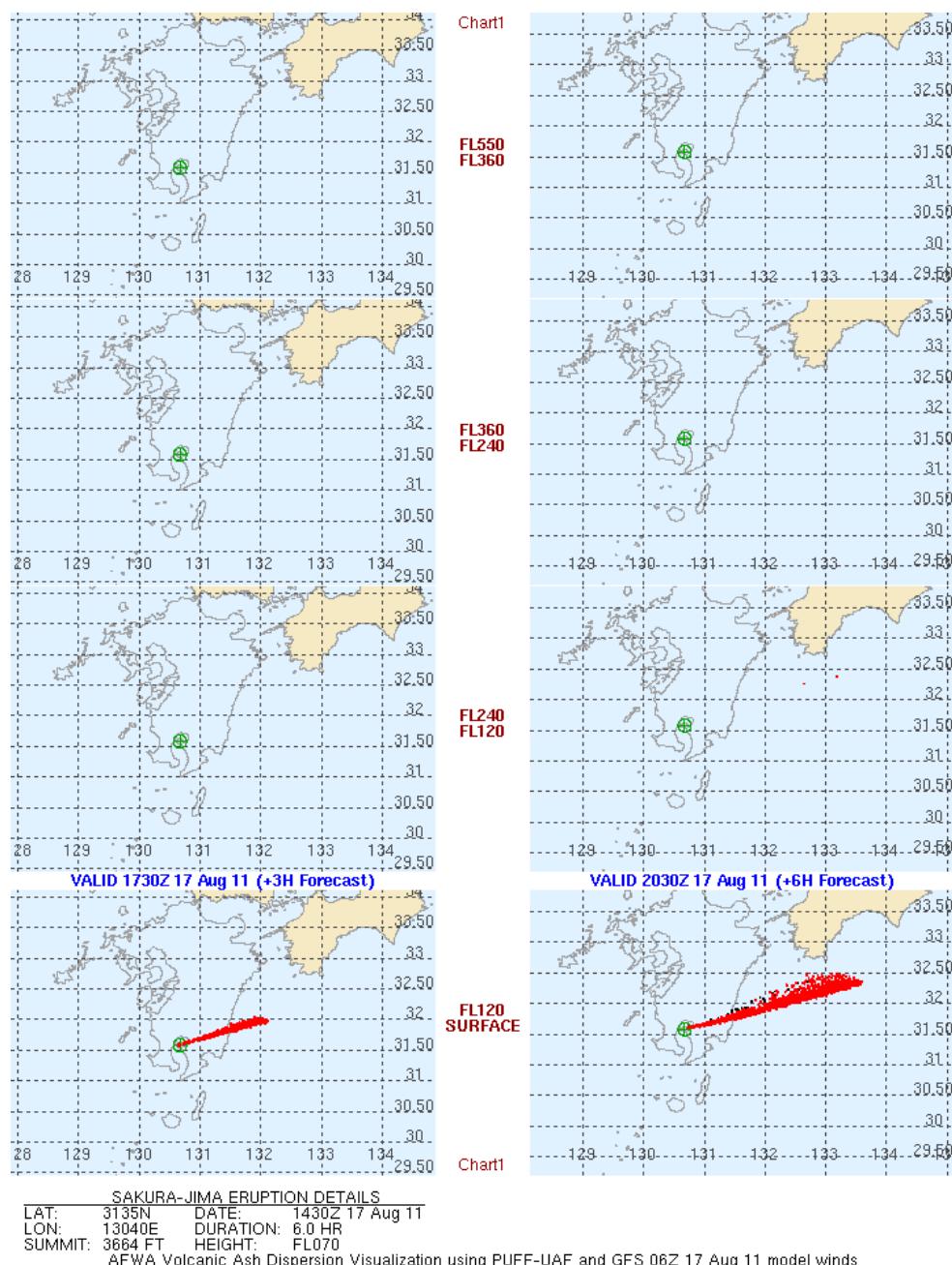


Figure 16.3. AFWA Volcanic Ash Dispersion Visualization.



16.5.2. Aircrew Notes.

16.5.2.1. *It is recommended that pilots encountering an ash cloud immediately reduce thrust to idle (altitude permitting) and reverse course in order to escape from the cloud. Ash clouds may extend for hundreds of miles so pilots should not attempt to fly through or climb out of the cloud. The following procedures are recommended. Some of these may not apply to your particular aircraft.*

16.5.2.2. *Disengage the autothrottle if engaged. This will prevent the autothrottle from increasing engine thrust.*

16.5.2.3. *Turn on continuous ignition.*

16.5.2.4. *Turn on all accessory airbleeds including all air conditioning packs, nacelles, and wing anti-ice. This will provide an additional engine stall margin by reducing engine pressure.*

16.5.2.5. *It may become necessary to shut down and then restart engines to prevent exceeding engine temperature limits. Also, volcanic ash may block the pitot system resulting in unreliable airspeed indications.*

16.5.3. You should make every attempt to remain on the upwind side of the volcano. Flightcrews who have encountered volcanic ash clouds provided the following indicators to help you recognize this hazard.

16.5.3.1. Smoke or dust appearing in the cockpit.

16.5.3.2. An acrid odor similar to electrical smoke.

16.5.3.3. At night, St. Elmo's fire or other static discharges accompanied by a bright orange glow in the engine inlets.

16.5.3.4. At night, or in dark clouds, landing lights cast dark distinct shadows in ash clouds, unlike the fuzzy, indistinct shadows cast against weather clouds.

16.5.3.5. Multiple engine malfunctions, such as compressor stalls, increasing exhaust gas temperatures, torching from tailpipes and flameouts.

16.5.3.6. A fire warning in forward cargo areas.

Chapter 17

NUMERICAL WEATHER MODELS

17.1. Numerical Weather Prediction.

17.1.1. Numerical Weather Prediction (NWP) uses the power of computers to make a forecast. Complex computer programs, also known as forecast models, run on supercomputers and provide predictions of many atmospheric variables such as temperature, pressure, wind, and precipitation. A forecaster examines how the features predicted by the computer will interact to produce the day's weather.

17.1.2. The NWP method is flawed in that the equations used by the models to simulate the atmosphere are not precise, and the solutions to the equations themselves are only approximations to the exact solutions, which are impossible to calculate. This leads to some error in the predictions. In addition, there are many gaps in the initial data since we do not receive many weather observations from areas in the mountains or over the ocean. If the initial state is not completely known, the computer's prediction of how that initial state will evolve will not be entirely accurate.

17.1.3. Despite these flaws, numerical weather prediction is quite adept at forecasting day-to-day weather changes.

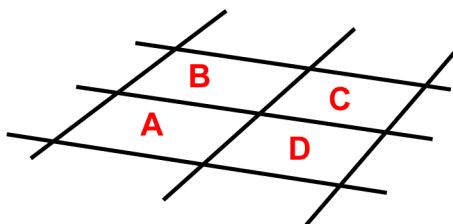
17.1.4. Numerical weather forecasting is based on a set of rather straightforward ideas:

17.1.4.1. Weather elements are interconnected, so that as change occurs at one location, this in turn influences the weather elements at other locations

17.1.4.2. Weather elements change sequentially through time, so that if you know the temperature at one location, it is then possible to 'predict' the temperature at the same place in some subsequent time (i.e., 24 hours from now).

17.1.4.3. It is possible to use computers and simultaneous equations dealing with changes in atmospheric components, to model what the changes in weather elements will be over time.

Figure 17.1. NWP Grid Example.



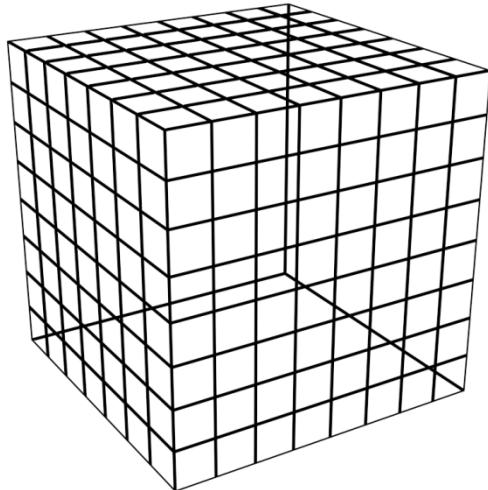
17.1.5. In the diagram above (Figure 17.1), the surface of the Earth has been broken up into a set of equally spaced grids, with a weather station at the center of each grid. If the temperature at A changes, this will influence the temperature at B, C, and D. These changes in temperature will in turn influence the temperature at A. As you now know this

formulation is too simplistic, since a change in temperature will also produce a change in pressure, winds, humidity, etc.

17.1.6. A numerical weather prediction model works by using a previous, short-range model forecast that has been corrected by observations to closely resemble the actual atmospheric state at model run time. A large set of partial differential equations is then integrated forward in time to create a forecast of the future atmospheric state for grid points that are situated across the model domain.

17.1.7. Because our surface weather, in the larger scale, is 'controlled' by the upper air circulation, most numerical models deal with the Earth not just as a set of grids on the Earth's surface, but extend the grids upward into the atmosphere, dividing these columns of the atmosphere into squares or cubes. Some models use as many as 50-90 different levels of the atmosphere in their analysis. The image below ([Figure 17.2](#)) depicts how you might visualize one of these grids, composed of vertically stacked cubes.

Figure 17.2. NWP Extended Grid Example.



17.1.8. Obviously this method of calculating the changes in a number of different weather elements with their myriad interactions, for a globe or a region divided into 20-100 different grids with 50-90 different levels, requires the use of high speed supercomputers.

17.2. Model Types and Limitations.

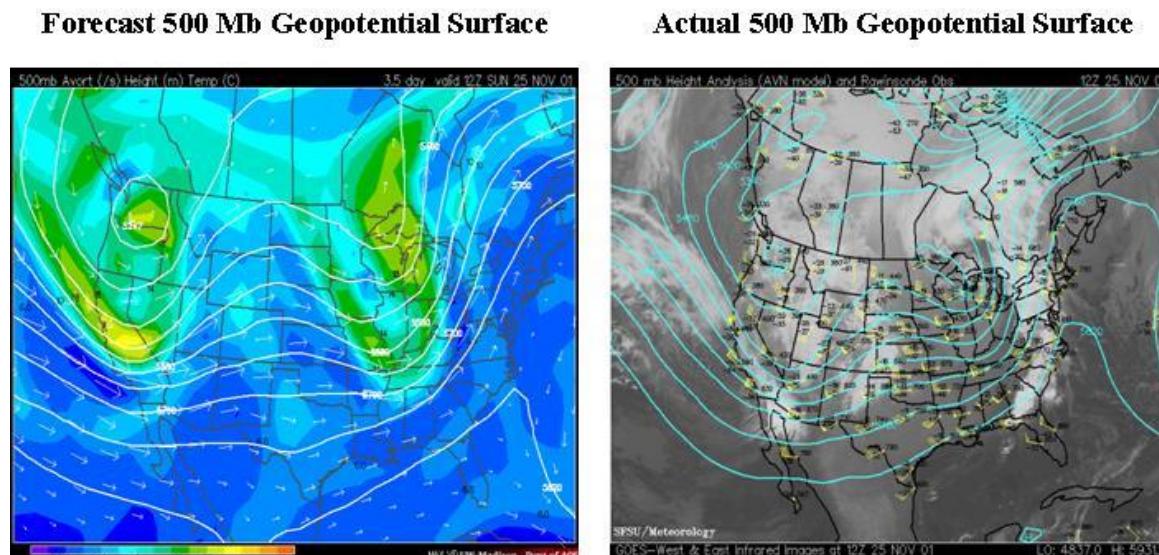
17.2.1. As supercomputers have become more powerful, NWP models have become a more common feature in forecasting. Some are intended to forecast a limited range of weather elements for rather specific locations, or conditions, while others are intended to give the best predictions possible for the globe or some particular continent. In general we subdivide the models into groups on the basis of the length of time they forecast into the future, short term, usually less than 24 hours, intermediate term, often 24-72 hours and longer term, 72 hours out to a year. Another way to categorize the models is on the basis of their aerial scope or extent, and therefore you will often find discussions of "regional" (or mesoscale) and "global" models. You'll often see models characterized by their resolution, or the size of the grid they use in their computational process. It's important to note that model resolution and type impacts the range of phenomena a given model will be able to forecast. A global model

will generally be good at forecasting large-scale atmospheric features over a relatively long period of time, while a mesoscale model with smaller grid boxes will be able to simulate finer-scale atmospheric features (e.g., thunderstorms), but not necessarily accurately because of the increased complexity of smaller-scale flows.

17.3. Validating a Numerical Forecast.

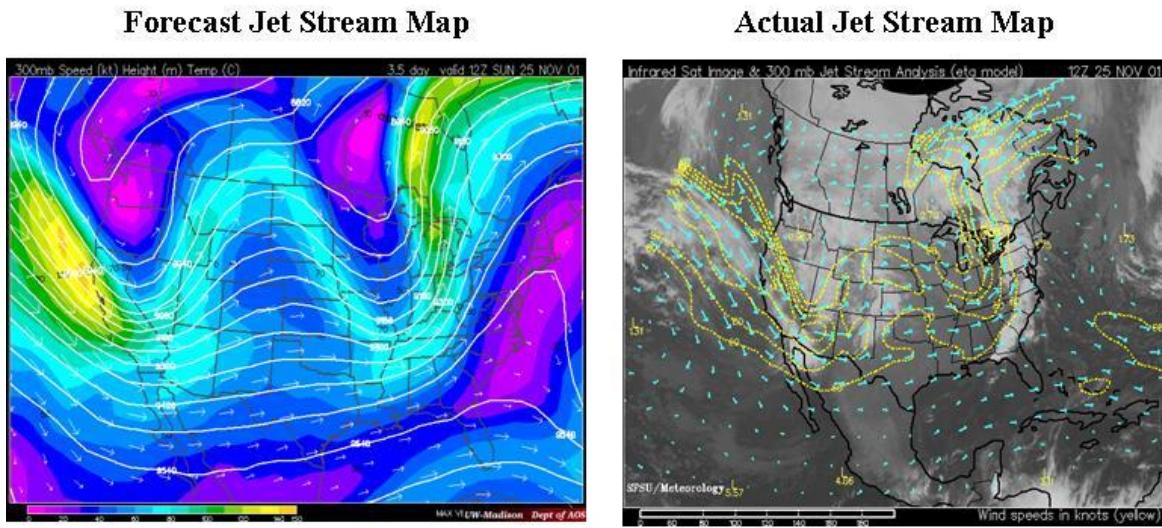
17.3.1. To validate the accuracy of a model, you have to compare the forecast products with similar products that reflected actual conditions for the forecast period. The comparison method here is fairly crude (i.e., using primarily visual analyses of the patterns, but it does seem to yield reasonable results).

Figure 17.3. 500 Mb Geopotential Surface Maps,



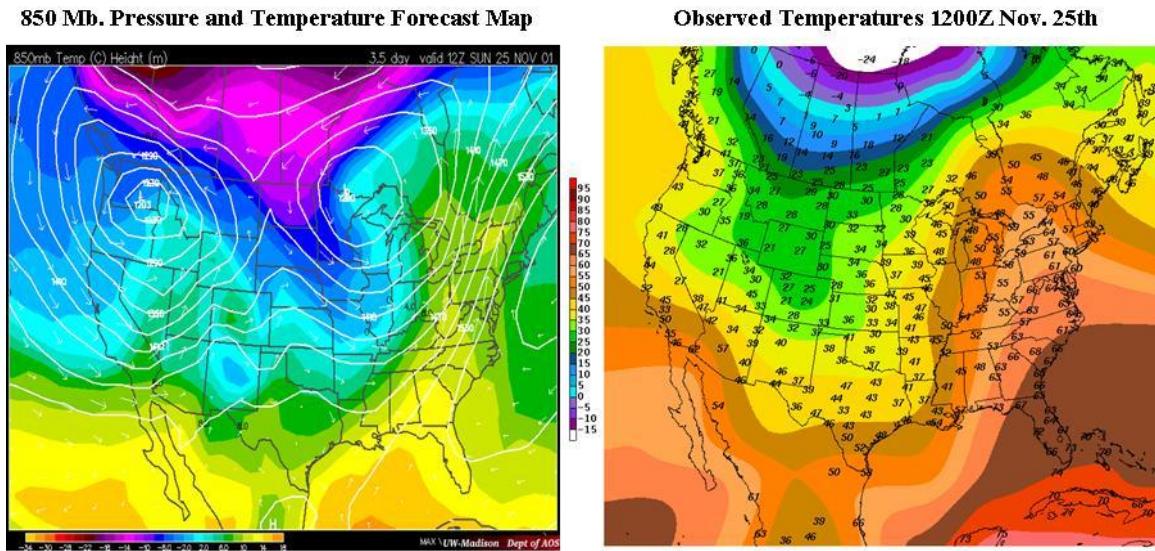
The two maps above represent the forecast and actual 500 Mb geopotential surfaces for Nov. 25th. As you can see the two surfaces exhibit the same overall form, a trough, another in the Midwest with a weak ridge in between. The forecast location of the western trough, with its lowest values near Western Washington, and its extension southward to near the California, Nevada and Arizona border is also quite accurate. The actual location of the eastern trough seems to be shifted slightly to the east of its forecast location, however again the low center is nearly on target, over Lake Superior. Finally the location of the major areas of convergence, across Southern California, and northward across Lower Michigan seem to be good fits.

Figure 17.4. The Jet Stream Maps.



The jet stream forecast seemed to work out fairly well. Again the trough and ridge locations are fairly good, and the areas of maximum convergence and highest jet stream winds are almost exactly where they were forecast to be, relative to the ridge axis. The California jet streak is slightly eastward of its forecast location, lying more along the western border of the state than along the coast. Again the model seemed to have problems forecasting air flow over the ridge, with the overall flow being further south, and somewhat stronger than it was supposed to be in this area. Conversely the maximum winds forecast for the jet streaks are remarkably close, the forecast for the western area was 150 knots, the observed value 145 knots, while the maximum value for the eastern jet streak was forecast to be 120 knots, and the observed value was 121 knots.

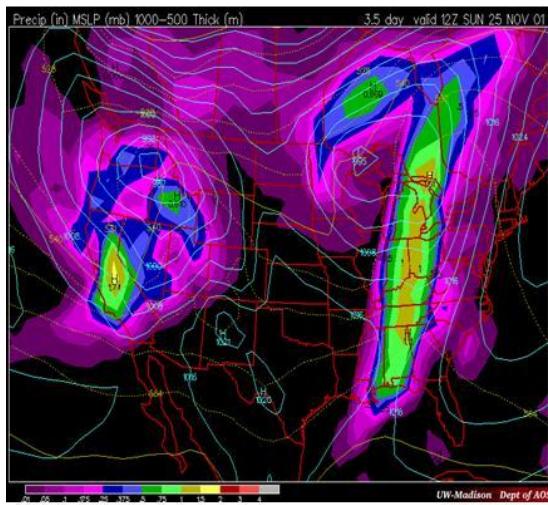
Figure 17.5. Temperature Forecast Maps.



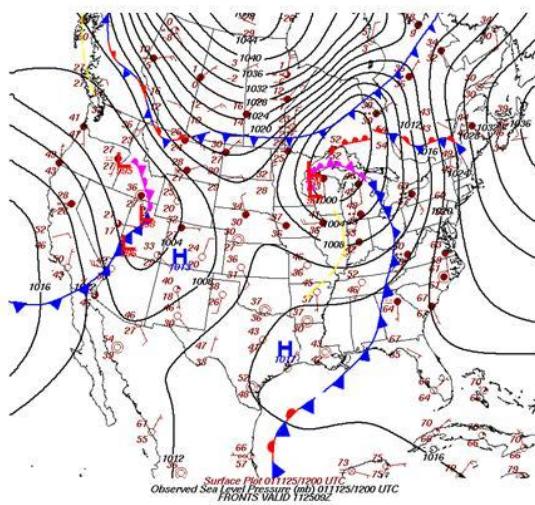
The overall form of the forecast temperature map seems to conform fairly well to the actual observed temperature pattern. There is a pool of cold air over North Central Canada, with a lobe extending southward into the Central Plains states. Along the East Coast a tongue of warm air extends from Florida northward into Quebec. The primary departures of the forecast pattern from the observed pattern seems to be that the central lobe of cold air is somewhat west of its predicted location, and the warm air flow across the southwest up into Southern Idaho isn't as strong as it had been forecast to be.

Figure 17.6. Surface Pressures.

Forecast Surface Pressures

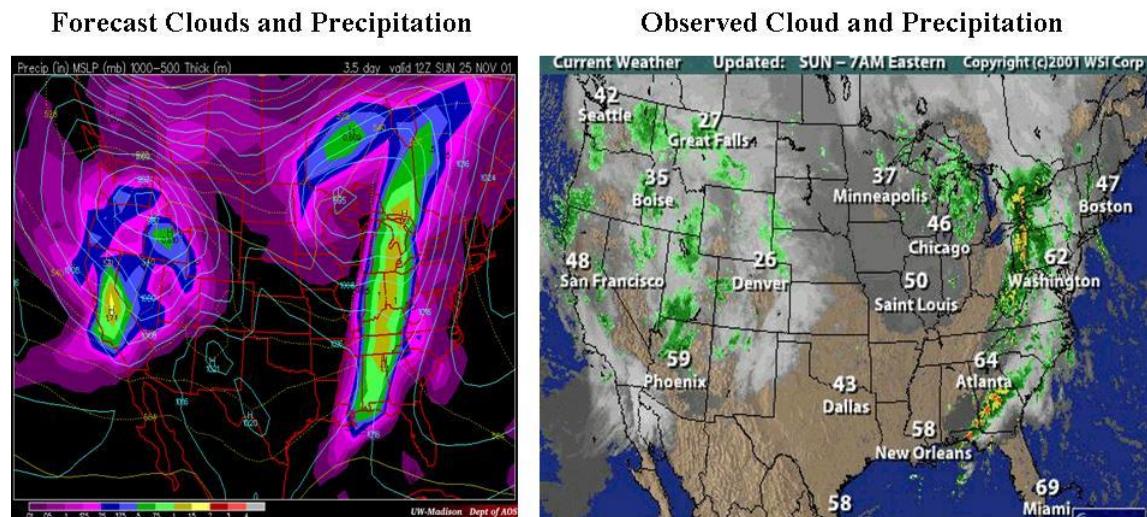


Observed Surface Pressures



The overall surface pressure patterns forecast seemed to be fairly good. The observed centers of the low in the west and the one in the Midwest are both within 100 miles of their forecast location. Again the southern high pressure system, in between the two lows didn't fare quite as well, with its actual central location being quite a bit to the east of its forecast location. The forecast for the relative intensity of the two low pressure cells was amazingly accurate, the western low was forecast to have a central low pressure of 987, its actual pressure was 995, while the eastern low was forecast to have a central low pressure of 995 and its observed pressure was 990. The forecast for the central pressure for the high was 1020; its actual value was 1017.

Figure 17.7. Atmospheric Moisture and Precipitation.



The overall pattern of the forecast moisture generally conformed closely to the observed clouds and rainfall. The primary areas of lifting and precipitation were in the correct places, relative to the pressure cells and pressure centers. In both the west and the east the major areas of convergence were shifted more to the east than forecast. For example the area of major convergence and precipitation in the east was forecast to be along the western border of Ohio at 1200Z, when in fact it was along the eastern border of that state. As noted in the initial segment of this discussion, on the Numeric Models page, Charleston received .75 of an inch of rain as the line of convergence passed across the area, which was exactly in the middle of the forecast range for precipitation from this system. The more rapid movement of the convergence band also is reflected in the cloud cover recorded in the Midwest, with the forecast indicating clouds extending as far south as the Iowa - Missouri border at 1200Z when in fact the wrap around clouds extended all the way to the Ohio River in Southern Illinois.

17.3.2. In general the MRF model did a credible job of forecasting in this case study. Some parameters were forecast better than others, but overall forecast weather phenomena were generally where they were supposed to be, at the intensity they were actually observed to be.

17.4. Summary. Numerical models have become the mainstay of weather forecasting. The case study we examined for Nov. 25th is a good example of why, with the output of the models being remarkably close to the actual conditions that were observed on that day. In this example, the model was accurate, but was it just a “good day” or is this an anomaly? This cannot be known, but overall, forecasters have come to depend on numerical forecasts to make their lives easier, but as you know, even with numerical models, forecasters still have days when their forecasts are obviously in error.

Chapter 18

SPACE WEATHER

18.1. Introduction. Although exact definitions vary, *space* is broadly defined as the region above the earth's lower atmosphere where an object can maintain an orbit around the planet. An object can just maintain orbit—albeit temporary—starting around 100 kilometers in altitude. *Space weather* describes the phenomena in space that affect the earth, its atmosphere, and our technological systems that operate on or around the earth. Space weather is a consequence of solar activity and its interaction with the earth's magnetic field and atmosphere. Space weather impacts many systems, including communications, radar, navigation, electronics, power grids, spacecraft, aircraft, and even the human body. Impacts to these systems occur in orbit, throughout the atmosphere, at the earth's surface, and even below the surface.

18.2. Regions of Space Weather. Space weather is divided into several distinct regions based on what forces dominate: the sun, the medium between the earth and sun, the volume dominated by the earth's magnetic field, the upper atmosphere (above about 50 kilometers in altitude) and the lower atmosphere (the extent of aviation operations).

18.2.1. **The Sun.** The origin of space weather phenomena in the near earth environment lies primarily with the sun, the closest star to Earth. The sun is more than a million times larger than the earth and over 300 thousand times more massive. Three quarters of the sun consists of hydrogen; the remainder consists of helium and trace amounts of heavier elements such as oxygen, carbon, iron, neon, nitrogen, silicon, magnesium, sulfur, and calcium.

18.2.1.1. At the solar core, intense pressures and high temperatures due to gravitational forces cause hydrogen to fuse into helium ([Figure 18.1](#)). This nuclear fusion process fuels the sun, converting over 4 trillion tons of mass into radiation *every second*. By repeated absorption and emission, this radiation eventually works its way outward through the radiative zone. Then, by heat-driven mixing in the convective zone, energy is brought to the solar surface, where heat and light escape into space from what we observe as the *photosphere* ([Figure 18.2](#)).

Figure 18.1. Nuclear Fusion at Solar Core.

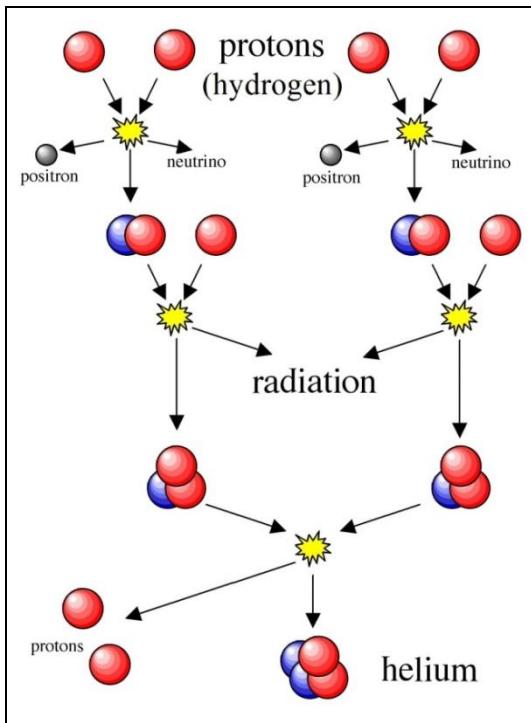
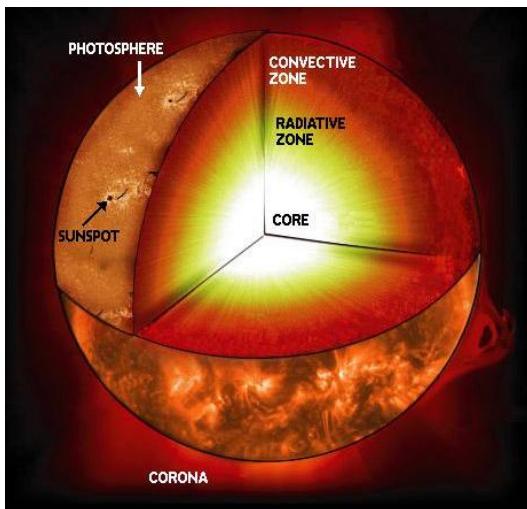
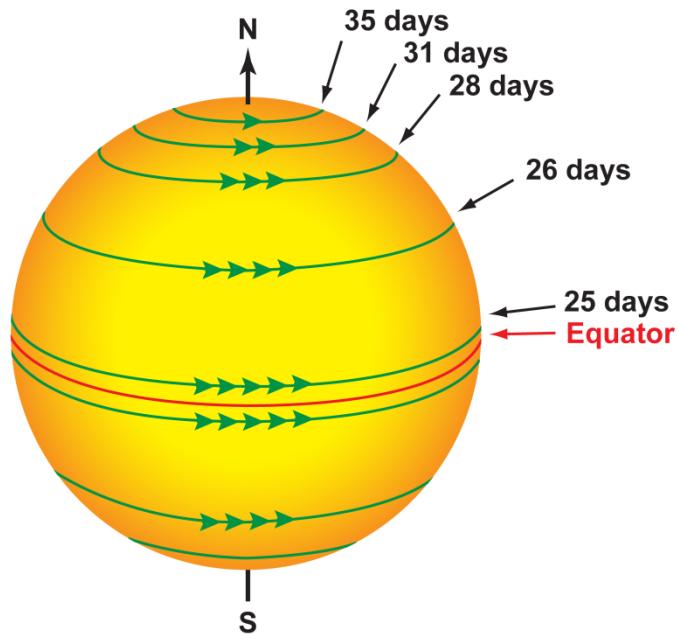


Figure 18.2. Basic Solar Structure.



18.2.1.2. Like the earth, the sun rotates on an axis. While the earth takes about 24 hours to rotate once, the sun takes about a month to rotate once. Actually, since the sun is not solid, it rotates at different rates. At the solar equator it takes about 25 earth days to rotate once, and at the solar poles it takes about 35 days ([Figure 18.3](#)).

Figure 18.3. Solar Rotation.



18.2.1.3. Unlike the earth, which has a relatively fixed magnetic field, the sun constantly generates and rearranges its magnetic field into complex structures. These ever changing structures trap solar material above the photosphere in the region called the solar *corona*. In **Figure 18.4**, note that looping magnetic fields above the photosphere can be seen by striations in coronal material. The image is taken in extreme ultraviolet and therefore shows that the photosphere, below the corona, appears black in the image, as the photosphere does not emit extreme ultraviolet or x-rays. In the corona, the thinly distributed atoms are heated and *ionized*—that is, one or more electrons are stripped from an atom, leaving a positively charged *ion*. Since the hydrogen atom consists of a positively-charged proton surrounded by one negatively-charged electron, a hydrogen ion is simply a proton—the nucleus of the hydrogen atom. The helium atom consists of two protons bound to two neutrons, which are surrounded by two electrons. There are two types of helium ions: one with only a single electron removed, and the other with both electrons removed, leaving the helium nucleus. A helium nucleus is also called an alpha particle. The collection of positively-charged ions and their negatively-charged electrons is called *plasma* and is considered the fourth state of matter (solid, liquid, and gas being the first three). It differs from a gas in that it can become magnetized and easily conducts electricity. **Figure 18.5** shows hydrogen ions (protons) and helium nuclei that make up most solar plasma in the corona. Arrows show independent motion of electrons (negative charges) and ions (positive charges).

Figure 18.4. Solar Magnetic Field Traps Solar Material in Corona.

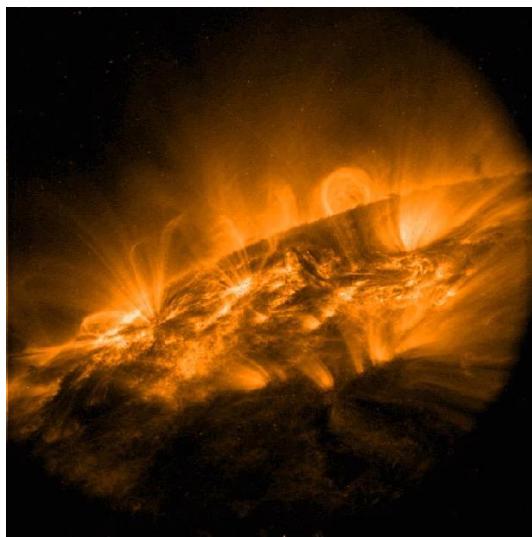
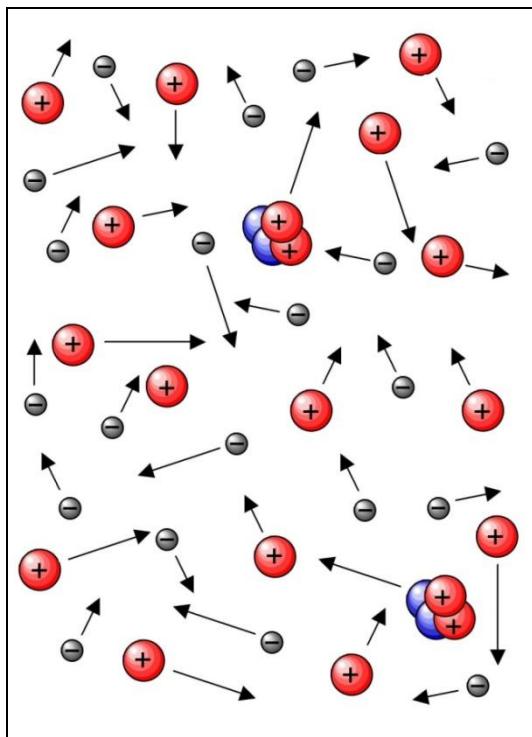


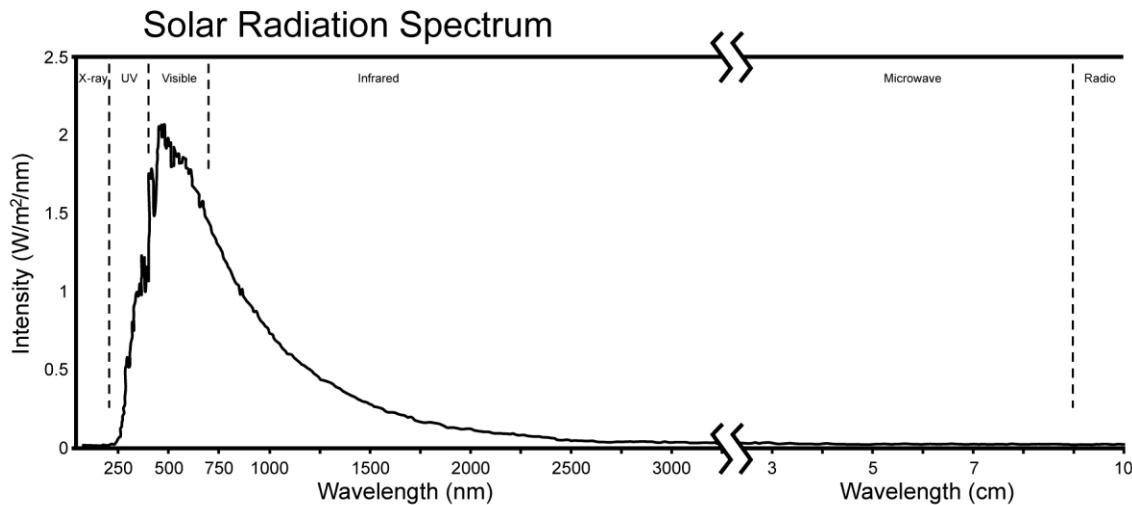
Figure 18.5. Solar Plasma (hydrogen nuclei (protons), helium nuclei (alpha particles), and free electrons).



18.2.1.4. Because of its heat, solar plasma in the corona emits ultraviolet, x-ray radiation; because of its low density, it also emits microwave and radio waves. This coronal radiation contributes to the light and heat already output from the photosphere. In [Figure 18.6](#), note that 99% of the sun's energy comes as light, heat (infrared), and ultraviolet radiation from the photosphere. The remaining 1% comes as radio, microwave, extreme ultraviolet radiation, and x-rays from the corona. Although coronal radiation is a small fraction of the total solar electromagnetic output, it turns out that x-rays and radio waves

have the most impact on technological systems here on earth and in orbit. Furthermore, radiation at these wavelengths varies the most during solar activity, while light and heat output remains virtually constant.

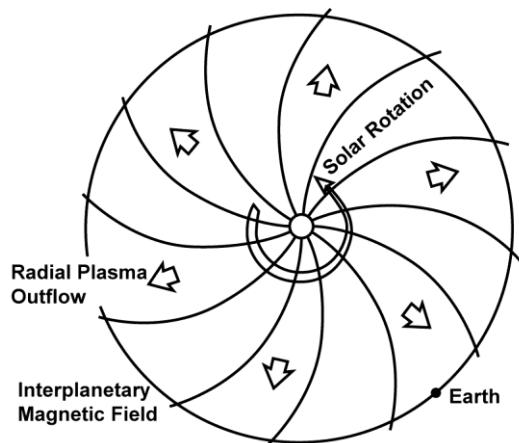
Figure 18.6. Solar Electromagnetic Spectrum (note scale change at longer wavelengths).



18.2.2. The Interplanetary Medium.

18.2.2.1. Hot plasma in the solar corona constantly leaks outward away from the sun, generating the thin flow of charged particles (electrons, protons, and alpha particles) that we call the *solar wind*, which carries with it a small part of the solar magnetic field. The solar wind streams radially away from the sun at about 400 kilometers *per second*, and because the sun rotates, the magnetic field embedded in the solar wind is stretched into a spiral shape. This spiral magnetic field is called the *interplanetary magnetic field*—IMF for short, as illustrated in **Figure 18.7**, where the sun is located at the center.

Figure 18.7. The Interplanetary Magnetic Field (IMF).



18.2.2.2. The solar wind sweeps past the earth and dominates most of the space in the solar system, far beyond the orbit of Pluto. However, keep in mind how thin the solar wind really is, despite its name, which connotes flags blowing in a stiff gale. The density

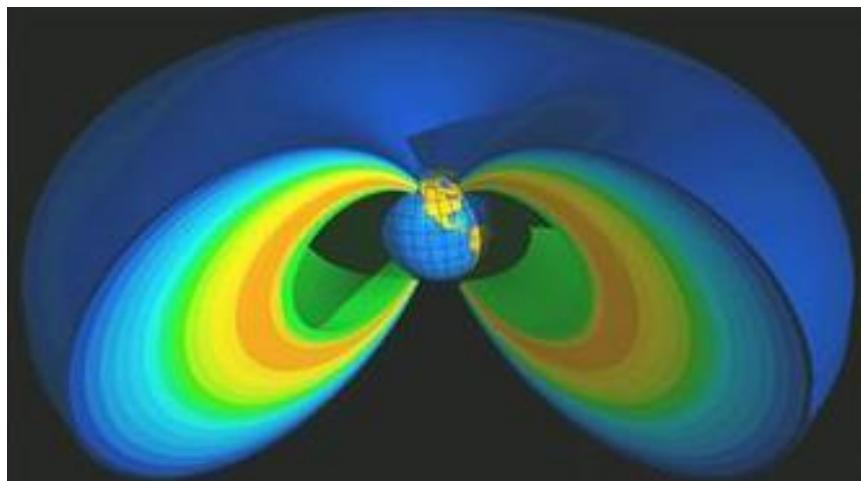
of the solar wind ranges from a few to a hundred particles per cubic centimeter, while the air you are breathing right now is a hundred thousand trillion times denser. In fact, the best vacuum chambers found in physics labs are hard pressed to create such low pressures and densities exhibited by the solar wind.

18.2.2.3. The interplanetary medium is also infiltrated by *galactic cosmic rays*, which do not result from solar activity but instead originate from very distant events such as exploding stars and black holes consuming stars. Galactic cosmic rays primarily consist of electrons and ions—protons mostly—that travel close to the speed of light. They streak through the solar system from every direction at a generally steady rate. Incidentally, other interesting phenomena that occur in the interplanetary medium are rarely considered space weather phenomena per se because impact is so limited. These include meteor showers, asteroids, and comets. These are more properly considered astronomical events, which may affect space weather in some limited fashion.

18.2.3. The Earth's Magnetosphere.

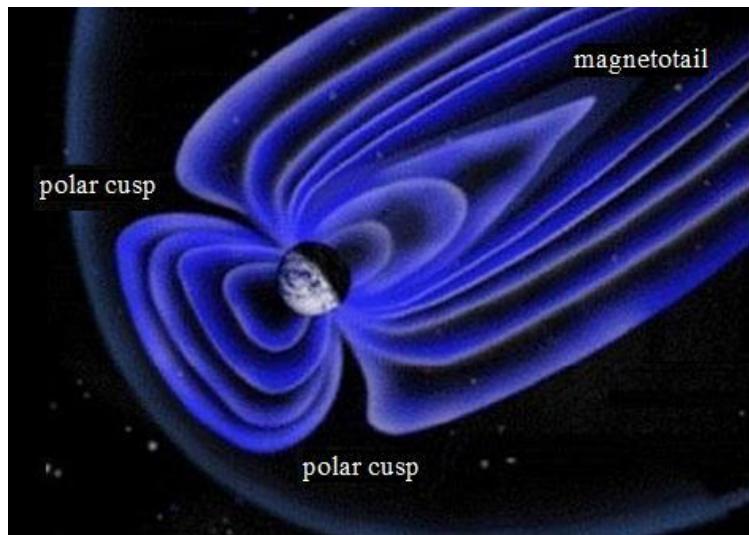
18.2.3.1. The earth has a relatively fixed magnetic field, which is shaped like a dipole. This means that lines of magnetic force emanate from the south polar region, loop out into space, and converge into the north polar region. Projected in three dimensions, the dipole magnetic field of the earth resembles a donut out to about 50 thousand kilometers (**Figure 18.8**). Beyond this, the magnetic field of the earth is weak enough to be swept aside by the solar wind, which carries with it the IMF, a weak magnetic field pulled from the sun's outer corona.

Figure 18.8. Inner Magnetosphere of the Earth.



18.2.3.2. Solar wind action against the earth's magnetic field compresses the earth's field on the sunlit hemisphere, but drags it millions of kilometers in the anti-sunward direction, forming a bullet or comet shaped cavity, wherein the earth's magnetic field dominates (**Figure 18.9**). This cavity, despite its shape, is called the *magnetosphere*. The forward edge of the magnetosphere—on the sun side—is called the *nose* of the magnetosphere. The elongated portion behind the earth is called the *tail* of the magnetosphere, or simply the *magnetotail*.

Figure 18.9. Solar Wind Interaction with Earth's Magnetosphere.



18.2.3.3. The magnetosphere deflects the solar wind—and the embedded IMF—around the earth, generally keeping solar particles out of the magnetosphere. However, where the earth's magnetosphere is especially weak, solar wind particles can be entrained. This occurs in the magnetotail, where solar wind plasma can be turbulently mixed into the magnetosphere. Charged particles can also enter the magnetosphere through small areas called *polar cusps* (or *polar clefts*), which are located above the earth's magnetic poles toward the forward edge of the magnetosphere.

18.2.3.4. Charged particles remain trapped in the earth's magnetosphere unless they collide into the earth's atmosphere or manage to escape down the magnetotail during the turbulent mixing with the solar wind that regularly occurs there.

18.2.4. The Ionosphere.

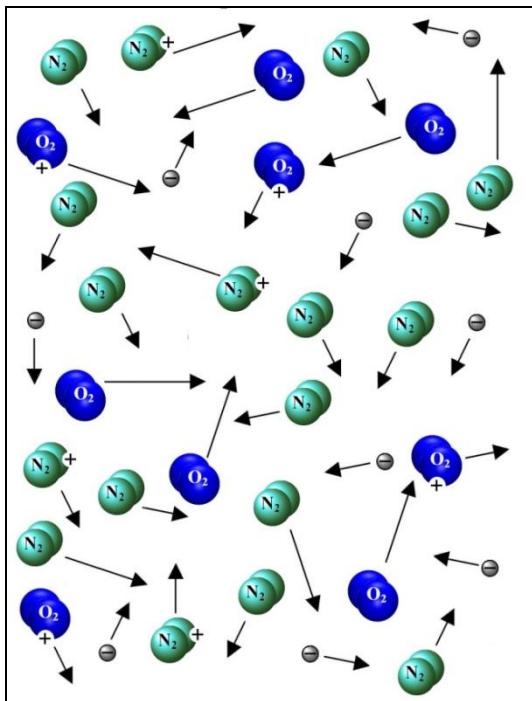
18.2.4.1. The earth's atmosphere can be organized according to temperature (see [Figure 1.2](#)). The *troposphere* is the lowest layer and is characterized by decreasing temperatures with height, up to about 12 kilometers (40,000 feet) in altitude. Much of the sun's light and heat radiation is absorbed at the earth's surface, which in turn acts as a heat source for the troposphere and virtually all meteorological processes that occur therein.

18.2.4.2. Above this lies the *stratosphere*, which is characterized by a slow increase in temperature with height, from about 12 kilometers to 50 kilometers (40,000 – 165,000 feet) in altitude. Aircraft fly their highest in the bottom portion of this layer. The upper portion of this layer is heated by absorption of ultraviolet radiation from the sun. This absorption process involves the creation and destruction of *ozone* (O_3 , the tri-atomic form of oxygen).

18.2.4.3. Above this lies the *mesosphere*, perhaps the least understood layer of the atmosphere because it's too high for aircraft and too low for satellites. This layer is characterized by another decrease of temperature with height, from about 50 kilometers to 85 kilometers (165,000 – 280,000 feet) in altitude.

18.2.4.4. Above this lies the *thermosphere*, which is characterized by another increase in temperature with height, above about 85 kilometers (280,000 feet) in altitude. This increase in temperature is due to the absorption of ultraviolet radiation and x-rays from the sun. In the process of absorbing this radiation, some (not all) nitrogen and oxygen molecules in the thermosphere become ionized (Figure 18.10). The resulting ions and their free electrons create a layer we call the *ionosphere*. This layer of partially-ionized air stretches from about 70 kilometers above the earth's surface (the upper part of the mesosphere), through the thermosphere, and thins upward into space.

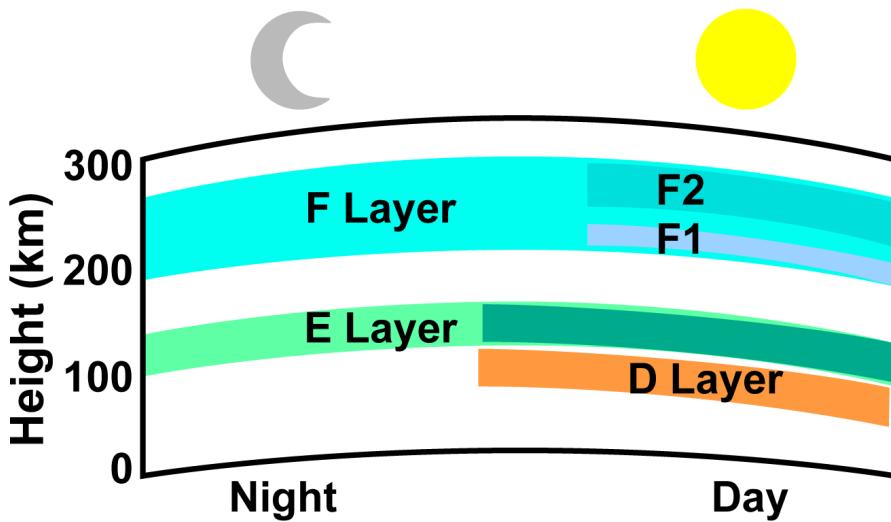
Figure 18.10. Ionospheric Plasma Environment (O_2 , N_2 , their ions, and electrons).



18.2.4.5. The principle characteristic of the ionosphere is its capacity to refract—or deflect—radio waves. As we utilize radio frequencies in numerous applications, the ionosphere can be an important tool or a debilitating obstacle.

18.2.4.6. As illustrated in Figure 18.11, the ionosphere is divided into several layers, each characterized by unique chemistry and physics that is driven by atmospheric density, solar radiation, and type of atmospheric molecule or atom present in that layer.

Figure 18.11. Ionospheric Layers.



18.2.4.7. The lowest layer—the *D-layer*, or *D region*—resides between about 70 and 90 kilometers in altitude. In this layer, solar x-rays ionize molecular oxygen (O_2) and nitrogen (N_2), including nitric oxide (NO). However, at night the electrons and ions in this layer quickly recombine into neutral molecules. Therefore, the D-layer exists only when the sun is up.

18.2.4.8. The next ionospheric layer—the *E-layer*, or *E region*—is located between 90 and 140 kilometers in altitude. In this layer, solar ultraviolet radiation ionizes O_2 , N_2 , and NO; but because the atmosphere is thinner at this higher altitude, electrons and ions recombine at a slower rate at night. Thus the E-layer maintains itself throughout the night, although it weakens considerably. Only at high latitudes (e.g. Alaska, Canada, Arctic Ocean), during the weeks and months of winter darkness, does the E-layer completely disappear.

18.2.4.9. The next ionospheric layer—the *F-layer*, or *F region*—is located between 140 and 300 kilometers in altitude. In this layer, solar ultraviolet radiation primarily ionizes atomic oxygen (O), but the extremely thin atmosphere at this altitude inhibits the electron and ion recombination process, so compared to the entire ionospheric structure this layer remains the most ionized, day and night. A unique feature of the F-layer is that it splits into two distinct ionized levels during the day. The lower is the *F1-layer*, the upper is the *F2-layer*.

18.2.5. Radio Refraction in the Ionosphere.

18.2.5.1. Similar to the way visible light refracts (or “bends”) when it passes through a transparent medium such as water or glass, radio waves refract when they pass through the ionosphere. This can be useful...or it can be a nuisance. The key is compensating for its effects, especially when it is changing, for example during sunrise or sunset. The various radio and radar bands interact with the earth’s surface, the atmosphere, and the ionosphere differently.

18.2.5.2. *Low Frequency* (LF) signals range in frequency between 30 kilohertz and 300 kilohertz (kHz). The ionosphere strongly absorbs LF signals; however, LF waves hug the surface of the earth, which made them useful as a navigation aid (e.g. LORAN—Long Range Navigation) until recently, as GPS (Global Positioning System) navigation has replaced this function.

18.2.5.3. *Medium Frequency* (MF) signals range in frequency between 300 kHz and 3 megahertz (MHz). Like LF signals, MF signals hug the earth's surface and are used in long range navigation near the surface—ideal for maritime and low-level aviation operations (e.g. NDB—Non-Directional Beacon; GMDSS—Global Maritime Distress Safety System). Incidentally, the AM radio band (Amplitude Modulation) uses MF signals; however, during the day these communication signals are absorbed by the ionospheric D-layer and so their range is limited. At night AM radio can transmit hundreds of kilometers because MF signals refract in the higher ionospheric layers with little absorption. The time around sunrise and sunset pose special problems for MF communication signals as the ionosphere is changing rapidly during these times.

18.2.5.4. *High Frequency* (HF) signals also known as *Shortwave*, range in frequency between 3 MHz and 30 MHz. Since the ionosphere easily refracts HF signals back to the earth, this radio band is especially valuable for transmitting signals thousands of kilometers, around the curvature of the earth. It is useful for communicating across continents, across oceans, and into high latitudes (the Arctic and Antarctic) where satellite communications is limited or impossible. HF signals rely heavily on ionospheric conditions and are particularly susceptible to ionospheric disturbances.

18.2.5.5. *Very High Frequency* (VHF) signals range in frequency between 30 MHz and 300 MHz. The ionosphere refracts VHF signals somewhat, but not enough to reliably transmit a signal over the horizon back to the earth's surface; therefore, VHF signals are limited to shorter distances between two points on the earth's surface and also used for satellite communications. Aviation use of the VHF radio band includes VOR (VHF Omni-directional Radio Range, DME (Distance Measuring Equipment), TACAN (Tactical Air Navigation System), ILS (Instrument Landing System), and ATC (Air Traffic Control) communications. Incidentally, the FM radio band (Frequency Modulation) and some television broadcasting use VHF signals. The following three radio bands fall under the broad definition of the microwave radio band.

18.2.5.6. *Ultra High Frequency* (UHF) signals range in frequency between 300 MHz and 3 gigahertz (GHz). The ionosphere affects UHF less than VHF, so this band is ideal for line-of-sight (LOS) communications, including satellite communications and GPS navigation signals. Many radars operate in the UHF radio band (e.g. the L-band and S-band). Incidentally, some television broadcasting use UHF signals.

18.2.5.7. *Super High Frequency* (SHF) signals range in frequency between 3 GHz and 30 GHz and are heavily used for satellite communications, primarily because the ionosphere has little effect on SHF signals. On the other hand, heavy precipitation—rain, snow, and hail—can attenuate such signals; therefore LOS signals between two points at the earth's surface can have limited range. Many radars also operate in the SHF radio band (e.g. the IEEE C-band, X-band, and K-bands), especially for use in tracking objects in orbit.

18.2.5.8. *Extremely High Frequency* (EHF) signals range in frequency between 30 GHz and 300 GHz. Again, ideal for satellite communications as the ionosphere has virtually no effect on EHF signals. However, precipitation, clouds, and even water vapor make portions of this radio band of little use.

18.3. Solar Activity. The sun is not static sphere of hot plasma, but instead has its own “seasons” of activity. The sun exhibits differential rotation—that is, it rotates at different rates like fluid in a whirlpool.

18.3.1. Active Regions. At the solar equator it takes about 25 earth days to rotate once, and at the solar poles it takes about 35 days. In consequence of this differential rotation, magnetic fields that erupt from the solar surface can become twisted and subsequently strengthened in some regions. [Figure 18.12](#) shows how complex these field patterns are. The stronger magnetic fields on the photosphere drive away the hotter solar material, leaving relatively cooler areas on the photosphere. These dark patches are called *sunspots* and indicate the presence of strong magnetic fields erupting from the solar interior ([Figure 18.13](#)). The darkest center of a sunspot is called the *umbra*, and it is where strong magnetic fields are vertical to the solar surface. The surrounding less dark area of the sunspot is called the *penumbra*; it is where strong magnetic fields are more horizontal to the solar surface.

Figure 18.12. Solar Magnetic Fields.

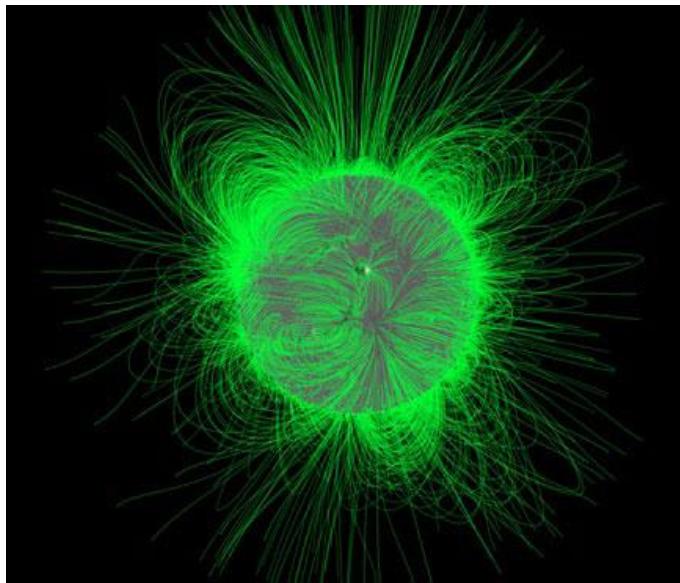
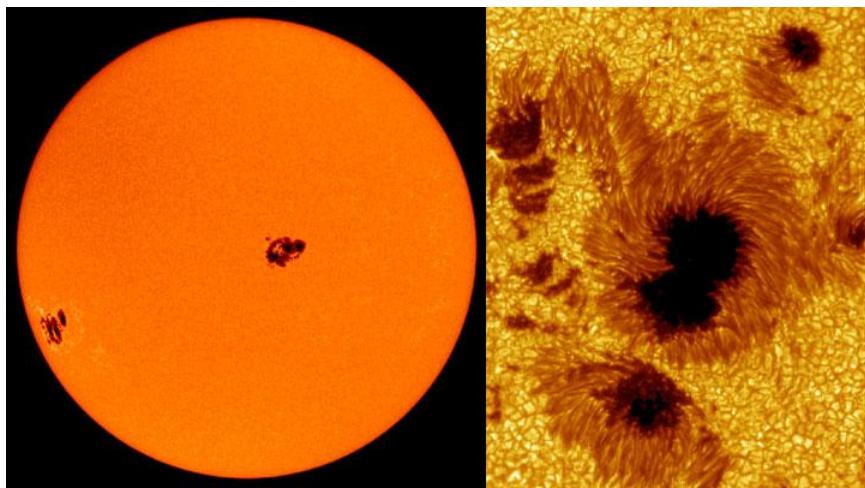


Figure 18.13. Sunspots on the Photosphere (whole disk image and close-up of sunspots).



18.3.2. Solar Flares (X-ray Flares, Radio Bursts, Energetic Proton Events). When strong magnetic fields of active regions become tangled in complex knot-like structures, the fields can suddenly “snap” in order to reorient themselves into less complex configurations. Such an explosive event is called a *solar flare*, which generates a flash of x-rays, bursts of radio waves, and energetic charged particles—particularly protons (Figures 18.14 through 18.16). If these important space weather phenomena are directed toward the earth, they significantly impact technological systems that operate on the earth and in orbit above. The flash of x-rays—or *x-ray flare*—lasts only tens of minutes, as does the burst of radio waves, but the energetic protons can become trapped in the earth’s magnetosphere and persist for days after a solar flare.

Figure 18.14. Solar Flare (x-ray image and traces for two x-ray wavelengths).

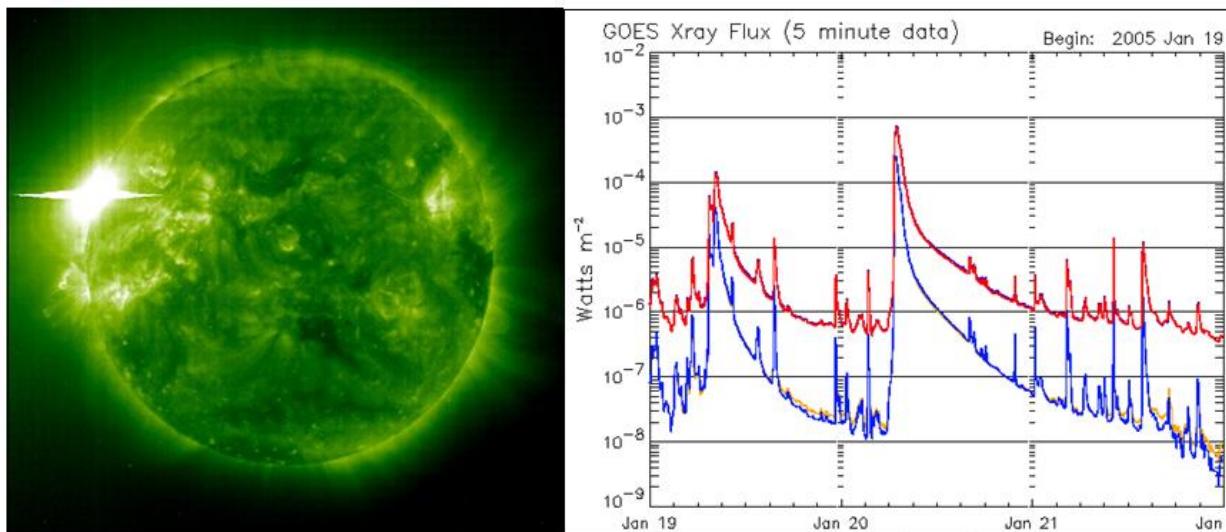


Figure 18.15. Radio Burst Trace.

(Note major radio interference in HF and MF radio bands and minor interference in the lower VHF radio band. Constant horizontal lines indicate anthropogenic signals such as radio broadcast stations).

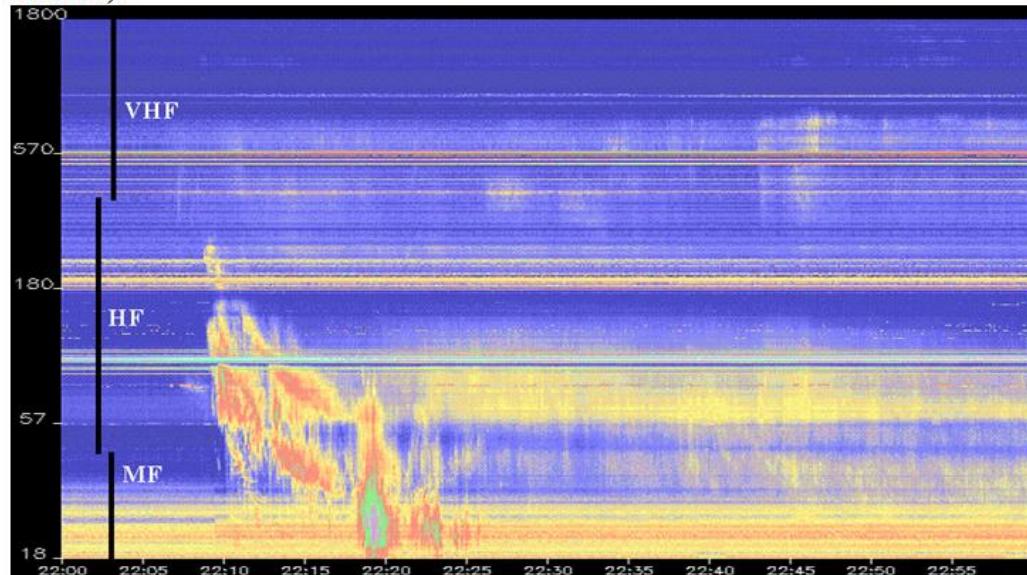
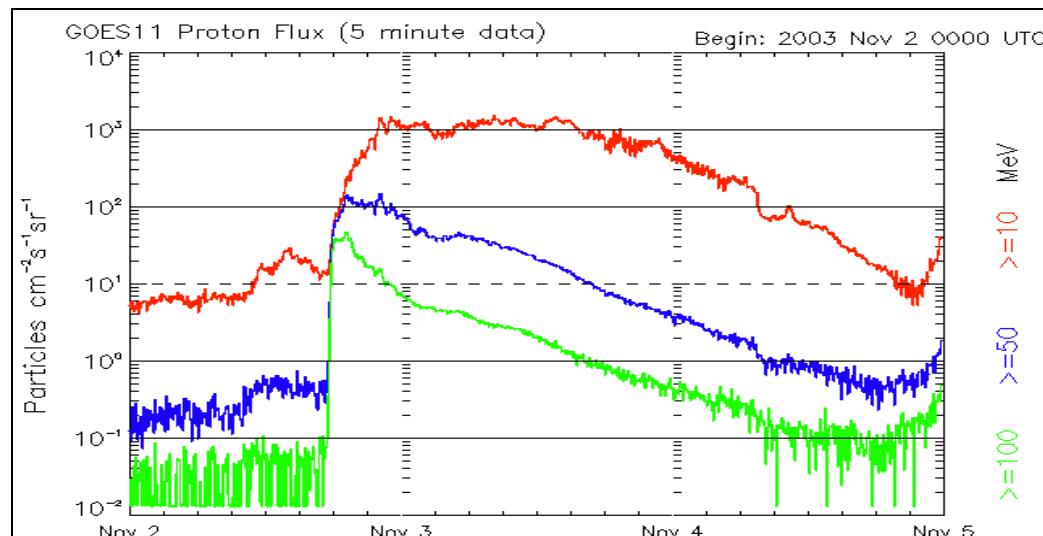


Figure 18.16. Energetic Proton Trace (showing three different proton energy levels).



18.3.3. Coronal Mass Ejections (CME).

18.3.3.1. Sometimes complex magnetic fields in the solar corona can reorient in such a way that a batch of solar plasma is ejected into space—a *coronal mass ejection*, or *CME* for short. [Figure 18.17](#) shows such an ejection: an occulting disk covers the brilliant light of the sun (indicated by a white circle) while the much dimmer CME appears in the overexposed image at the lower left quadrant. A CME can be triggered by a solar flare, but not necessarily. A CME injects into the solar wind major discontinuities of density, speed, temperature, and magnetic fields. Such a discontinuity in the IMF is illustrated in

Figure 18.18 (along with other discontinuities). These discontinuities propagate outward away from the sun, and if they are oriented toward the earth, they strike the magnetosphere, and important consequences result for a number of technological systems.

18.3.3.2. A CME can erupt from the sun within tens of minutes to hours; however, it takes another two days or so for the full effects of solar wind discontinuities to be evident at the earth.

Figure 18.17. Coronal Mass Ejection (CME).

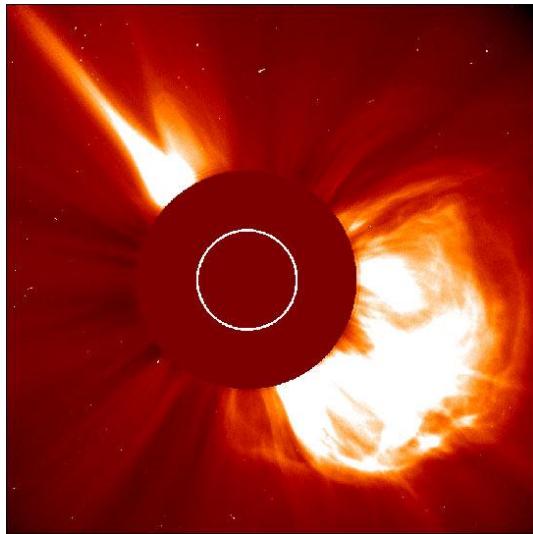
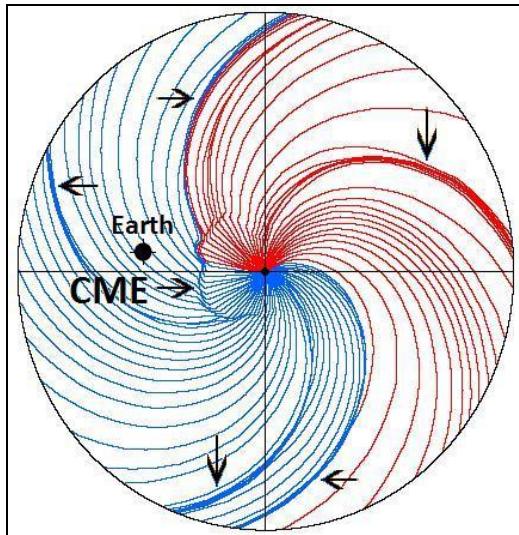


Figure 18.18. IMF Discontinuity Due to CME.



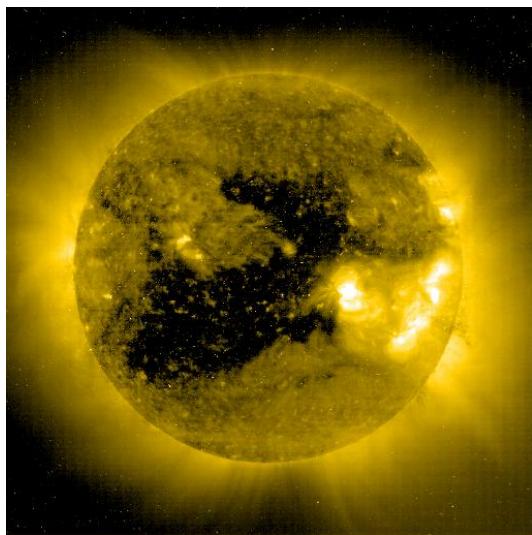
18.3.4. Coronal Holes.

18.3.4.1. Within the complex mix of magnetic fields in and above the solar surface, large areas of magnetic fields leading straight into space can form (see **Figure 18.12**, above top of solar disk). These areas allow charged particles—especially electrons—to accelerate away from the sun. As viewed in x-ray or extreme ultraviolet imagery, these regions

appear dark compared to the glow of hot plasma trapped in other places in the corona. Thus the description: *coronal hole*, which can be seen in the ultraviolet image of the sun in **Figure 18.19**. The stream of fast particles that originate from coronal holes causes significant discontinuities in the solar wind. Such features are labeled by other black arrows in **Figure 18.18**. These solar wind discontinuities, if directed toward the earth, strike the magnetosphere, and important consequences result for a number of technological systems.

18.3.4.2. Coronal holes often last weeks to months, but because the sun rotates, the fast particles streaming from one particular coronal hole tend to periodically sweep past the earth every four weeks or so.

Figure 18.19. Coronal Hole Seen In Ultraviolet Imagery (large dark blob at center of disk).



18.3.5. Geomagnetic Storms.

18.3.5.1. As the solar wind deflects around the earth, it compresses the sunward side of the earth's magnetosphere, flows around the sides, and drags it out the back side, forming the magnetotail. Discontinuities of density, speed, temperature, and magnetic field embedded in the solar wind disrupt the magnetosphere, causing fluctuations in magnetic field strength and orientation—a *geomagnetic storm*. These solar wind discontinuities are caused by CMEs, coronal holes, and other IMF features.

18.3.5.2. When the earth's magnetosphere is thus disturbed, solar wind plasma—consisting mostly of electrons and protons—is turbulently mixed into the magnetotail. Surges of these charged particles accelerate along magnetic field lines toward the earth, where they mix with ions and electrons already trapped in the magnetosphere (**Figure 18.20**). A fluctuating magnetosphere during a *geomagnetic storm* accelerates trapped charged particles—chiefly electrons—to high energies. Some of these particles funnel into the polar regions—following magnetic field lines that converge there—and then collide with molecules in the thermosphere. We can see this effect as the *aurora* (**Figure 18.21**). In the Arctic, these shifting glowing curtains of light are called the *aurora borealis*, or *northern lights*. Less observed, but occurring with equal intensity and frequency in the Antarctic are the *aurora australis*—or *southern lights*.

Figure 18.20. Geomagnetic Storm Diagram.

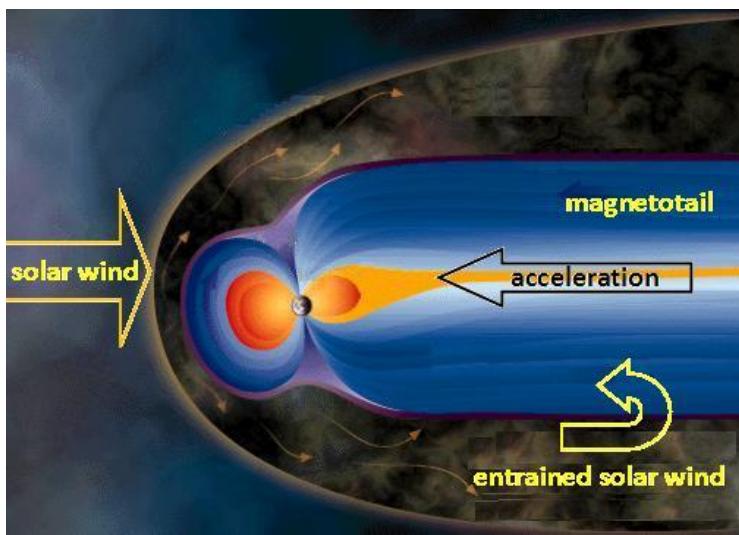


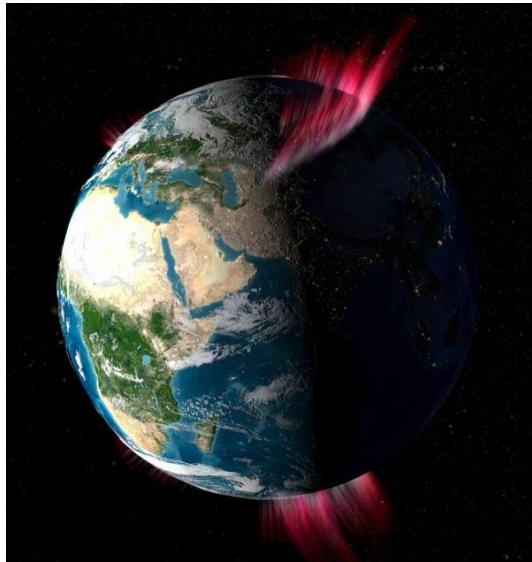
Figure 18.21. Aurora Viewed from the Space Shuttle.



18.3.5.3. The earth's magnetic field axis is tilted about 11° from the earth's rotational axis. This places the magnetic north pole somewhere northeast of Canada in the Arctic Ocean and the magnetic south pole over the Australian side of Antarctica. It is thought that gradual circulation changes in the earth's outer liquid iron core cause the magnetic poles to wander slowly over the years. During a geomagnetic storm the aurora forms crowns of light, the *auroral ovals*, which are centered on the magnetic poles (Figure 18.22)—not the geographic poles. That is why the aurora borealis is observed more in Alaska and Canada than at the same geographic latitudes in Scandinavia and Siberia. The more severe the geomagnetic storm, the larger the auroral ovals become, and the further south the northern lights are observed. During especially severe geomagnetic storms, the aurora is observed as far south as Mexico and Cuba!

18.3.5.4. The disrupting force of solar wind discontinuities usually last for a number of hours; however, the residual effects on the magnetosphere can persist for many hours—even days—longer.

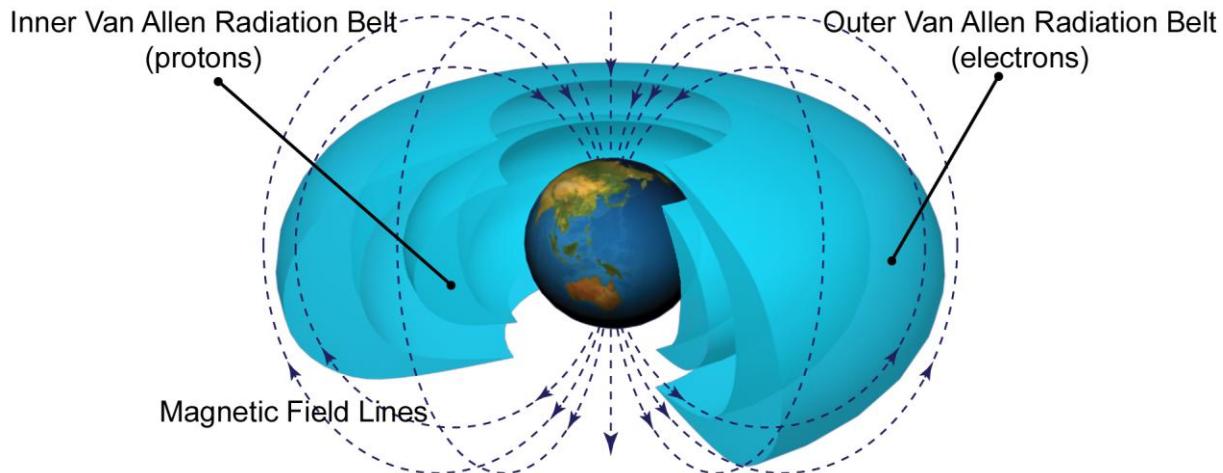
Figure 18.22. Auroral Ovals (Aurora Borealis and Australis).



18.3.6. The Van Allen Radiation Belts.

18.3.6.1. Not all energetic charged particles trapped in the earth's magnetosphere end up striking the atmosphere, as evidenced by aurora. Only a fraction squeak through to the atmosphere at high latitudes to cause aurora. The rest remained trapped for months...even years. In fact, charged particles trapped in the magnetosphere dart back and forth between the converging magnetic field lines in the polar regions, filling donut-shaped regions surrounding the earth called the Van Allen radiation belts, named after the man who first proposed and proved their existence. These trapped particles are so energetic that they're considered *particle radiation* because they penetrate and interact with spacecraft materials (and humans) in the same way that x-ray and gamma radiation can.

18.3.6.2. There are two distinct radiation belts ([Figure 18.23](#)). The outer Van Allen radiation belt is populated by solar wind material that the magnetosphere has captured in the magnetotail. The strength and geometry of the magnetic field in the outer belt serves to accelerate electrons. The inner belt—the bottom of which interacts with the top of the earth's atmosphere—also contains energetic charged particles, but their origin might be surprising. The nearly constant shower of cosmic rays that bathe the earth from all directions collide with atmospheric molecules and scatter their atomic nuclei. The protons liberated in these collisions follow magnetic field lines into space and populate the inner Van Allen radiation belt.

Figure 18.23. Van Allen Radiation Belts.**18.3.7. The 27-day Solar Rotation Cycle.**

18.3.7.1. As viewed from the earth, which is revolving around the sun in the same direction that the sun is rotating, the solar equator rotates in about 27 earth days, though at higher solar latitudes, it takes longer. Thus many features found on the sun tend to exhibit a 27-day periodicity.

18.3.7.2. For example, an active region appears on the near side of the sun for a couple weeks, and then rotates out of view. One anticipates that if the active region maintains itself, it will appear again after a couple weeks.

18.3.7.3. The high-speed plasma streams in the solar wind associated with coronal holes also recur at this frequency.

18.3.8. The 11-year Solar Activity Cycle.

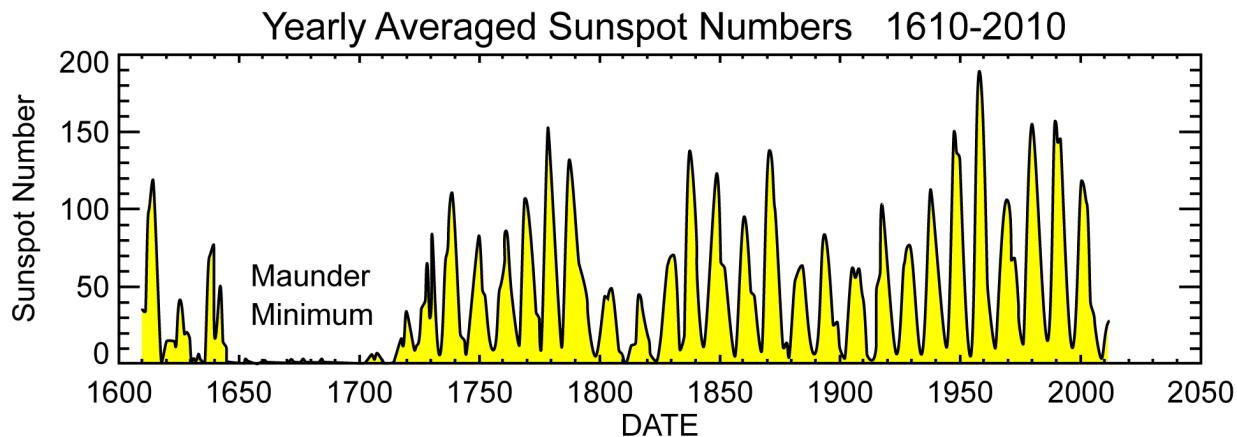
18.3.8.1. The occurrence of active regions, associated sunspots, flares, and CMEs is not constant. The sun exhibits an approximate 11-year cycle of these phenomena. We've noticed this cycle for centuries ([Figure 18.24](#)). The unusual (and as of yet explained) lack of activity and associated sunspots during the last half of the 17th century is commonly called the *Maunder Minimum*.

18.3.8.2. *Solar minimum* marks the beginning of a cycle and is characterized by few—if any—active regions and associated sunspots. Solar flares are rare and CMEs are less frequent. However, coronal holes are larger and more persistent.

18.3.8.3. For a few years following solar minimum, active regions, their associated sunspots, and flares increase in frequency and intensity. This is due to the differential rotation of the sun “winding” up magnetic field below the solar surface, which eventually emerges through the photosphere as active regions, with its associated sunspots. This activity at its height—often defined by the maximum number of observed sunspots—is called *solar maximum*, which can last months to a couple years. Then, over the course of several years following solar maximum, activity subsides and returns to solar minimum, which marks the next cycle start.

18.3.8.4. As you can see from **Figure 18.24**, solar minimum occurred during 2008-2009; solar maximum is expected sometime around 2012 or 2013, when we expect frequent flares, CMEs, and energetic proton events.

Figure 18.24. 11-Year Solar Cycle (as of December 2010).



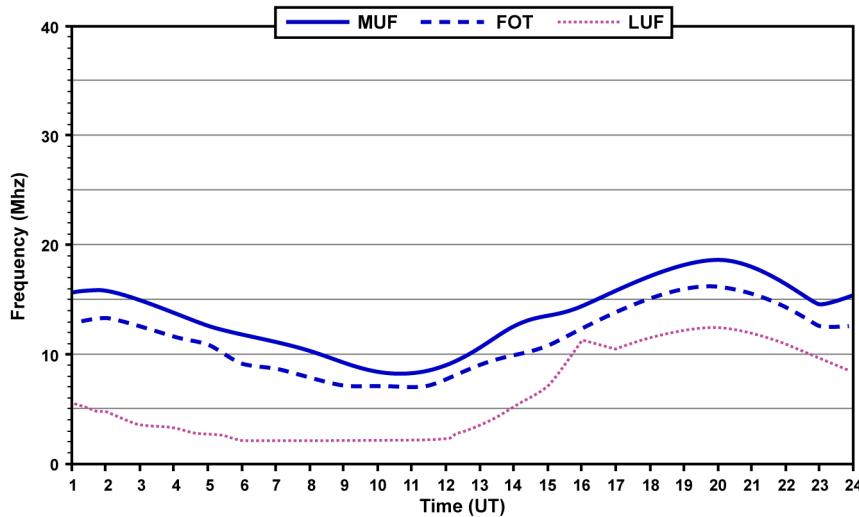
18.4. Space Weather Impacts. Direct space weather impacts to aviation include degradation to various radio signals and certain radiation hazards. Radio signals include communication, radar, and navigation functions.

18.4.1. HF Signal Impacts.

18.4.1.1. Communications and radars operating in the HF radio band are especially susceptible to ionospheric disturbances. Since HF is usually used for long-range applications, it is important not to neglect that impacts to HF signals may occur anywhere along the line of transmission, not just at the sites of transmission or reception.

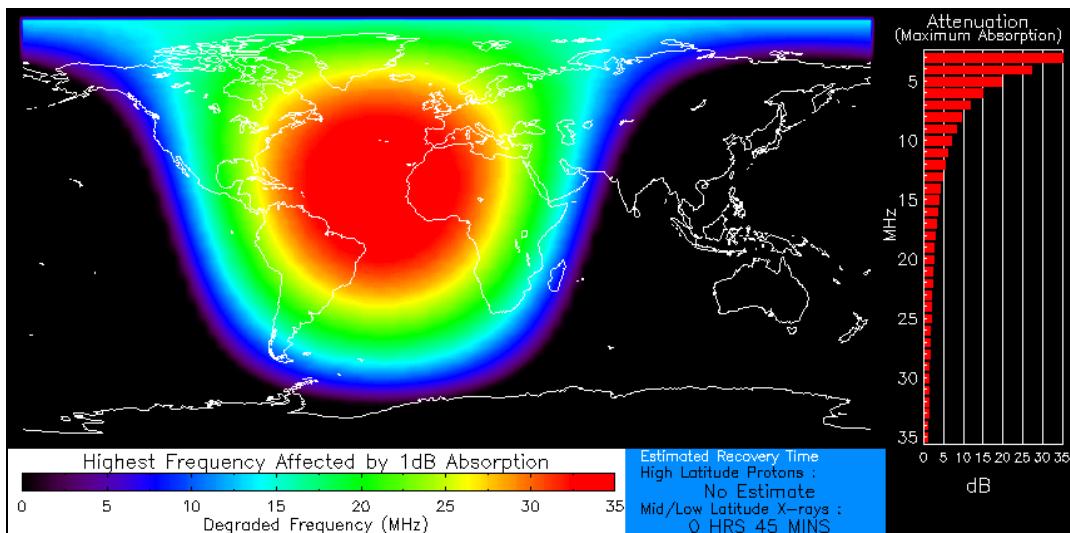
18.4.1.2. Dawn and Dusk. The times around sunset and sunrise pose particular challenges to HF operations because it is during these times that the lower ionosphere responds to the change in solar radiation. HF transmitters often use separate daytime and nighttime frequencies to accommodate both of these ionospheric conditions. Daytime transmission frequencies are always higher than nighttime. During dawn and dusk, users often vacillate between daytime and nighttime frequencies to obtain best reception until the ionosphere settles down for the day (or night), during which a single frequency can be used. The graph in **Figure 18.25** shows the change in useable HF frequencies throughout the day for a specific antenna configuration. The HF window in this case is bound by the maximum useable frequency (MUF) and the lowest useable frequency (LUF), where the frequency of optimum transmission (FOT) is also indicated.

Figure 18.25. HF Window Throughout the Day.



18.4.1.3. X-ray Flares. When the sun produces an x-ray flare, the ionosphere on the earth's dayside hemisphere is disrupted. The lower ionosphere—the D-layer—becomes enhanced enough that it absorbs HF signals. A weak x-ray flare can cause the D-layer to absorb the lower part of the HF radio band; a moderate flare can additionally absorb the middle part of the radio band; and a powerful flare can absorb the entire HF radio band, even the lower part of the VHF radio band. Such an event is called an *HF blackout* or *shortwave fade*, and depending on how intense the x-ray flare is and how long it lasts, HF signals can be absorbed for tens of minutes to many hours. But remember, this type of impact to HF communications only occurs during the day, when the ionosphere is exposed to solar radiation. **Figure 18.26** shows the extent an x-ray flare can affect HF signals across the globe. Degradation is indicated by attenuation in decibels

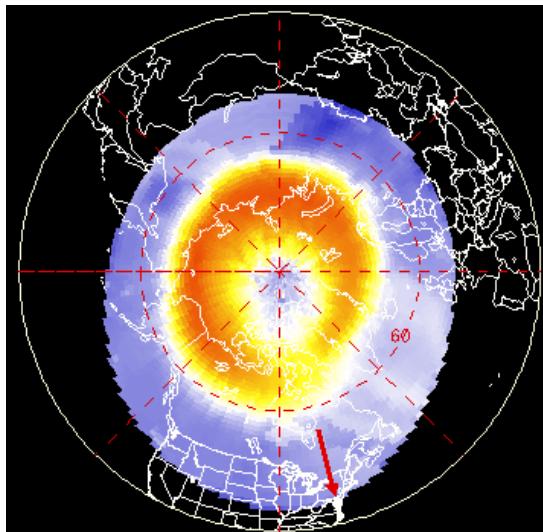
Figure 18.26. D-region Absorption Map During a Solar X-ray Flare.



18.4.1.4. Geomagnetic Storms (Aurora). As magnificent as the aurora looks, it is also a major problem to HF users. The energetic particles that enter the atmosphere turbulently

disrupt the entire vertical structure of the ionosphere. This causes HF signals to split, refract in all directions, absorb, and scintillate. Scintillation is the rapid random change in signal intensity, direction, phase, and frequency—certainly an undesired effect. Ionospheric disruptions during geomagnetic storms can last hours to a few days. It is also important to know that the ionosphere in the auroral regions always tends to have minor irregularities, as illustrated in [Figure 18.27](#); therefore, even during times of quiet geomagnetic activity, all transpolar signals have potential for degradation.

Figure 18.27. Auroral Oval Impact to Ionosphere During Average Geomagnetic Activity (red arrow indicates direction of sun).



18.4.1.5. Proton Events. In addition to producing a flash of x-rays and radio bursts, a solar flare can inject energetic protons into the solar wind. These protons can approach the speed of light and can reach the earth in as little time as one hour after a flare occurs. Such energetic protons can funnel into the polar cusps of the earth's magnetosphere (see [Figure 18.9](#)) and strike the polar atmosphere. These events do not cause aurora, but instead enhance the lower ionosphere (D-layer) much like an x-ray flare. Such an enhancement causes absorption of HF signals at high latitudes and is called a *polar cap absorption* event (or *PCA*). [Figure 18.28](#) shows the affected areas during a PCA event (the faint violet over the Americas is the normal daytime D-layer enhancement). [Figure 18.29](#) shows the results of a major solar flare that produced a powerful x-ray flare (the bulls eye over the Pacific) and a remarkable PCA event (over the Arctic and Antarctica).

Figure 18.28. D-region Absorption Map During a Moderate PCA Event.

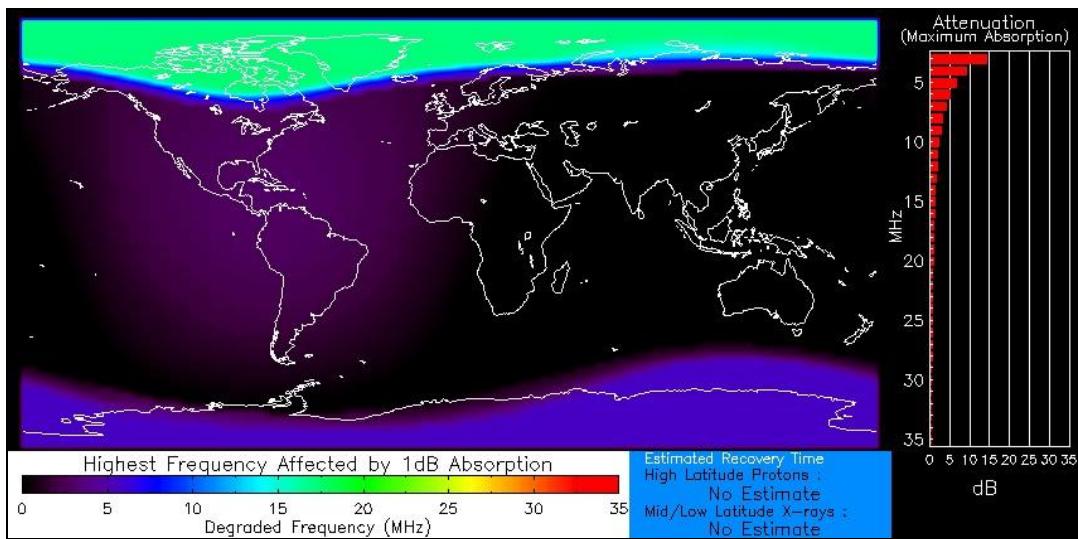
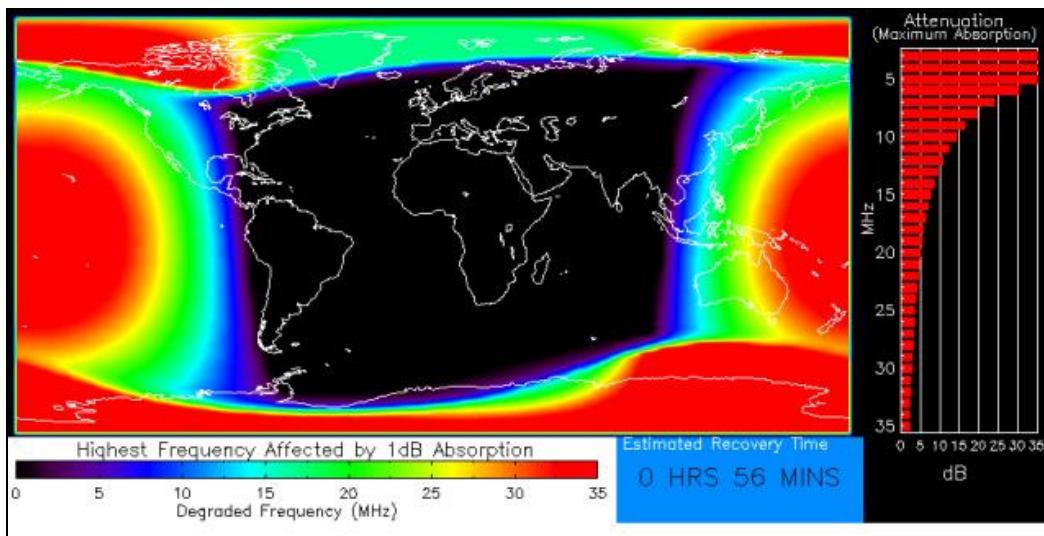


Figure 18.29. D-region Absorption Map During a Major Solar X-ray Flare and an Extreme PCA Event (compare to Figure 18.26 and Figure 18.28).

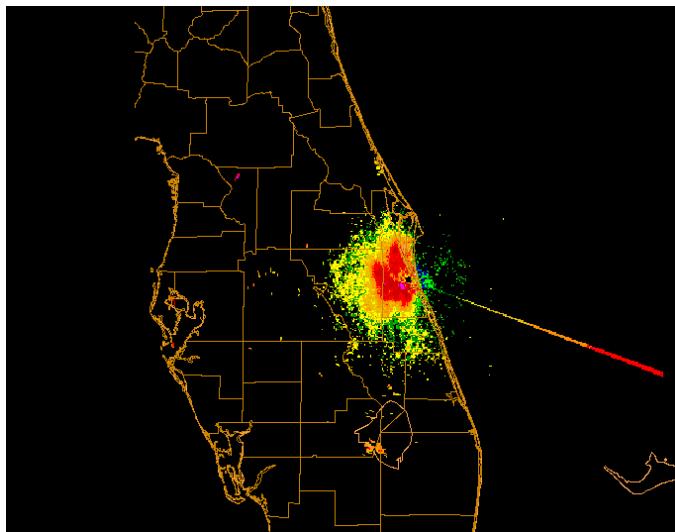


18.4.2. Solar Radio Interference.

18.4.2.1. The sun's corona and active regions are the main source of solar radio output. Geometry plays a critical role in how radio noise from the sun impacts signals. The alignment of transmitter and receiver to the sun can wash out a signal. For example, it is usually futile to attempt locking on to a satellite signal if the sun lies directly behind the satellite. Luckily, because the earth is rotating, such chance alignments are not common and only last minutes at most. On the other hand, radars are particularly susceptible to signal contamination from the sun because radars are transmitting and receiving from a wide range of directions, and the sun is often within view. [Figure 18.30](#) shows weather radar data with a line of false data due to radio noise from the sun that occurs at the radar frequency, in this case 2800 MHz. This is called a sun spike and clearly is not

meteorological in nature. Radar systems generally account for this glitch and so normal solar radio noise poses no real impact.

Figure 18.30. Solar Radio Interference on Weather Radar Imagery (streak to the southeast).



18.4.2.2. On the other hand, solar flares, CMEs, and other coronal activity can create outbursts of radio noise, which can affect communications, navigation, and radar signals ranging from HF to SHF radio bands. The radio noise can be so intense that it can overwhelm antenna reception through side lobe contamination. Antenna design and electronic filters can mitigate some—but not all—of this unwanted *radio frequency interference*, or *RFI*. During a solar radio burst, receiving antennas on the dayside of the earth can suffer complete radio whiteout, effectively rendering such sites blind for tens of minutes—or even hours—at a time.

18.4.3. VHF/UHF Signal Impacts.

18.4.3.1. Communications and radars operating in the VHF and UHF radio bands are less vulnerable to ionospheric disturbances than the HF radio band; however, this frequency range has its own unique problems in the ionosphere.

18.4.3.1.1. Equatorial Scintillation. In addition to RFI from solar radio bursts, VHF and UHF radio signals passing through the ionosphere to satellites can be uniquely affected at low latitudes. During the day, above the magnetic equator (which is defined by where the earth's magnetic field is horizontal to the earth's surface, [Figure 18.31](#)) the ionosphere is enhanced and lifted during a complex process in what is called the *equatorial anomaly*. When the sun sets, this batch of plasma seeks lower altitudes, but because it is confined to horizontal magnetic field lines, it instead drains north and south where field lines slant downward into ionospheric plasma that already exists there. This turbulent ionospheric motion creates bubbles of plasma voids and enhancements that scintillate VHF and UHF signals—that is, rapidly and randomly alter signal frequency, strength, direction, and phase. This effect is amplified about 15° - 20° latitude north and south of the magnetic equator. Along this *equatorial scintillation band*, users can encounter UHF satellite communications problems starting about an hour after sunset to midnight or so. It is

important to know that this scintillation does not occur every night, but when it does occur, its onset can be sudden and severe enough to completely lose satellite lock. **Figure 18.32** shows the location, extent, and severity of such scintillation when the sun is setting in Brazil (2300 hours GMT). Notice that North America is not susceptible to this phenomenon.

Figure 18.31. Earth's Magnetic Equator and Associated Scintillation Band (note its deviation from the geographic equator, black line).

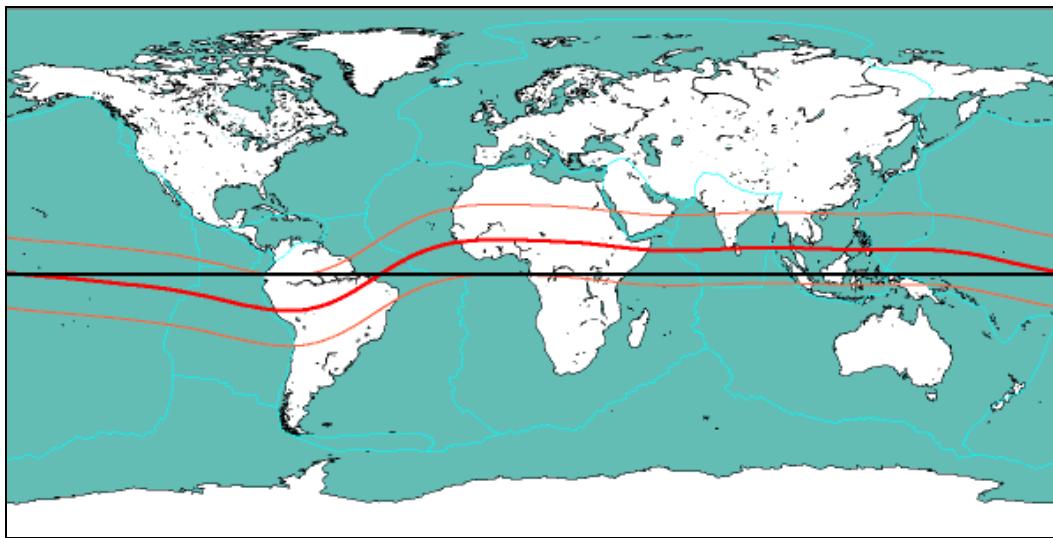
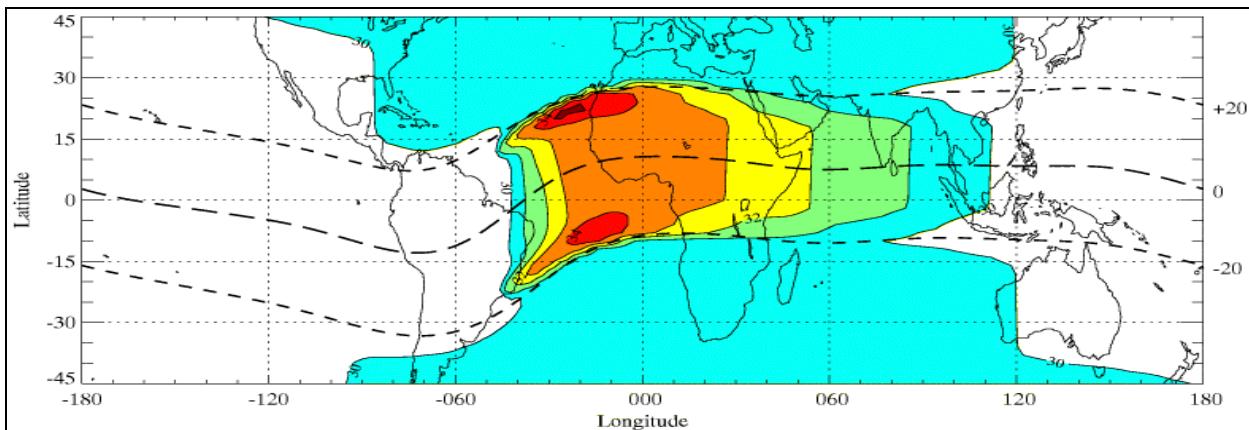


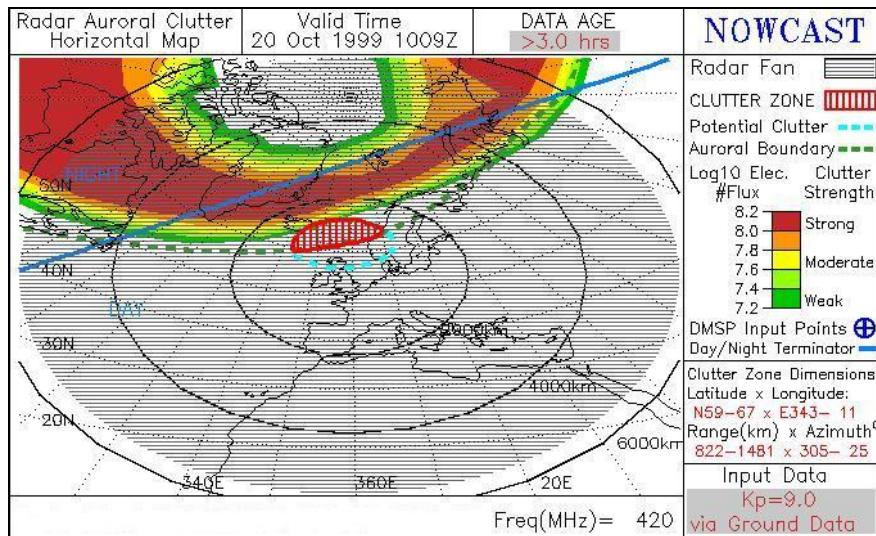
Figure 18.32. Scintillation Pattern at 2300 GMT.



18.4.3.2. Geomagnetic Storms (Aurora). The Aurora is a major problem for HF transmission, and it can be a problem for VHF and UHF signals as well, especially for radars. The energetic particles that enter the atmosphere turbulently disrupt the entire vertical structure of the ionosphere. This can create radar clutter, which has the obvious unwanted impact of masking targets. As many radar systems have software applications that reduce or even eliminate such clutter, some are under the impression that this phenomenon is no longer a concern: however, severe conditions can still give radars a blind spot. Ionospheric disruptions and aurora-related radar clutter during geomagnetic storms can last hours to a few days. **Figure 18.33** shows that for a significant

geomagnetic storm, a particular radar operating at 420 MHz may encounter clutter in the striped area, according to the antenna type and transmission angle.

Figure 18.33. Radar Auroral Clutter.



18.4.4. Impacts to GPS Navigation.

18.4.4.1. The power of GPS navigation lies in the precise timing of satellite signals. Yet, the atmosphere and ionosphere slow GPS's UHF (L-band) signals almost imperceptibly, but enough to introduce potential serious errors in position. Indeed, an error of one millionth of a second introduces a 300 meter error. In order to reduce this error, GPS devices incorporate atmospheric and ionospheric data. Even the effects of relativity are factored in, taking into account the speed of the GPS spacecraft and the gravity field of the earth.

18.4.4.2. Atmospheric error is significantly reduced by incorporating surface air pressures in GPS calculations. Eliminating ionospheric error is more problematical because calculations incorporate a number of variables, some of which are modeled averages: time of day, date, latitude, longitude, geomagnetic activity, progression of solar cycle, and overall solar activity. Even so, smaller ionospheric anomalies and sudden unexpected changes are not factored into even this first-order error-reducing process.

18.4.4.3. Over the years GPS receivers have improved navigation service by incorporating a variety of enhanced statistical methods and superior algorithms. There remains a distinction between two services: Standard Positioning Service (SPS) and Precise Positioning Service (PPS). The SPS provides a single-frequency navigation signal that is available for peaceful civil, commercial, and scientific use. The PPS provides a precision navigation signal that is available for single- or dual-frequency use. Single frequency GPS receivers (whether SPS or PPS) use model-based ionospheric delay compensation, while dual frequency GPS receivers (PPS only) use frequency comparison to calculate ionospheric delay in real time.

18.4.4.4. All aviation operations and weapon systems utilize the more precise dual frequency PPS option; however, it is important to understand that many ground units still

use the single-frequency PPS receivers, such as the PLGR (Precision Lightweight GPS Receiver, or “plugger”), which is still in wide use. This handheld unit is being replaced by the DAGR (Defense Advanced GPS Receiver, or “dagger”), which is a dual frequency PPS receiver.

18.4.4.5. **Figure 18.34** is an example of a GPS error map for dual-frequency PPS receivers using the best four GPS satellites. (“Best” refers to local position in the sky and relative position between satellites. The closer a GPS satellite is to local zenith, the more accurate its signal because the steep angle through the ionosphere minimizes length of time in it. Also, the more spread out the satellites, the more accurate the navigation solution.) The GPS error of 16-20 meters in the Arctic is due to geomagnetic storming and associated auroral activity. **Figure 18.35** shows a GPS error map for single frequency PPS receivers. Note the 5-10 meter error areas centered on the magnetic equator (black wavy line) over eastern Africa and Southwest Asia; it is due to the equatorial anomaly. The 75 meter error in the Indian Ocean (about an hour after local sunset) is primarily due to equatorial scintillation of UHF signals.

Figure 18.34. Dual Frequency GPS Error.

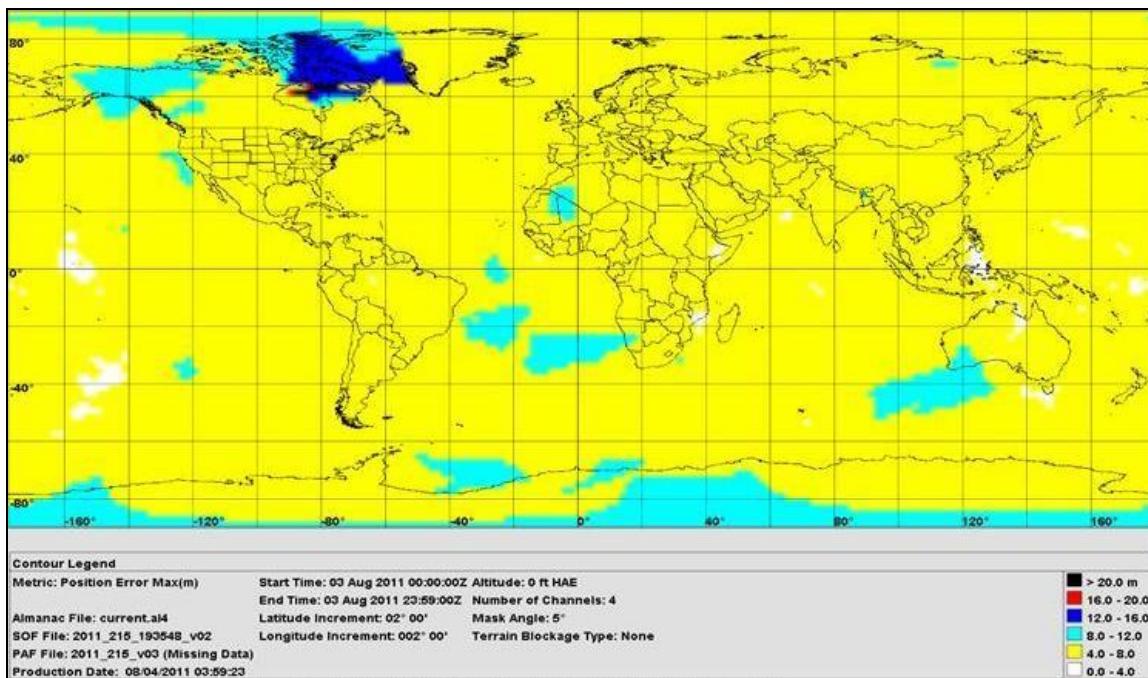
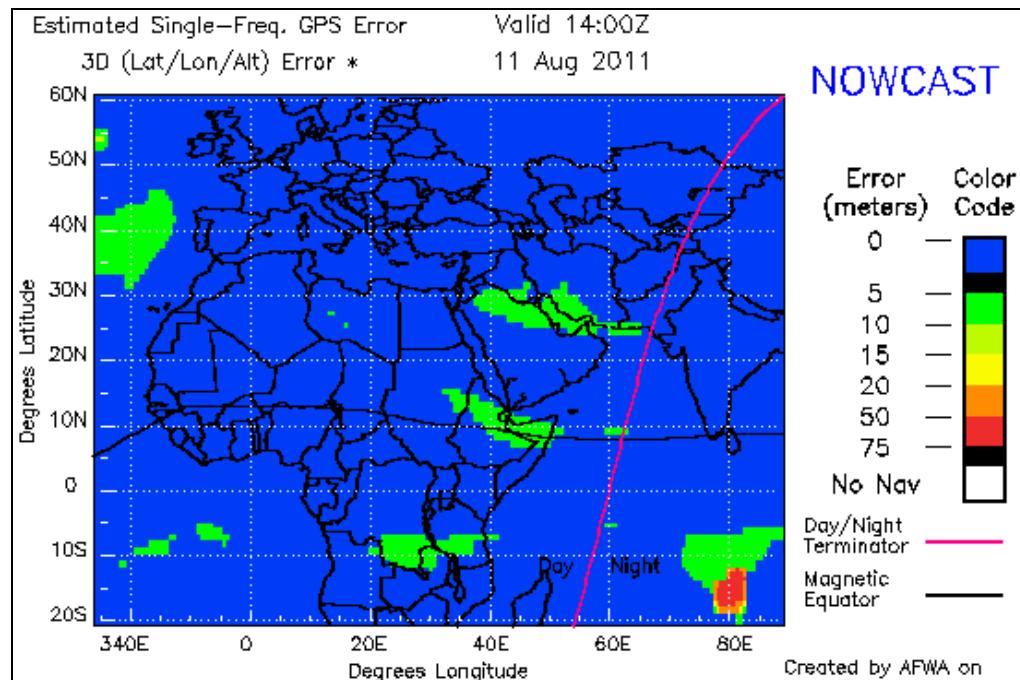


Figure 18.35. Single Frequency GPS Error.



18.4.5. Radiation Hazards—High Latitude and High Altitude.

18.4.5.1. Cosmic rays, and particularly the scatter of high energy particles they create when cosmic rays collide with molecules in the upper atmosphere, pose a radiation threat to aviation operations. Also, energetic protons from solar flares add to this radiation threat. This hazard increases with altitude and latitude.

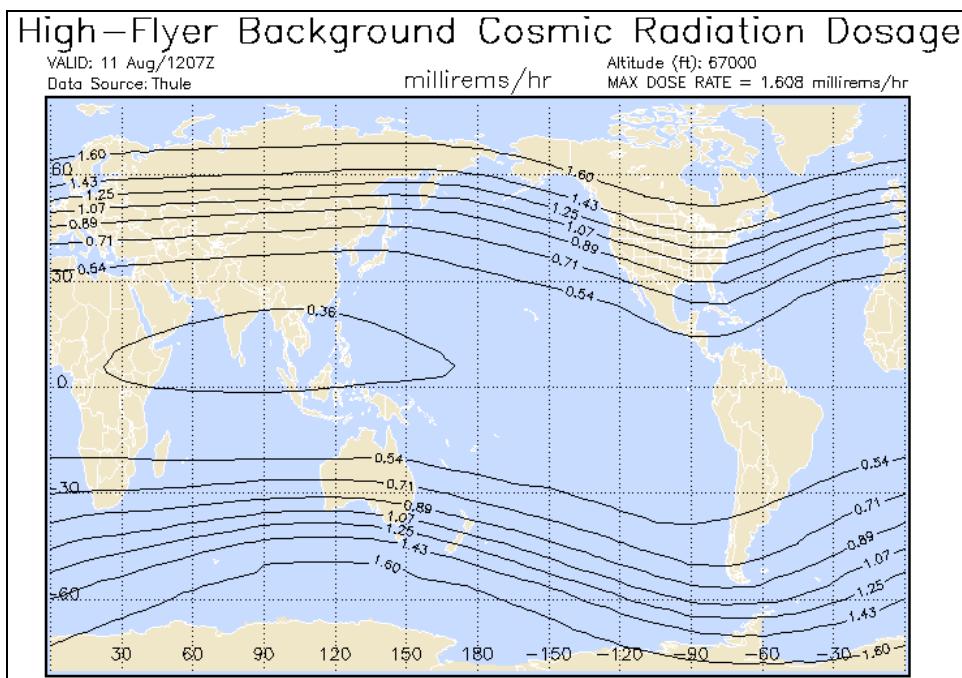
18.4.5.2. Such particle radiation penetrates aircraft and can impact electronics. An energetic proton, for example, would streak through a computer motherboard and strip electrons off surrounding atoms. This creates a microscopic electronic short, which can disrupt data, alter commands, or even damage components. Such an event is called a SEE (single event effect). The redundancy of systems and software aboard aircraft virtually eliminates SEE upsets, although they are still possible.

18.4.5.3. The more conspicuous threat of this particle radiation is to the human body itself (aircrew and passenger alike). Particle radiation impacts commercial flight as well as military aviation operations, especially those conducted at exceptionally high altitudes. For instance, when an energetic proton event occurs, the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) limits flying times and altitudes for commercial air routes, especially over or near the polar regions. Military flight operations incorporate various radiation warning bulletins, with which local commanders weigh mission priorities and radiation hazards.

18.4.5.4. When considering potential harmful health consequences from exposure to such radiation, dose is usually expressed in terms of *effective dose*, which is the total absorbed radiation by the entire body. *Equivalent dose* accounts for the differing sensitivities of various organs and tissues to radiation. The *rem* (Roentgen Equivalent in Man) and *millirem* (*mrem*, a thousandth of a rem) are units used to express potential harm from radiation. **Figure 18.36** illustrates a global chart indicating the radiation dosage rate

for aircrews flying at an altitude of 67,000 feet. Note that dosage ranges from 0.35 to 1.608 mrem/hr and generally increases with latitude and is highest in the polar regions, where it is on average five times higher than along the magnetic equator.

Figure 18.36. Radiation Dosage Chart for High Altitude Flight.



18.4.5.5. For comparison, here are other radiation dosage rates due to other naturally occurring and manmade radiation sources (using average annual exposures). Note that high altitude flight provides an order of magnitude greater radiation rate than combined sources for those living at the earth's surface.

Air (primarily radon outgas from the earth's crust):	0.0020 – 0.1000 mrem/hr
Food (primarily from carbon-14 and potassium-40 isotopes):	0.0020 – 0.0100 mrem/hr
Terrestrial (ground and building materials):	0.0030 – 0.0100 mrem/hr
Cosmic radiation (surface to 10,000 feet):	0.0030 – 0.0100 mrem/hr
Medical (x-rays):	0.0003 – 0.0200 mrem/hr

18.4.6. Impacts to Magnetic Fields.

18.4.6.1. Geomagnetic storms cause the magnetic field at the earth's surface to fluctuate in strength and direction. This is especially critical for industries relying on the earth's magnetic field for navigation or surveying. Although many such systems have been modernized with GPS navigation and other techniques, it is well worth noting that older aviation systems whose navigation systems rely on magnetic field direction are vulnerable to serious error. This is especially true for those using such systems at high latitudes where the magnetic field is nearly vertical. The slowly wandering magnetic poles over time, in addition to fluctuating magnetic fields during magnetic storms, cause extreme horizontal direction anomalies in the vicinity of the magnetic poles. In fact, air charts in these locations give special warning to this problem.

18.4.7. **Indirect Impacts.**

18.4.7.1. Although space weather impacts many other systems not directly related to aviation, it is well to understand that these impacts may indirectly affect aviation. For example, the hostile environment in space necessarily means that spacecraft will suffer impacts. Aviation operations that use such a spacecraft for navigation or communications would be affected. Another example: severe geomagnetic storms can overload commercial power grids, causing widespread blackouts. This would strain support to aviation.

JOHN W. HESTERMAN III, Maj Gen, USAF
Assistant DCS, Operations, Plans and Requirements

Attachment 1**GLOSSARY OF REFERENCES AND SUPPORTING INFORMATION*****References***

AFMAN 33-363_AFGM1 – *Management of Records*, 13 October 2011

Adopted Form

AF Form 847 – *Recommendation for Change of Publication*, 22 September 2009

Abbreviations and Acronyms

ACSL—Altocumulus Standing Lenticular

AFFSA—Air Force Flight Standards Agency

AFWA—Air Force Weather Agency

AGL—Above Ground Level

AIRMET—Airman's Meteorological Information

ARTCC—Air Route Traffic Control Center

AS—Altocstratus

ASI—Altimeter Setting Indicator

ASOS—Automatic Surface Observation System

ATC—Air Traffic Control

ATIS—Automatic Terminal Information Service

AWOS—Automated Weather Observation System

BKN—Broken

BL—Blowing (Used with DU, SA, SN, PY)

BR—Mist

CAT—Clear Air Turbulence

CAVOK—Ceiling and Visibility OK

CB—Cumulonimbus

CBMAM—Cumulonimbus Mammatus

CC—Cirrocumulus

CI—Cirrus

CONUS—Continental United States

CP—Continental Polar

CS—Cirrostratus

CT—Continental Tropical

CU—Cumulus

CWW—Continuous Weather Watch

DA—Density Altitude

DBASI—Digital Barometer Altimeter Setting

DR—Drifting or Dead Reckoning

DS—Duststorm

DU—Dust

DZ—Drizzle

ECT—Equivalent Chill Temperature

E-O—Electro-optical

FAA—Federal Aviation Administration

FC—Funnel Cloud

FG—Fog

FIH—Flight Information Handbook

FLIP—DOD Flight Information Publication

FOD—Foreign Object Damage

FU—Smoke

FZ—Freezing

GOES—Geostationary Op Environmental Satellite

GR—Hail

Hg—Mercury

HIWAS—Hazardous In-flight Weather Advisory

HP—Station Pressure

hPa—Hectopascal

HZ—Haze

ICAO—International Civil Aviation Org

IFR—Instrument Flight Rules

IRU—Inertial Reference Unit

ITC—Intertropical Confluence

ITCZ—Intertropical Convergence Zone

JTWC—Joint Typhoon Warning Center

KIAS—Knots Indicated Airspeed

LFC—Level of Free Convection

LST—Local Standard Time

LLWS—Low Level Wind Shear

LLWAS—Low Level Wind Shear Alerts

MAJCOM—Major Command

mb—Millibar

MEA—Minimum En route Altitude

METAR—Aviation Routine Weather Report

MOCA—Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude

mP—Maritime Polar

mT—Maritime Tropical

MSL—Mean Sea Level

NEXRAD—Next Gen Weather Radar (WSR-88D)

NOAA—National Oceanic and Atmospheric Adm

NOTAM—Notice to Airmen

NS—Nimbostratus

NVG—Night Vision Goggle

NWS—National Weather Service

OVC—Overcast

PA—Pressure Altitude

PAV—Pressure Altitude Variation

PIREP—Pilot Report

PMSV—Pilot to Metro Service

PV—Prevailing Visibility

PY—Spray

QFE—Station Pressure

QFF—Sea Level Pressure

QNE—Pressure Altitude

QNH—Altimeter Setting

RA—Rain

RCR—Runway Condition Reading

RVRNO—RVR Not Available

RSC—Runway Surface Condition

RVR—Runway Visual Range

SC—Stratocumulus

SCT—Scattered

SH—Showers

SIGMET—Significant Meteorological Information

SKC—Sky Clear

SM—Statute Mile

SPECI—Special Observation

SQ—Squall

SS—Sandstorm

ST—Stratus

TAF—Terminal Aerodrome Forecast

TCU—Towering Cumulus

TDWR—Tactical Doppler Weather Radar

T.O.—Technical Order

TOT—Time Over Target

TS—Thunderstorm

TWEB—Transcribed Weather Broadcast

UTC—Coordinated Universal Time

VC—Vicinity

VFR—Visual Flight Rules

VR—Rotational Speed

VSI—Vertical Speed Indicator

VV—Vertical Visibility

WMO—World Meteorological Organization

WSR—88D-Weather Surveillance Radar 88 Doppler

wx—Weather

Terms

Absorption—. The process in which radiant energy is retained by a substance.

Advection fog—. A fog resulting from the transport of warm, humid air over a cold surface.

Air mass—. An extensive body of air with essentially uniform temperature and moisture in a horizontal plane.

Altimeter setting. That pressure value to which an aircraft altimeter scale is set so that it will indicate the altitude above mean sea—level of an aircraft on the ground at the location for which the value was determined.

Atmospheric pressure—. The pressure exerted by the atmosphere at a given point.

Anticyclone—. An area of high pressure having a closed, anticyclonic circulation; clockwise in the Northern Hemisphere and counterclockwise in the Southern Hemisphere.

Attenuation—. The weakening of a radar signal caused by the presence of precipitation, clouds, dust, and/or atmospheric gases.

Aurora australis—. Auroras of the southern latitudes. See aurora borealis.

Aurora borealis—. Sporadic radiant emission from the upper atmosphere due to molecular and atomic excitation from charged particles of the solar wind. Borealis refers to auroras of the northern latitudes.

Barometer—. An instrument for measuring atmospheric pressure.

Blowing—. A descriptor used to amplify observed weather phenomena whenever the phenomenon is raised to a height of 6 feet or more above the ground.

Broken layer—. A layer covering whose summation amount of sky cover is 5/8ths through 7/8ths.

CAVOK—. An ICAO acronym for Ceiling and Visibility OK. In a forecast this means no clouds below 5,000 feet, no CB, visibility 10 km or greater, and no precipitation, thunderstorm, or shallow fog.

Ceiling. The height above the Earth's surface of the lowest non—surface based cloud layer that is reported as broken or overcast, or the vertical visibility into an indefinite ceiling.

Circulation—. The continuous motion of the atmosphere relative to the Earth's surface.

Clear Air Turbulence (CAT). Turbulence above 15,000 feet normally encountered in cloud—free air.

Clear ice—. A glossy, transparent ice formed by the relatively slow freezing of large supercooled water droplets.

Climate—. The statistical collective of weather conditions of a point or area during a specified period of time.

Cloud layer—. An array of clouds whose bases are at approximately the same level.

Col—. The neutral area between two highs and two lows.

Cold front—. The leading edge of an advancing cold air mass.

Condensation—. The physical process by which water vapor becomes liquid water.

Condensation trail (Contrail). A cloud—like streamer frequently observed to form behind aircraft flying in clear, cold, humid air.

Contour—. A line on meteorological charts connecting points of equal value.

Contrast—. The difference between the radiance of a target and the radiance of its background.

Convective turbulence—. Aircraft turbulence caused by vertical motions in the atmosphere.

Convergence—. Air coming together from different directions. Areas of low level convergent winds are regions favorable to the occurrence of clouds and precipitation.

Coriolis Force—. An apparent deflective force resulting from the Earth's rotation. It acts to the right of the wind direction in the Northern Hemisphere and to the left in the Southern Hemisphere.

Cumulonimbus. An exceptionally dense and vertically developed cloud, occurring either isolated or as a line or wall of clouds with separated upper portions. These clouds appear as mountains, and/or as huge towers, at least a part of the upper portions of which are usually smooth, fibrous, or striated. Well developed cumulonimbus clouds have a characteristic anvil—shaped cloud top.

Cyclone—. A low pressure area with a closed cyclonic (counterclockwise) circulation in the Northern Hemisphere, clockwise in the Southern Hemisphere.

D—Value. The difference between the actual height of any given pressure surface in the atmosphere and the height of that pressure surface in the standard atmosphere.

Density altitude—. The altitude which a given density would be found in the standard atmosphere.

Deposition—. Change of state from gas (water vapor) to solid (ice) without first becoming liquid.

Dew point—. The temperature to which air must be cooled to reach saturation.

Diurnal. Daily. A cycle completed every 24—hour period.

Divergence—. Condition of winds that exists within a given area such that there is a net horizontal flow of air outward from the region. Low level divergent regions are areas unfavorable to the occurrence of clouds and precipitation.

Emissivity—. A measure of the total radiant energy emitted by an object per unit time per unit area of its emitting surface.

Equatorial trough. A quasi—continuous belt of low pressure lying between the subtropical high-pressure belts of the Northern and Southern Hemispheres; sometimes referred to as the Inter-tropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ).

Equinox—. The time at which the sun passes directly over the equator. This happens twice a year; the vernal equinox in spring and the autumnal equinox in fall.

Equivalent wind chill temperature (ECT).—The apparent temperature sensed by the human body which incorporates the cooling effects produced by the combination of wind and free air temperature.

Evaporation—. The process through which water vapor enters the atmosphere from liquid water.

Fall wind. A strong, cold, down—slope wind.

Few—. A layer whose summation amount of sky cover is 1/8th through 2/8ths.

Foehn—. A warm, dry, wind descending the lee side of mountains.

Fog—. A visible aggregate of minute water droplets which are based at the Earth's surface and reduce horizontal visibility to less than 5/8 statute mile and, unlike drizzle, does not fall to the ground.

Freezing precipitation—. Any form of precipitation that freezes upon impact and forms a glaze on the ground or exposed objects.

Front—. The boundary between two air masses with different properties.

Frontal inversion—. Inversion resulting from movement of colder air under warm air or the movement of warm air over cold air.

Frontal wave. A cyclone which forms and moves along a front. The circulation about the cyclone center tends to produce a wave—like deformation of the front.

Frost—. Ice crystal deposits formed by deposition on exposed surfaces when the temperature of the exposed surface is below freezing.

Frozen precipitation—. Any form of precipitation that reaches the ground in solid form (snow, hail and/or snow pellets, snow grains, ice pellets, and ice crystals).

Funnel cloud. A rotating, funnel—shaped cloud typically associated with severe thunderstorms extending downward but not reaching the Earth's surface. Often precedes tornadic or waterspout activity.

Glaze ice—. Ice formed by freezing precipitation covering the ground or exposed objects.

Gravity wind—. See katabatic wind.

Ground fog—. A fog concealing less than 0.6 tenths of the sky and not extending to the base of any clouds.

Gust front—. The outward limit of gusty, low level winds extending 10 to 20 miles from the base of a thunderstorm.

Hail—. Precipitation in the form of balls or other pieces of ice falling separately or frozen together in irregular lumps.

Haze—. A concentration of small dust or salt particles suspended in the air.

HectoPascals (hPa)—. Hectopascal is a 100x multiple of the Pascal which is the SI unit for pressure. The international unit for measuring atmospheric or barometric pressure. 1 Hectopascal equals 100 Pascals. 1 hectopascal is exactly equal to 1 Millibar (mb).

High (anticyclone)—. An area of high barometric pressure on a surface chart or a maximum of height (closed contours) on a constant pressure upper air chart.

Hurricane—. A severe tropical cyclone in the Atlantic Ocean and northern Pacific Ocean eastward of 180 degrees longitude. Maximum sustained wind speed must be at least 64 knots.

Hydrologic cycle—. The composite picture of the interchange of water between the Earth, the atmosphere and the seas.

Ice fog. A type of fog composed of suspended particles of ice, usually occurring at temperatures of—20°F or colder.

Indefinite (ceiling designator). The ceiling applied when the reported ceiling value represents the vertical visibility upward into a surface—based obstruction.

Indicated altitude—. Altitude above mean sea level indicated on a pressure altimeter set at current local altimeter setting.

Insolation—. Incoming solar radiation falling upon the Earth and its atmosphere.

Inversion—. Layer within the atmosphere characterized by an increase in temperature with altitude.

Isobar—. Line connecting points of equal barometric pressure.

Isotach—. Line drawn connecting points of equal wind speed.

Jet Stream—. Strong winds concentrated in a narrow stream in the atmosphere.

Katabatic wind. Any wind blowing down—slope. Also called gravity wind.

Land breeze—. A local coastal breeze blowing at the surface from land to sea, usually at night, caused by the sea surface being warmer than the adjacent land.

Lapse rate—. The rate of decrease of an atmospheric variable with height; most commonly refers to decrease of temperature with height.

Layer amount—. The amount of sky cover reported for each layer based on the summation principle. All layers are reported in ascending order up to the first overcast layer.

Local dissemination—. The transmission or delivery of a weather report to individuals or groups of users near the weather station.

Long—line dissemination. The transmission of a weather report by a communication media to a group of users on a regional, national, or international network.

Low (cyclone)—. An area of low barometric pressure on a surface chart or a minimum of height (closed contours) on a constant pressure upper air chart.

Mechanical turbulence—. Turbulence originating from air displaced by surface features.

METAR SPECI—. An evaluation of select weather elements from a point or points on or near the ground according to a set of procedures. It may include the type of report, station identifier, date and time group of report, a report modifier, wind, visibility, runway visual range, weather and obstructions to vision, sky condition, temperature and dew point, altimeter setting, and Remarks.

Microburst. A small scale, short—lived intense downdraft that produces hazardous low altitude wind shear.

Millibar (mb)—. A pressure unit of 1,000 dynes per square centimeter convenient for reporting atmospheric pressure.

Mirage—. A phenomenon where the image of an object appears displaced from its true position.

Mist—. An aggregate of tiny water droplets or ice crystals suspended in the atmosphere that reduces visibility to less than 7 statute miles but greater than or equal to 5/8 statute mile.

Monsoon—. A seasonal shift in the prevailing wind direction.

Mountain breeze—. The wind that descends down mountain slopes, usually at night.

Mountain wave turbulence—. Turbulence in the form of waves in the atmosphere. Formed by wind blowing at an angle across mountains.

Northern lights—. See aurora borealis.

Obstructions to vision—. Any phenomena of particles in contact with the Earth's surface dense enough to be detected from the surface of the Earth. Also, any phenomena producing a layer in the atmosphere.

Occlusion—. The result of one frontal system overtaking a previously formed frontal system.

Orographic—. Of, pertaining to, or caused by mountains, as in orographic lift.

Polar front—. The zone which separates the polar and tropical air masses.

Precipitation—. Liquid or solid moisture falling from the atmosphere.

Pressure altitude—. Altitude indicated when altimeter is set to 29.92 inches; altimeter indicates height above the standard datum plane.

Pressure gradient—. Rate of horizontal pressure change.

Prevailing visibility (PV)—. Greatest horizontal visibility observed throughout at least half the horizon circle, not necessarily continuous.

QFE (altimeter setting)—. Actual surface pressure. Altimeter indicates zero feet regardless of field elevation.

QNE (altimeter setting)—. 29.92 inches, results in altimeter indicating height above standard datum plan or pressure altitude.

QNH (altimeter setting)—. Altimeter setting which results in altimeter indicating height above mean sea level.

Radiance—. A measure of the intrinsic electromagnetic radiation emitted by a body.

Radiation fog—. Fog produced over land when radiation cooling reduces the air temperature near the ground to or below its dew point. Usually occurs on clear nights with light winds.

Radiation inversion—. Inversion near surface of land caused when ground loses heat rapidly through terrestrial radiation, cooling the air next to it.

Reflection—. A process by which a surface turns back a portion of incident radiation.

Ridge—. An elongated area of high pressure with the highest pressure along a line called a "ridge line".

Rime ice—. Rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the instantaneous freezing of small supercooled water droplets.

Runway Visual Range (RVR). An instrumentally—derived value representing the horizontal distance an aircrew will see down the runway from the approach end.

Saddlebacks. At flight—level, the relatively cloud-free areas between thunderstorm tops, especially when the storm cells are arranged in a line.

Saint Elmo's Fire—. A luminous discharge of electricity from protruding objects on aircraft.

Saturation—. The condition existing when air, at a given temperature and pressure, holds the maximum possible water vapor content.

Scattered—. A layer whose summation amount of sky cover is 3/8ths through 4/8ths.

Scattering—. The process by which particles in the air diffuse a portion of incident radiation in all directions.

Sea breeze—. A coastal local wind blowing from sea to land, usually during the day, caused by the sea surface being colder than the adjacent land.

Sector visibility—. The visibility in a specified direction that represents at least a 45 degree arc of the horizon circle.

Shear—. A variation of wind direction or velocity in the atmosphere.

Slant visibility (approach visibility)—. The distance from which the aircrew on final approach can see landing aids on the ground.

Source region—. The geographic area over which an air mass originates.

Southern lights—. See aurora australis.

Squall—. A strong wind characterized by a sudden onset in which the wind speed increases at least 16 knots and is sustained at 22 knots or more for at least one minute.

Squall line—. A line or narrow band of organized, active thunderstorms.

Stability—. Atmospheric resistance to vertical motion.

Standard atmosphere. A hypothetical vertical distribution of the atmospheric temperature, pressure, and density, which by international agreement is considered to be representative of the atmosphere for pressure—. altimeter calibrations and other purposes (29.92INS or 1013hPa).

Stationary front—. A front which is stationary or nearly so. A front which is moving at a speed of less than 5 kts.

Stratosphere—. The atmospheric layer above the tropopause, having an average altitude of base and top of 7 and 22 miles respectively.

Sublimation—. A change of state from solid (ice) directly to gas (water vapor) without first becoming liquid.

Subsidence—. Sinking of air in the atmosphere.

Summation principle—. Used to evaluate sky cover, this principle states that the sky cover at any level is equal to the summation of the sky cover of the lowest layer plus the additional sky cover provided at all successively higher layers up to and including the layer being considered.

Supercooled water—. Water droplets in the atmosphere that remain in liquid state despite being at temperatures below zero Celsius or 32 Fahrenheit.

Temperature—. A measure of the heat of a substance.

Terrestrial radiation—. Energy (heat) leaving the Earth by outgoing radiation.

Thermal current. A relatively small—scale convective current rising from the ground. Produced from locally heated air near the Earth’s surface.

Thunderstorm—. A cumulonimbus (CB) cloud accompanied by lightning and thunder, and usually associated with strong gusts, heavy rain, severe icing and turbulence, and sometimes hail or tornado.

Tornado—. A violent, rotating column of air extending from a cumulonimbus cloud and touching the ground. It starts out as a funnel cloud and generates loud noise and highly destructive winds.

Tropics—. The area of the Earth that lies between the Tropic of Cancer (23.5° N latitude) and the Tropic of Capricorn (23.5° S latitude).

Tropical cyclone—. A general term for any rotating low pressure system originating over tropical oceans.

Tropical depression—. A tropical cyclone with maximum sustained winds of 33 knots or less.

Tropical storm—. A tropical cyclone with maximum sustained winds between 34 to 63 knots.

Tropopause—. The next layer above the troposphere, marking the boundary between the troposphere and the stratosphere.

Troposphere. The portion of the atmosphere from the Earth’s surface to the tropopause. Generally, the lowest 6—12 miles of atmosphere.

Trough—. An elongated area of low pressure along a line called a “trough line”.

True altitude—. Actual altitude above mean sea level.

Turbulence—. A condition of the atmosphere in which air currents vary greatly over short distances.

Typhoon—. A severe tropical cyclone in the western Pacific; maximum sustained windspeed must be 64 kts or greater.

Valley wind—. Warm air near the ground which rises out of a valley up a mountain slope during daytime.

Vertical visibility. A subjective or instrumental evaluation of the vertical distance into a surface—based obstruction that an observer would be able to see.

Virga—. Visible wisps or strands of precipitation falling from clouds that evaporate before reaching the surface.

Visibility—. The greatest horizontal distance selected objects can be seen and identified or its equivalent derived from instrumental measurements.

Vortex wake turbulence—. Aircraft turbulence generated by an aircraft’s passage through the atmosphere.

Warm front—. The leading edge of an advancing warm air mass.

Waterspout—. A funnel cloud that extends down to water.

Weather Flimsy. Local weather briefing form used in lieu of DD Form 175—1, most often used when several aircraft depart in the same time frame.

Whiteout.—Optical phenomena in which the observer appears to be engulfed in a uniformly white glow.

Wind.— Air in motion relative to the surface of the Earth; generally used to denote horizontal movement.

Wind chill.— See equivalent wind chill temperature.

Wind shear.— A change in wind speed and/or direction, resulting in a tearing or shearing action.